

BASIC Reference Manual

Order No. AA-L334A-TK
including AD-L334A-T1

February 1984

This manual describes language elements, compiler commands, and compiler directives of VAX BASIC and PDP-11 BASIC-PLUS-2.

OPERATING SYSTEM AND VERSION:	VAX/VMS	V3
	RSX-11M-PLUS	V2
	RSX-11M	V4
	RSTS/E	V8
SOFTWARE VERSION:	VAX BASIC	V2
	PDP-11 BASIC-PLUS-2	V2

digital equipment corporation, maynard, massachusetts

The information in this document is subject to change without notice and should not be construed as a commitment by Digital Equipment Corporation. Digital Equipment Corporation assumes no responsibility for any errors that may appear in this document.

The software described in this document is furnished under a license and may be used or copied only in accordance with the terms of such license.

No responsibility is assumed for the use or reliability of software on equipment that is not supplied by DIGITAL or its affiliated companies.

Copyright © 1982, 1984 by Digital Equipment Corporation. All Rights Reserved.

The postage-paid READER'S COMMENTS form on the last page of this document requests your critical evaluation to assist us in preparing future documentation.

The following are trademarks of Digital Equipment Corporation:

digital ™	DECwriter	RSTS
	DIBOL	RSX
DEC	MASSBUS	UNIBUS
DECmate	PDP	VAX
DECsystem-10	P/OS	VMS
DECSYSTEM-20	Professional	VT
DECUS	Rainbow	Work Processor

Commercial Engineering Publications typeset this manual using DIGITAL's TMS-11 Text Management System.

Contents

	Page
To the Reader	xi

PART I – Program Elements and Structure

1.0	Elements of a BASIC Program	1
1.1	Line Numbers.	1
1.2	Labels	2
1.3	Statements	3
1.3.1	Keywords.	3
1.3.2	Single-Statement Lines and Continued Statements	4
1.3.3	Multi-Statement Lines.	5
1.4	Compiler Directives	7
1.5	Line Terminators	7
1.6	Lexical Order	8
2.0	Program Documentation	8
2.1	Comment Fields.	8
2.2	REM Statements	9
2.3	Empty Statements	10
3.0	BASIC Character Set	10
4.0	BASIC Data Types	10
4.1	Implicit Data Typing.	13
4.2	Explicit Data Typing	13
5.0	Constants.	14
5.1	Numeric Constants	15
5.1.1	Floating-Point Constants	15
5.1.2	Integer Constants	17
5.1.3	Packed Decimal Constants (VAX-11 BASIC)	17
5.2	String Constants	18
5.3	Named Constants	19
5.3.1	Naming Constants Within a Program Unit.	19
5.3.2	Naming Constants External to a Program Unit	20
5.4	Explicit Literal Notation	21
5.5	Predefined Constants.	23

6.0	Variables	25
6.1	Variable Names	25
6.2	Implicitly Declared Variables	26
6.3	Explicitly Declared Variables	27
6.4	Subscripted Variables and Arrays	27
6.5	Initialization of Variables	29
7.0	Expressions	30
7.1	Numeric Expressions.	31
7.1.1	Floating-Point and Integer Promotion Rules	31
7.1.2	DECIMAL Promotion Rules (VAX-11 BASIC).	32
7.2	String Expressions	34
7.3	Conditional Expressions	34
7.3.1	Numeric Relational Expressions	35
7.3.2	String Relational Expressions	36
7.3.3	Logical Expressions.	37
7.4	Evaluating Expressions	40

PART II – Compiler Commands

1.0	APPEND	43
2.0	ASSIGN (VAX-11 BASIC)	45
3.0	BRLRES (BASIC-PLUS-2)	46
4.0	BUILD (BASIC-PLUS-2)	48
5.0	\$ Command	49
6.0	COMPILE.	51
7.0	CONTINUE.	53
8.0	DELETE	54
9.0	DSKLIB (BASIC-PLUS-2)	55
10.0	EDIT.	57
10.1	DEFINE (BASIC-PLUS-2)	61
10.2	EXECUTE (BASIC-PLUS-2)	62
10.3	EXIT or CTRL/Z (BASIC-PLUS-2)	63
10.4	FIND (BASIC-PLUS-2)	64
10.5	INSERT (BASIC-PLUS-2)	65
10.6	SUBSTITUTE (BASIC-PLUS-2)	66
11.0	EXIT	68
12.0	HELP.	69
13.0	IDENTIFY.	71
14.0	INQUIRE.	72
15.0	LIBRARY (BASIC-PLUS-2)	73
16.0	LIST and LISTNH	75
17.0	LOAD	77
18.0	LOCK	78
19.0	NEW.	79
20.0	ODLRMS (BASIC-PLUS-2)	80
21.0	OLD.	82
22.0	Qualifiers.	83
23.0	RENAME	95
24.0	REPLACE	97

25.0	RESEQUENCE (VAX-11 BASIC)	98
26.0	RMSRES (BASIC-PLUS-2)	100
27.0	RUN and RUNNH	102
28.0	SAVE	104
29.0	SCALE	105
30.0	SCRATCH	106
31.0	SEQUENCE	107
32.0	SET	108
33.0	SHOW	109
34.0	UNSAVE	111

PART III – Compiler Directives

1.0	%ABORT	113
2.0	%CROSS	114
3.0	%IDENT	115
4.0	%IF-%THEN-%ELSE-%END-%IF	117
5.0	%INCLUDE	119
6.0	%LET	121
7.0	%LIST	122
8.0	%NOCROSS	123
9.0	%NOLIST	124
10.0	%PAGE	125
11.0	%SBTTL	126
12.0	%TITLE	127
13.0	%VARIANT	128

PART IV – Statements

1.0	CALL.	129
2.0	CHAIN.	134
3.0	CHANGE.	136
4.0	CLOSE.	138
5.0	COMMON.	139
6.0	DATA	143
7.0	DECLARE.	145
8.0	DEF	149
9.0	DEF*.	153
10.0	DELETE	157
11.0	DIMENSION	158
12.0	END.	162
13.0	EXIT	164
14.0	EXTERNAL	166
15.0	FIELD	169
16.0	FIND.	171
17.0	FNEND	177
18.0	FNEXIT.	178
19.0	FOR	179
20.0	FREE (VAX-11 BASIC)	182
21.0	FUNCTION	183
22.0	FUNCTIONEND.	187
23.0	FUNCTIONEXIT.	188

24.0	GET	189
25.0	GOSUB	195
26.0	GOTO	196
27.0	IF	197
28.0	INPUT	199
29.0	INPUT LINE	202
30.0	ITERATE	204
31.0	KILL	205
32.0	LET	206
33.0	LINPUT	207
34.0	LSET	209
35.0	MAP	210
36.0	MAP DYNAMIC	213
37.0	MARGIN (VAX-11 BASIC)	215
38.0	MAT	216
39.0	MAT INPUT	219
40.0	MAT LINPUT	221
41.0	MAT PRINT	223
42.0	MAT READ	225
43.0	MOVE	227
44.0	NAME AS	230
45.0	NEXT	231
46.0	NOMARGIN (VAX-11 BASIC)	232
47.0	ON ERROR GO BACK	233
48.0	ON ERROR GOTO	234
49.0	ON ERROR GOTO 0	235
50.0	ON GOSUB	236
51.0	ON GOTO	237
52.0	OPEN	238
53.0	OPTION	248
54.0	PRINT	251
55.0	PRINT USING	254
56.0	PUT	258
57.0	RANDOMIZE	260
58.0	READ	261
59.0	RECORD (VAX-11 BASIC)	263
60.0	REM	267
61.0	REMAP	268
62.0	RESTORE (RESET)	271
63.0	RESUME	272
64.0	RETURN	273
65.0	RSET	274
66.0	SCRATCH	275
67.0	SELECT	276
68.0	SLEEP	278
69.0	STOP	279
70.0	SUB	280
71.0	SUBEND	284
72.0	SUBEXIT	285
73.0	UNLESS	286
74.0	UNLOCK	287
75.0	UNTIL	288
76.0	UPDATE	289
77.0	WAIT	291
78.0	WHILE	292

PART V – Functions

1.0	ABS	293
2.0	ABS%	294
3.0	ASCII	295
4.0	ATN	296
5.0	BUFSIZ.	297
6.0	CCPOS.	298
7.0	CHR\$	299
8.0	COMP%	300
9.0	COS	301
10.0	CTRLC	302
11.0	CVT\$\$	303
12.0	CVTXX	304
13.0	DATE\$	306
14.0	DECIMAL (VAX-11 BASIC)	307
15.0	DET	308
16.0	DIF\$	309
17.0	ECHO	310
18.0	EDIT\$	311
19.0	ERL	312
20.0	ERN\$	313
21.0	ERR	314
22.0	ERT\$	315
23.0	EXP	316
24.0	FIX	317
25.0	FORMAT\$	318
26.0	FSP\$	319
27.0	FSS\$ (BASIC-PLUS-2)	320
28.0	GETRFA	321
29.0	INSTR	322
30.0	INT	324
31.0	INTEGER	325
32.0	LEFT\$	326
33.0	LEN	327
34.0	LOC (VAX-11 BASIC)	328
35.0	LOG	329
36.0	LOG10.	330
37.0	MAG.	331
38.0	MAGTAPE	332
39.0	MAR (VAX-11 BASIC)	334
40.0	MID\$	335
41.0	NOECHO	336
42.0	NUM	337
43.0	NUM2	338
44.0	NUM\$	339
45.0	NUM1\$	340
46.0	ONECHR (BASIC-PLUS-2)	341
47.0	PLACE\$	342
48.0	POS	345
49.0	PROD\$	347
50.0	QUO\$	349
51.0	RAD\$	351
52.0	RCTRLC	352
53.0	RCTRLO	353

54.0	REAL	354
55.0	RECOUNT	355
56.0	RIGHT\$	356
57.0	RND	357
58.0	SEG\$	358
59.0	SGN	359
60.0	SIN	360
61.0	SPACE\$	361
62.0	SQR	362
63.0	STATUS	363
64.0	STR\$	365
65.0	STRING\$	366
66.0	SUM\$	367
67.0	SWAP%	368
68.0	SYS	369
69.0	TAB	371
70.0	TAN	372
71.0	TIME	373
72.0	TIME\$	375
73.0	TRM\$	376
74.0	VAL	377
75.0	VAL%	378
76.0	XLATE	379

PART VI – BASIC-PLUS-2 Debugger Commands

1.0	BREAK (BASIC-PLUS-2)	383
2.0	CONTINUE (BASIC-PLUS-2)	385
3.0	CORE (BASIC-PLUS-2)	386
4.0	ERL (BASIC-PLUS-2)	387
5.0	ERN (BASIC-PLUS-2)	388
6.0	ERR (BASIC-PLUS-2)	389
7.0	EXIT (BASIC-PLUS-2)	390
8.0	FREE (BASIC-PLUS-2)	391
9.0	I/O BUFFER (BASIC-PLUS-2)	392
10.0	LET (BASIC-PLUS-2)	393
11.0	PRINT (BASIC-PLUS-2)	395
12.0	RECOUNT (BASIC-PLUS-2)	396
13.0	REDIRECT (BASIC-PLUS-2)	397
14.0	STATUS (BASIC-PLUS-2)	398
15.0	STEP (BASIC-PLUS-2)	400
16.0	STRING (BASIC-PLUS-2)	401
17.0	TRACE (BASIC-PLUS-2)	402
18.0	UNBREAK (BASIC-PLUS-2)	403
19.0	UNTRACE (BASIC-PLUS-2)	405

Appendix A Reserved BASIC Keywords

Appendix B Program and Subprogram Coding Conventions

Index

Tables

1	Keyword Space Requirements	4
2	BASIC Data Types	12
3	Numbers in E Notation	16
4	Predefined Constants	23
5	Arithmetic Operators	30
6	Result Data Types in BASIC Expressions	32
7	VAX-11 BASIC Result Data Types	32
8	Result Data Types for DECIMAL Data	33
9	Numeric Relational Operators	35
10	String Relational Operators	37
11	Logical Operators	38
12	Truth Tables	38
13	Numeric Operator Precedence	47
14	BASIC-PLUS-2 Editing Mode Commands	60
15	ODL Files	81
16	VAX-11 BASIC COMPILE and SET Command Qualifiers	84
17	BASIC-PLUS-2 Command Qualifiers	90
18	RMS Libraries	101
19	VAX-11 BASIC Parameter Passing Mechanisms	132
20	BASIC-PLUS-2 Parameter Passing Mechanisms	133
21	FILL Item Formats and Storage Allocations	141
22	EDIT\$ Values	311
23	MAGTAPE Function Codes	332
24	Performing MAGTAPE Functions in VAX-11 BASIC	333
25	Rounding and Truncation of 123456.654321	344
26	VAX-11 BASIC STATUS Bits	364
27	VAX-11 BASIC Subset of RSTS/E SYS Calls	369
28	TIME Function Values	374

To the Reader

This manual is part of the BASIC documentation set. This set of manuals was designed to let you learn and use BASIC regardless of your prior experience with computers. The documentation set includes:

For the beginner:

- *Introduction to BASIC*
- *BASIC for Beginners*
- *More BASIC for Beginners*

For all systems:

- *BASIC User's Guide*
- *BASIC Reference Manual*
- *BASIC Pocket Reference Guide*

For specific systems:

- *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems*
- *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems*
- *BASIC on VAX/VMS Systems*

For the system manager:

- *BASIC-PLUS-2 RSTS/E Installation Guide and Release Notes*
- *BASIC-PLUS-2 RSX-11M/M-PLUS Installation Guide and Release Notes*
- *VAX-11 BASIC Installation Guide and Release Notes*

For the beginner, *Introduction to BASIC* explains the fundamentals of the BASIC language and shows how to use BASIC to solve programming problems. *BASIC for Beginners* and *More BASIC for Beginners* lead the reader step-by-step through planning and writing several practical programs that teach BASIC programming techniques. In addition, the first chapter of the system-specific user's guide tells you how to log on to your computer system, create and execute programs, and do simple file operations such as printing, typing, and deleting files.

For programmers who are more familiar with BASIC, the *BASIC User's Guide* and the system-specific user's guides include a complete explanation of BASIC and how to use it on your system. If you need information on a particular feature or statement, the *BASIC Reference Manual* describes the format of each BASIC command or keyword individually.

The BASIC documentation set has several new features that let you find information quickly and easily. Each manual has its own index (with instructions on its use) and the *BASIC Reference Manual* has a master index to the entire documentation set. For quick reference the *BASIC Pocket Reference Guide* provides a brief explanation of all BASIC commands and functions. Similar information is also available at the computer terminal from the BASIC HELP facility.

The following pages describe the function of this particular manual. We welcome your comments and encourage you to use the Reader's Comments Form provided at the back of this book.

Document Objectives

This manual describes the language elements and syntax of Version 2 of VAX-11 BASIC and BASIC-PLUS-2. The term BASIC is used generically in this manual to refer to both VAX-11 BASIC and BASIC-PLUS-2. The term VAX-11 BASIC refers specifically to VAX-11 BASIC as implemented on VAX/VMS systems. BASIC-PLUS-2 refers specifically to BASIC-PLUS-2 as implemented on RSTS/E, RSX-11M, and RSX-11M-PLUS systems.

Note

For your convenience, examples, formats, or rules specific to VAX-11 BASIC, BASIC-PLUS-2, or BASIC-PLUS-2 on RSTS/E or RSX-11M/M-PLUS are identified by a marginal symbol:



indicates VAX-11 BASIC only.



indicates BASIC-PLUS-2 only.



indicates BASIC-PLUS-2 on RSTS/E systems.



indicates BASIC-PLUS-2 on RSX-11M/M-PLUS systems.

Intended Audience

This manual should be used by programmers familiar with computer concepts and the BASIC language. It is a reference manual to be used in conjunction with the BASIC user's guides.

Document Structure

This manual consists of six parts, two appendixes, and a master index to the BASIC documentation set. With the exception of Part I, BASIC language elements are arranged in alphabetical order within each part; each language element begins on a separate page. A sample format page is included on page xiv.

- | | |
|---------|---|
| Part I | Describes BASIC program elements and structure. |
| Part II | Describes BASIC compiler commands. |

Part III	Describes BASIC compiler directives.
Part IV	Describes BASIC statements.
Part V	Describes BASIC functions.
Part VI	Describes <i>BASIC-PLUS-2</i> debugger commands.
Appendix A	Lists reserved keywords.
Appendix B	Summarizes program and subprogram coding conventions.

This manual also includes three tabbed dividers for convenient reference:

- The first divider summarizes the conventions used in this manual.
- The second divider lists most BASIC keywords by function.
- The third divider precedes the Master Index and describes its use.

Sample Format Page

ENTRY NAME

1.0 ENTRY NAME

Function

Describes the entry's function or effect.

Format

A format shows the syntax of a language element. When you have a choice of formats, the formats are named for clarity. When a format is named *General*, it applies to both VAX-11 *BASIC* and *BASIC-PLUS-2*. Format components are explained in syntax and general rules. When a language element has more than one format, formats are referred to by name. Some formats are divided into two parts. The first part, in the top portion of the box, shows the general elements and order of the format.

The second part of the format, in the lower portion of the box, shows the components and order of the individual elements in the general format.

Syntax Rules

Syntax rules tell you how to order format elements to form clauses or statements. They also impose restrictions or relax restrictions implied by the format.

General Rules

General rules define the semantics of the entry and the entry's effect on program execution or compilation.

Examples

This section presents one or more sample program lines. All examples work for both VAX-11 *BASIC* and *BASIC-PLUS-2* unless otherwise noted.

Conventions

Formats present the correct syntax for writing BASIC source code. You must order syntax elements as shown in the format unless the syntax rules indicate otherwise.

Syntax formats consist of BASIC keywords, metalanguage mnemonics, and punctuation symbols. Metalanguage mnemonics are symbolic derivations of BASIC objects or structures. The tabbed divider that follows this section lists the most frequently used mnemonics and their meanings, as well as the most frequently used punctuation symbols.

Note

BASIC keywords are always capitalized in this manual and must be spelled exactly as shown. Mnemonics are in lowercase letters in formats and are italicized in the syntax and general rules.

Some metalanguage mnemonics are derived directly from BASIC keywords. For example:

- Map From MAP
- Com From COMMON
- Func From FUNCTION
- Def From DEF
- Sub From SUB

Others are abbreviated forms of words. For example:

- Vbl For variable
- Unsubs For unsubscripted
- Subs For subscripted
- Str For string
- Const For constant
- Exp For expression
- Nam For name
- Cond For conditional
- Int For integer
- File-spec For file-specification
- Data-type For data-type

Most mnemonics used in formats are combinations of mnemonics. For example:

- Const-nam Is a constant name.
- Sub-nam Is the name of a SUB subprogram.
- Unsubs-vbl Is an unsubscripted variable.

(continued on next page)

- Int-exp Is an integer expression.
- Cond-exp Is a conditional expression.
- Str-unsubs-vbl Is a string unsubscripted variable.

Mnemonics are combined in this way to indicate exactly what type of object or structure BASIC expects. Some BASIC statements, for example, allow you to specify any type of variable (string or numeric) in the format, while others allow only a numeric variable (integer or floating-point), a string variable, an integer variable, or a floating-point variable.

Thus, the uncombined form of the variable mnemonic (*vbl*) in a format means that you can use any type of variable (string or numeric). A combined variable mnemonic (such as *str-vbl*, *num-vbl*, or *int-vbl*) in a format means that you can specify only a particular type of variable.

Within formats, mnemonics are either simple or complex. Simple mnemonics identify a format element (such as an expression, a variable, or a name) that needs no further definition. For example:

EXTERNAL data-type CONSTANT const-nam,...

The mnemonics in this format need no further definition. The EXTERNAL keyword must be followed by a *data-type*, the CONSTANT keyword, and then a *const-nam*. The comma and ellipsis (...), as defined in the Punctuation Symbols Table, indicate that you can specify more than one *const-nam*. The *data-type* mnemonic is defined in the Mnemonics Table as a BASIC *data-type* keyword, and *const-nam* is defined as a constant name. Restrictions to the use of *data-type* keywords in the EXTERNAL statement are specified in the syntax rules.

Complex mnemonics identify a format element (such as a parameter passing mechanism or a statement clause) that has more than one component. Complex mnemonics are further defined in the lower portion of the format box by simple mnemonics. For example:

Format

Variables

DECLARE data-type decl-item [, [data-type] decl-item]...

DEF Functions

DECLARE data-type FUNCTION { def-nam [([def-param],...)] },...

Named Constants

DECLARE data-type CONSTANT { const-nam = const },...

decl-item:
$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{unsubs-vbl-nam} \\ \text{array-nam (int-const,...) } \end{array} \right\}$$

def-param: [data-type]

When you look at the upper portion of this format, you can see that a data-type keyword must follow the DECLARE statement and that a *decl-item* must follow the data-type keyword. *Decl-item* is a complex mnemonic that is then further defined in the lower portion of the box. There you can see that a *decl-item* can be a simple variable name or an array name followed by parentheses and integer constants separated by parentheses. The portion of the upper format in brackets indicates that you can specify another data-type keyword and another array name or simple variable name. The comma and ellipsis (...), as defined on the tabbed divider in this section, indicate that you can continue adding data-type keywords and array names or simple variable names.

This type of format *unfolds* the syntax of BASIC language elements and indicates the type of element BASIC expects to receive.

Note

In most cases, BASIC signals an error if the syntax element does not exactly match the indicated format. In other instances, particularly with numeric elements, BASIC converts the numeric element you specify to the type of numeric element it expects to receive. These instances are noted in the syntax rules.

Multiple occurrences of mnemonics in a format are numbered to prevent confusion. *Vb/3*, for example, is the third unique variable in a general format and is referred to as *vb/3* in the syntax and general rules.

The most frequently used punctuation symbols and metalanguage mnemonics are listed and described on the first tabbed divider in this manual. Less frequently used mnemonics and most complex mnemonics are defined as they occur in syntax formats.

Please use the Reader's Comments Form in the back of this book to report errors or to make suggestions for future documentation releases.

Conventions

Syntax Mnemonics

Mnemonic	Definition
exp	An expression
vbl	A variable
unsubs	Unsubscripted; used with the variable mnemonic to indicate a simple variable, as opposed to an array element
subs	Subscripted; used with the variable mnemonic to indicate an array element; the element's position in the array is specified by subscripts enclosed in parentheses and separated by commas
array	An array; syntax formats indicate whether you can specify bounds and dimensions, or just dimensions
const	A constant value
lit	A literal value, in quotation marks; a literal is always a constant, but a constant may be named, so constants are not always literals
num	A numeric value
real	A floating-point value
int	An integer value
str	A character string
cond	Conditional; used with the expression mnemonic to indicate that an expression can be either logical or relational
log	Logical; used with the expression mnemonic to indicate a logical expression
rel	Relational; used with the expression mnemonic to indicate a relational expression
lex	Lexical; used to indicate a component of a compiler directive
target	The target point of a branch statement; used to indicate that the target point can be either a program line number or a statement label
lin-num	A program line number
label	An alphanumeric statement label
item	Allowable BASIC objects, such as variables, data types, and parameters; allowable objects are defined in formats as they occur
nam	Name; indicates the declaration of a name or the name of a BASIC structure, such as a SUB subprogram
com	Specific to a COMMON
def	Specific to a DEF
func	Specific to a FUNCTION subprogram
map	Specific to a MAP
sub	Specific to a SUB subprogram
chnl	An I/O channel associated with a file
data-type	A data-type keyword
file-spec	A file-specification
file-nam	A file name

Punctuation Symbols

Symbols	Definition
{ }	Brackets enclose an optional portion of a format. Brackets around vertically stacked entries indicate that you can select one of the enclosed elements. You must include all punctuation as it appears in the brackets.
{ }	Braces enclose a mandatory portion of a general format. Braces around vertically stacked entries indicate that you must choose one of the enclosed elements. Braces also group portions of a format as a unit. You must include all punctuation as it appears in the braces.
...	An ellipsis indicates that the immediately preceding language element can be repeated. An ellipsis following a format unit enclosed in brackets or braces means that you can repeat the entire unit. If repeated elements or format units must be separated by commas, the ellipsis is preceded by a comma (,...).

Definitions

In this manual, the following definitions apply:

BASIC	The term <i>BASIC</i> refers to Version 2 of both <i>VAX-11 BASIC</i> and <i>PDP-11 BASIC-PLUS-2</i> .
BASIC-PLUS-2	The term <i>BASIC-PLUS-2</i> refers specifically to Version 2 of <i>PDP-11 BASIC-PLUS-2</i> as implemented on <i>RSTS/E</i> , <i>RSX-11M</i> , and <i>RSX-11M-PLUS</i> systems.
Cannot	Cannot indicates than an operation cannot be performed and that an attempt to perform the operation causes BASIC to signal an error.
Cursor or cursor position	Cursor or cursor position refers to a terminal's print mechanism. It can be the flashing cursor on a video display terminal or the print head on a hard-copy terminal.
Must	Must indicates that an operation must be performed and that failure to perform the specified operation causes BASIC to signal an error.
Program module	A program module is a BASIC main program, a SUB subprogram, or a FUNCTION subprogram.
Subprogram	A separately compiled program module that must be linked or task-built with the main program.
Subroutine	A subroutine is a block of code accessed by a GOSUB or ON GOSUB statement. It is always in the same program module as the statement that accesses it.
VAX-11 BASIC	The term <i>VAX-11 BASIC</i> refers specifically to Version 2 of <i>VAX-11 BASIC</i> as implemented on <i>VAX/VMS</i> systems.

Functional List of BASIC Keywords

Arrays	Error Handling	Numbers	END SUB
DET	ERL	NOECHO	EXIT FUNCTION
DIMENSION	ERN\$	PRINT USING	EXIT SUB
MAT	ERR	RCTRLC	EXTERNAL
MAT INPUT	ERT\$	RCTRLO	FUNCTION
MAT LINPUT	ON ERROR GO BACK	RECOUNT	LOC
MAT PRINT	ON ERROR GOTO	TAB	SUB
MAT READ	ON ERROR GOTO 0		
NUM	RESUME		
NUM2			
Data Conversion	Function Definition	Strings	
ASCII	DEF	EDIT\$	
CHANGE	END DEF	FORMAT\$	
CHR\$	END FUNCTION	INSTR	
NUM\$	EXIT DEF	LEFT\$	
NUM1\$	EXIT FUNCTION	LEN	
STR\$	EXTERNAL	LSET	
VAL	FUNCTION	MID\$	
VAL%		POS	
Data Definition	I/O to Files	RIGHT\$	
COMMON	CLOSE	RSET	
DECLARE	DELETE	SEG\$	
DIMENSION	FIND	SPACE\$	
MAP	FREE	STRING\$	
MAP DYNAMIC	GET	TRM\$	
MOVE	INPUT #	XLATE	
RECORD	INPUT LINE #		
REMAP	KILL		
Data Formatting	LINPUT #		
FORMAT\$	MAR		
PRINT USING	MARGIN	String Arithmetic	
	MOVE	DIF\$	
	NAME AS	PLACE\$	
	OPEN	PROD\$	
	PRINT #	QUO\$	
Data Typing	PUT #	SUM\$	
COMMON	RECOUNT	Value Assignment	
DECLARE	RESTORE #	DATA	
DEF	SCRATCH	LET	
DIMENSION	UNLOCK	LSET	
EXTERNAL	UPDATE	READ	
FUNCTION		RESTORE	
MAP	I/O to Terminals	RSET	
OPTION	CCPOS		
SUB	CTRLC		
Date and Time Conversion	ECHO		
DATE\$	INPUT		
TIME	INPUT LINE	Program Control	
TIME\$	LINPUT	END	
	MAR	EXIT LOOP	
		FOR	
		GOSUB	
		GOTO	
		IF	
		ITERATE	
		ON GOTO	
		RETURN	
		SELECT	
		SLEEP	
		STOP	
		UNLESS	
		UNTIL	
		WAIT	
		WHILE	
		Program Segmentation	
		CALL	
		CHAIN	
		END FUNCTION	

PART I

Program Elements

and Structure

1.0 Elements of a BASIC Program

A BASIC program is a series of program lines that contain instructions for the BASIC compiler. These instructions are in the form of BASIC statements. Program lines contain the BASIC keywords, operators, and operands that make up a BASIC program.

The first line of a BASIC program must begin with a line number. The program lines that follow may contain:

- Line numbers or labels
- Statements
- Optional compiler directives
- Optional comment fields
- Line terminator (carriage return)

1.1 Line Numbers

Every BASIC statement must be associated with a line number. Thus, the first element in a BASIC program must be a line number. A line number must be an integer between 1 and 32767, inclusive. A space or tab terminates the line number. Embedded spaces, tabs, and commas within line numbers are invalid.

A line number followed by a carriage return does not constitute a BASIC program line. A program line must contain a statement or a comment field. Comment fields are discussed in Section 2.1. A new line number or a carriage return terminates a BASIC program line.

A program line can contain any number of text lines; however, a text line cannot exceed 255 characters in VAX-11 BASIC and BASIC-PLUS-2 on RSTS/E systems, and 132 characters in BASIC-PLUS-2 on RSX-11M/M-PLUS systems.

The BASIC language uses line numbers to:

- Indicate the order of statement execution
- Provide control points for branching
- Help in debugging and updating programs
- Find the location of run-time errors
- Resume processing after an error has been handled

Therefore, each line number must be unique. BASIC ignores leading spaces, tabs, and zeros in line numbers.

1.2 Labels

A label is a 1– to 31–character name that immediately precedes a statement. It may immediately follow a line number. The label logically identifies a statement or block of statements. The label name must conform to the rules for naming variables, described in Section 6.1. The label name must be separated from the statement it labels with a colon (:). For example:

```
100  Yes_routine: PRINT "Your answer is YES."
```

The colon is not part of the label name. It tells BASIC that the label is being defined rather than referenced. Consequently, the colon is not allowed when you use a label to reference a statement. For example:

```
200  GOTO Yes_routine
```

The BASIC language uses labels to:

- Provide control points for branching
- Help in debugging programs
- Help in maintaining and updating programs

You can reference a label anywhere you can reference a line number, with three exceptions:

- You cannot compare the value returned by the ERL function (the line number associated with the program line where the last error occurred) with a label.
- You cannot use the RESUME statement to reference a label.
- You cannot reference a label in an IF–THEN–ELSE statement without using the keyword GOTO or GO TO. You can use the implied GOTO form only to reference a line number. For example:

```
100  IF A% = B%
      THEN 1000
      ELSE 1050

200  IF A$ = "YES"
      THEN GOTO Yes
      ELSE GOTO No
```

Because the first statement references a line number, the GOTO keyword is not required; the second statement references a label, so the GOTO keyword is required.

1.3 Statements

A BASIC statement consists of a statement keyword and optional operators and operands. For example:

```
400 LET A% = 534% + (SUM% - DIF%)
      PRINT A%
```

The first statement assigns a value to the integer variable A%. The PRINT statement causes BASIC to display the value of A% on your terminal.

A statement is either executable or nonexecutable:

- Executable statements perform operations (for example, PRINT, GOTO, and READ).
- Nonexecutable statements describe the characteristics and arrangement of data, specify usage information, and serve as comments in the source program (for example, DATA, DECLARE, and REM).

BASIC can accept and process one statement on a line of text, several statements on a line of text, multiple statements on multiple lines of text, and single statements continued over several lines of text. Each line of program text is associated with the last specified line number.

Multi-statement and continuation lines are discussed in Sections 1.3.2 and 1.3.3.

1.3.1 Keywords

A keyword is a reserved element of the BASIC language. Every statement except LET and empty statements must begin with a keyword. BASIC uses keywords to:

- Define data and user identifiers
- Perform operations
- Invoke built-in functions

Note

Keywords are reserved words and cannot be used as variable names or as names for MAP or COMMON areas.

Keywords cannot be used in any context other than as BASIC keywords. STRING\$ = "YES", for example, is invalid because STRING\$ is a reserved BASIC keyword. Appendix A in this manual contains a list of BASIC reserved keywords.

A BASIC keyword cannot have embedded spaces and cannot be split across lines of text. There must be a space, tab, or special character such as a comma between the keyword and any other variable or operator.

Some keywords use two words. In this case, their spacing requirements vary, as shown in Table 1.

Table 1: Keyword Space Requirements

Optional Space	Mandatory Space	No Space
GO SUB GO TO ON ERROR	BY DESC BY REF BY VALUE END DEF END FUNCTION END GROUP END IF END RECORD END SELECT END SUB EXIT DEF EXIT FUNCTION EXIT SUB INPUT LINE MAP DYNAMIC MAT INPUT MAT LINPUT MAT PRINT MAT READ	FNEND FNEXIT FUNCTIONEND FUNCTIONEXIT NOECHO NOMARGIN SUBEND SUBEXIT

1.3.2 Single-Statement Lines and Continued Statements

A single-statement line consists of one statement on one numbered line or one statement continued over two or more text lines. For example:

```
100      PRINT B * C / 12
```

This single-statement line has a line number, keyword (PRINT), operators (*, /), and operands (B, C, and 12).

You can have a single statement span several text lines by typing an ampersand (&) and a carriage return. For example:

```
100      OPEN "SAMPLE.DAT" AS FILE 2%, &[RE]  
          SEQUENTIAL VARIABLE, &[RE]  
          MAP ABC
```

The ampersand must come immediately before the carriage return in VAX-11 BASIC. BASIC-PLUS-2 ignores spaces or tabs that follow the ampersand and precede the carriage return. For compatibility, DIGITAL recommends that you type the carriage return immediately after the ampersand.

The ampersand continuation character may be used but is not required for continued REM statements. The following example is valid:

```
100      REM This is a remark  
          And this is also a remark
```

You can continue any BASIC statement, but you cannot continue a string literal or BASIC keyword. For example, BASIC returns the error message “Unterminated string literal” if you try to print the following:

```
100 PRINT "FEE-FIE-      &
          FOE-FUM"
```

This example is valid:

```
200 PRINT "FEE-";      &
          "FIE-";      &
          "FOE-";      &
          "FUM"
```

A more efficient way to continue string literals is to use the string concatenation operator:

```
100 PRINT "FEE-"
          + "FIE-"
          + "FOE-"
          + "FUM"
```

BASIC concatenates the four string literals at compile time and stores them as one string. When the PRINT statement executes, BASIC displays the one concatenated string literal rather than four separate string literals, thereby causing your program to execute faster and more efficiently.

Continued statements do not have line numbers, although the compiler counts and numbers them as sublines.

1.3.3 Multi-Statement Lines

Multi-statement lines contain several statements on one line of text or multiple statements on separate lines of text. All the statements on a multi-statement line are associated with a single line number.

Multiple statements on one line of text must be separated by backslashes (\). For example:

```
400 PRINT A \ PRINT V \ PRINT G
```

Because all statements are on the same program line, any reference to line number 400 refers to all three statements and execution begins with the first statement on the line. That is, BASIC cannot execute the second statement without executing the first statement.

A statement that unconditionally transfers control to another program line should always be the last statement on a multi-statement line. Otherwise, the statements that follow the statement transferring control will never execute. The following program line, for example, will execute, but it is not recommended:

```
200 PRINT A \ GOTO 410 \ PRINT B
```

BASIC prints the value of A and then branches to line 410. The statement PRINT B will never execute.

You can also write a multi-statement program line that associates all statements with a single line number by ending each statement with an ampersand (&) and a carriage return and preceding the next statement with a backslash. For example:

```
400 PRINT A &
\ PRINT V &
\ PRINT G
```

Because programs written in this format tend to be cluttered and hard to read, BASIC allows you to associate multiple statements with a line number by placing each statement on a separate line without using the ampersand or backslash. This format requires only a space or tab at the beginning of each new line of text. BASIC assumes that such an unnumbered line of text is either a new statement or an IF statement clause. For example:

```
400 PRINT A
PRINT B
PRINT "FINISHED"
```

In this example, each line of text begins with a BASIC statement and each statement is associated with line number 400.

BASIC also recognizes IF statement keywords on a new line of text and associates such keywords with the preceding IF statement. For example:

```
100 IF (A$ = "YES") OR (A$ = "Y")
THEN PRINT "You typed YES"
ELSE PRINT "You typed NO"
STOP
END IF
```

The BASIC compiler listing file numbers the lines associated with line number 100 as they occur. The VAX-11 BASIC listing file looks like this:

 1 100 IF (A\$ = "YES") OR (A\$ = "Y")
2 THEN PRINT "You typed YES"
3 ELSE PRINT "You typed NO"
4 STOP
5 END IF

The BASIC-PLUS-2 listing file looks like this:

 00001 100 IF (A\$ = "YES") OR (A\$ = "Y")
00002 THEN PRINT "You typed YES"
00003 ELSE PRINT "You typed NO"
00004 STOP
00005 END IF

Each statement has a number that indicates its position in the line. The BASIC compiler counts the statements in a multi-statement line to locate compile-time errors. You cannot use statement numbers as targets of branch statements. Targets of branch statements such as GOTO must be a line number or a label.

You can use any BASIC statement in a multi-statement line. However, a REM or DATA statement must be the last statement on a multi-statement line. This is because the compiler:

- Ignores all text following a REM keyword until it reaches a new line number.
- Treats all text following a DATA keyword as data until it reaches a new line number; thus, every DATA statement in your program has to have its own line number.

Because a leading space or tab not followed by a line number implies a new statement in a multi-statement line, compiler commands and immediate mode statements cannot be preceded by a space or tab. If you enter a compiler command or immediate mode statement, you cannot add more continuation lines to the last program line. If you attempt to do so, BASIC signals the error "unknown command input".

1.4 Compiler Directives

Compiler directives are instructions in a program that tell BASIC to perform certain operations as it compiles the program. With compiler directives, you can:

- Place program titles and subtitles in the header that appears on each page of the listing file
- Place a program version identification string in both the listing file and object module
- Start or stop the accumulation of listing information for selected parts of a program
- Start or stop the accumulation of cross-reference information for selected parts of a program
- Include BASIC code from another source file
- Conditionally compile parts of a program
- Terminate compilation
- Include CDD record definitions in a BASIC program (VAX-11 BASIC only)

All compiler directives:

- Must begin with a percent sign
- Can be preceded by an optional line number
- Must be the only text on the line (except for %IF-%THEN-%ELSE-%END-%IF)
- Must be preceded by a space, tab, or line number
- Cannot appear within a quoted string

See the *BASIC User's Guide* and Part III in this manual for more information on compiler directives.

1.5 Line Terminators

In the BASIC environment, a carriage return/line feed combination (**RET**) followed by an optional space or tab and a new line number ends a BASIC program line. An ampersand followed by a carriage return ends a line of text but not the program line. All statements between the first line number and the next line number are associated with the first line number.

1.6 Lexical Order

Lexical order refers to the order in which BASIC compiles statements in a program. In general terms, BASIC compiles program lines in sequential order from the lowest to the highest line number. Thus, statement A precedes statement B if the line number with which statement A is associated is lower than the line number with which statement B is associated. If both statements are associated with the same line number, statement A precedes statement B only if it physically precedes statement B or appears to the left of statement B. BASIC processes statements on a line of text from left to right and lines of text from top to bottom.

Some BASIC statements, such as comments and MAP declarations, are nonexecutable. If program control passes to a nonexecutable statement, BASIC executes the first statement that lexically follows the nonexecutable statement.

2.0 Program Documentation

Documentation clarifies and explains source program structure. You can provide such explanations with:

- Comment fields
- REM statements

2.1 Comment Fields

A comment field begins with an exclamation point (!) and ends with a carriage return. You supply text after the exclamation point to document your program. BASIC does not execute text in a comment field. For example:

```
100 ! FOR loop to initialize list Q
      FOR I = 1 TO 10
          Q(I) = 0 ! This is a comment
      NEXT I
      ! List now initialized
```

BASIC executes only the FOR loop. The comment fields, preceded by exclamation points, do not execute.

Comment fields help make your program more readable and allow you to format your program into readily visible logical blocks. They can also serve as target lines for GOTO and GOSUB statements:

```
10 !
! Square root program
!
INPUT 'Enter a number';A
PRINT 'SQR of ',A,' is ',SQR(A)
!
! More square roots?
!
INPUT 'Type "Y" to continue, a carriage return to quit';ANS$
GOTO 10 IF ANS$ = 'Y'
!
99 END
```

You can also use an exclamation point to terminate a comment field, but this practice is not recommended. Therefore, you should make sure that there are no exclamation points in the comment field itself; otherwise, BASIC treats the text remaining on the line as source code.

Note

Comment fields in DATA statements are invalid; the compiler treats the comments as additional data.

2.2 REM Statements

A REM statement begins with the REM keyword and ends when BASIC encounters a new line number. The text you supply between the REM keyword and the next line number documents your program. Like comment fields, REM statements do not affect program execution. BASIC ignores all characters between the keyword REM and the next line number. Therefore, the REM statement can be continued without the ampersand continuation character and should be the only statement on the line or the last of several statements in a multi-statement line:

```
10    REM This is an example
20    A=5
     B=10
     REM A equals 5
           B equals 10
30    PRINT A, B
```

The REM statement is nonexecutable. When you transfer control to the line number of a REM statement, BASIC executes the next executable statement that lexically follows the referenced line. For example:

```
10    REM ** Square root Program
20    INPUT 'Enter a number';A
        PRINT 'SQR of '|A|' is '|SQR(A)
        INPUT 'Type "Y" to continue, a carriage return to quit';ANS$
        GOTO 10 IF ANS$ = 'Y'
40    END
```

When the conditional GOTO statement in line 20 transfers program control to line 10, BASIC ignores the REM comment on line 10 and continues program execution at line 20.

Note

Because BASIC treats all text between the REM statement and the next line number as commentary, REM should be used very carefully in programs that follow the implied continuation rules. Program statements intended for execution will not execute when they are inside a REM statement. DIGITAL recommends the use of comment fields (!) for program documentation in programs formatted with implied continuation lines.

2.3 Empty Statements

Empty statements consist of a line number and an exclamation mark followed by optional text, a line terminator and a new line number. For example:

```
100      !
! FOR loop to initialize list Q
!
200      FOR I = 1 TO 10
          Q(I) = 0 ! This is a comment
      NEXT I
300      !
! List is now initialized
```

Lines 100 and 300 are empty statements.

3.0 BASIC Character Set

BASIC uses the full ASCII character set. This includes:

- The letters A through Z, both upper- and lowercase
- The digits 0 through 9
- Special characters

Appendix C in *BASIC on VAX/VMS Systems*, *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems*, and *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems* contains the full ASCII character set and character values.

The compiler:

- Does not distinguish between upper- and lowercase letters except in string literals or within a DATA statement
- Does not process nonprinting characters unless they are part of a string literal
- Does not process characters in REM statements or comment fields

In string literals, BASIC processes:

- Lowercase letters as lowercase
- Nonprinting characters

The ASCII character NUL (ASCII code 0) and line terminators cannot appear in a string literal. Use the CHR\$ function or explicit literal notation to use this character and terminators.

You can use nonprinting characters in your program, for example, in string constants, but to do so you must use: 1) a predefined constant such as ESC and DEL, 2) the CHR\$ function to specify an ASCII value, or 3) explicit literal notation for character constants. See Section 5.4 in this manual for more information on explicit literal notation. See the *BASIC User's Guide* for more information on predefined constants and the CHR\$ function.

4.0 BASIC Data Types

All data in a BASIC program has a specific data type that determines how many bits of storage should be considered as a unit and how the unit is to be interpreted and manipulated.

VAX-11 BASIC recognizes five primary data types: integer, floating-point, character string, packed decimal, and RFA. These types correspond to the BASIC generic data-type keywords:

- INTEGER
- REAL
- STRING
- DECIMAL
- RFA

BASIC-PLUS-2 recognizes four primary data types: integer, floating-point, character string, and RFA. These types correspond to the BASIC generic data-type keywords:

- INTEGER
- REAL
- STRING
- RFA

Integer data are stored as binary values in a byte, a word, or a longword. These values correspond to the BASIC data-type keywords:

- BYTE
- WORD
- LONG

Floating-point values are stored using a signed exponent and a binary fraction. VAX-11 BASIC allows four floating-point formats: single, double, gfloat, and hfloat. These formats correspond to the BASIC data-type keywords:

- SINGLE
- DOUBLE
- GFLOAT
- HFLOAT

BASIC-PLUS-2 allows only single and double floating-point formats. These formats correspond to the BASIC data-type keywords:

- SINGLE
- DOUBLE

VAX-11 BASIC packed decimal data is stored in a string of bytes. Refer to Appendix C in *BASIC on VAX/VMS Systems* for more information on the storage of packed decimal data.

Character data are strings of bytes containing ASCII codes as binary data. The first character in the string is stored in the first byte, the second character is stored in the second byte, and so on. VAX-11 BASIC allows up to 65535 characters for a STRING data element. BASIC-PLUS-2 allows up to 32767 characters.

In addition to these data types, BASIC also recognizes a special RFA data type to provide information about a Record File Address (RFA). A Record File Address consists of a block number within a file and an offset into that block. An RFA uniquely identifies a record in a file. You can access RMS files of any organization by Record File Address (RFA). This means that you specify the disk address of a record, and RMS retrieves the record at that address. Accessing records by RFA is more efficient and faster than other forms of random record access.

The RFA data type is unique and can be used only for:

- RFA operations (with the GETRFA function and GET and FIND statements)
- Assignments to other variables of the RFA data type
- Comparisons with other variables of the RFA data type using the equal to (=) or not equal to (<>) relational operators
- Formal and actual parameters
- DEF and function results

You cannot use variables or constants of the RFA data type for any arithmetic operations. You cannot declare a constant of the RFA data type.

The RFA data type requires six bytes of information: four bytes for the address of a disk block, and two bytes for the offset into the disk block. See Chapter 9 in the *BASIC User's Guide* for more information on Record File Addresses and the RFA data type.

Table 2 lists BASIC data-type keywords and summarizes BASIC data types.

Table 2: BASIC Data Types

Data Type Keyword*	Size	Range**	Precision (decimal digits)
INTEGER – specifies integer data			
BYTE	8 bits	-128 to +127	NA
WORD	16 bits	-32768 to +32767	NA
LONG	32 bits	-2147483648 to +2147483647	NA
REAL – specifies floating-point data			
SINGLE	32 bits	.29 * 10 ⁻³⁸ to 1.7 * 10 ³⁸	6
DOUBLE	64 bits	.29 * 10 ⁻³⁸ to 1.7 * 10 ³⁸	16
GFLOAT	64 bits	.56 * 10 ⁻³⁰⁸ to .9 * 10 ³⁰⁸	15
HFLOAT	128 bits	.84 * 10 ⁻⁴⁹³² to .59 * 10 ⁴⁹³²	33
DECIMAL(<i>d,s</i>)	0 to 16 bytes	1 * 10 ⁻³¹ to 1 * 10 ³¹	31
STRING	One character per byte	NA	NA
RFA	6 bytes	NA	NA

* VAX-11 BASIC only data types are italicized.

** Approximate for REAL and DECIMAL data types.

For the VAX-11 BASIC only DECIMAL data type, you can specify the total number of digits (d) in the data type and the number of digits to the right of the decimal point (s). For instance, DECIMAL(10,3) specifies decimal data with a total of 10 digits, 3 of which are to the right of the decimal point.



In Table 2, REAL and INTEGER are generic data-type keywords that specify floating-point and integer storage, respectively. If you use the REAL or INTEGER keywords to type data, the actual data type (SINGLE, DOUBLE, GFLOAT or HFLOAT in VAX-11 BASIC, BYTE, WORD, or LONG) depends on the current default. That is, if you do not explicitly type REAL and INTEGER data as SINGLE, DOUBLE, BYTE, WORD, and so on, BASIC uses the current defaults for REAL and INTEGER.

You can specify data-type defaults in the BASIC environment with the SET and COMPILE commands or in a program module with the OPTION statement. On VAX/VMS systems, you can also specify data-type defaults from DCL level with the DCL BASIC command. You can also specify whether program values are to be typed implicitly or explicitly. The following sections discuss data-type defaults and implicit and explicit data typing.

4.1 Implicit Data Typing

You implicitly assign a data format to program values by adding a suffix to the variable name or constant value or by specifying no suffix with the variable name or constant value:

- A dollar sign suffix (\$) specifies STRING storage.
- A percent sign suffix (%) specifies INTEGER storage.
- No suffix character specifies storage of the default type, which may be INTEGER, REAL, or DECIMAL (VAX-11 BASIC only).

Suffixes on variable names and program constants specify string, integer, or floating-point storage of the default size. No suffix character implies that the value is of the default type (integer, floating-point, or packed decimal in VAX-11 BASIC). With implicit data typing, the range and precision for integer, floating-point, and packed decimal values (VAX-11 BASIC only) is determined by the current default data type. The default data type is determined by the system default (REAL) or the data type set for the BASIC environment with the SET or COMPILE commands. VAX-11 BASIC qualifiers are described in Table 16. BASIC-PLUS-2 qualifiers are described in Table 17.

Note that if you compile your program with the /TYPE: EXPLICIT qualifier, you cannot type program values implicitly. All program values must be explicitly assigned a data type in your program or BASIC signals an error.

Good programming practice dictates that you do not mix implicit and explicit data typing in expressions or in program units and that you do not rely extensively on implicit data typing. Explicit data typing makes programs easier to understand and maintain because the data type of all program values is explicitly spelled out in the program and is not as dependent upon compilation defaults that may change.

4.2 Explicit Data Typing

Explicit data typing means that you use a declarative statement to specify the type, range and precision of your program values. Declarative statements associate attributes such as data type and value with user identifiers. For example:

```
100    DECLARE STRING CONSTANT ZIP_CODE = 03060
        DECLARE STRING EMP_NAME, DOUBLE WITH_TAX, SINGLE INT_RATE
```

The first **DECLARE** statement associates the constant value 03060 and the **STRING** data type with a constant named **ZIP_CODE**. The second **DECLARE** statement associates the **STRING** data type with **EMP_NAME**, the **DOUBLE** data type with **WITH_TAX**, and the **SINGLE** data type with **INT_RATE**. No constant values are associated with user identifiers in the second **DECLARE** statement because they are variable names.

With explicit data typing, each program variable within a program can have a different range and precision. This gives you more control over your program. Because you can explicitly assign data types to variables, constants, arrays, parameters, and functions, all integer data, for instance, does not have to take the compilation defaults. Likewise, all floating-point data does not have to take the compilation default because you can declare floating-point values as **SINGLE** or **DOUBLE** in **BASIC-PLUS-2** and as **SINGLE**, **DOUBLE**, **GFLOAT**, or **HFLOAT** in **VAX-11 BASIC**. See the *BASIC User's Guide* and the sections on these statements in this manual for more information on explicitly typing data.

Using the **REAL** and **INTEGER** keywords to explicitly type program values allows you to write programs that are transportable across systems, since these data-type keywords specify that all floating-point and integer data take the current default for **REAL** and **INTEGER**. The data type **INTEGER**, for example, specifies only that the constant or variable is an integer. The actual subtype (**BYTE**, **WORD**, or **LONG**) depends on the default set with the **COMPILE** or **SET** command, the **VAX-11 BASIC DCL BASIC** command, or the **OPTION** statement.

You can also specify a particular data type size for values declared **INTEGER** or **REAL** with compilation qualifiers. The qualifier **/DOUBLE**, for instance, specifies that all data typed **REAL** is to be treated as double-precision data.

The **/TYPE: EXPLICIT** qualifier or **OPTION TYPE=EXPLICIT** statement allows you to specify that all program data must be explicitly typed. Compiling a program with **/TYPE: EXPLICIT** or specifying **OPTION TYPE=EXPLICIT** means that any program value not explicitly declared causes **BASIC** to signal an error.

For new applications, **DIGITAL** recommends using **BASIC**'s explicit data typing features. See Chapter 5 of the *BASIC User's Guide* for more information.

5.0. Constants

A constant is a numeric or character literal that does not change during program execution. A constant can also be named and associated with a data type. **BASIC** allows the following types of constants:

- Numeric
 - Floating-point
 - Integer
 - Packed decimal (*VAX-11 BASIC* only)
- String (ASCII characters enclosed in quotation marks)

A constant of any of the above data types can be named with the **DECLARE CONSTANT** statement. You can then refer to the constant by name in your program. Refer to Section 5.3 for information on naming constants.

You can also use a special explicit literal notation to specify the value and data type of a numeric literal. Explicit literal notation is discussed in Section 5.4.

If you do not specify a data type for a numeric constant with the DECLARE CONSTANT statement or with explicit literal notation, the type and size of the constant is determined by the default REAL, INTEGER, or (VAX-11 BASIC only) DECIMAL set:

- At installation (*BASIC-PLUS-2* only)
- With the DCL BASIC command (VAX-11 *BASIC* only)
- With the SET command
- With the COMPILE command
- With the OPTION statement

BASIC also supplies predefined constants for ease in representing some ASCII characters and mathematical values.

The following sections discuss numeric and string constants, named constants, explicit literal notation, and predefined constants.

5.1 Numeric Constants

A numeric constant is a literal or named constant whose value never changes. In VAX-11 *BASIC*, a numeric constant can be a floating-point number, an integer, or a packed decimal number. In *BASIC-PLUS-2*, a numeric constant can be either a floating-point number or an integer. The type and size of numeric constants are determined by the current default values, the data-type qualifiers specified with the COMPILE command, the defaults set by the SET command, the data type specified in a DECLARE CONSTANT or OPTION statement, or by explicit literal notation.

If you use a declarative statement to declare data type and name a numeric constant, the constant is of the type and size specified in the statement. For example:

```
100      DECLARE BYTE CONSTANT AGE = 12
```

This example associates the numeric literal 12 and the BYTE data type with the user identifier AGE. To specify a data type for unnamed numeric constants, you must use the explicit literal notation format described in Section 5.4.

5.1.1 Floating-Point Constants

A floating-point constant is a literal or named constant with one or more decimal digits, either positive or negative, an optional decimal point and an optional exponent (E notation). If the default data type is INTEGER, a decimal point or an E is required or *BASIC* treats the literal as an INTEGER. In VAX-11 *BASIC*, if the default data type is DECIMAL, an E is required or VAX-11 *BASIC* treats the literal as a packed decimal value. The following, for example, are REAL literals:

Default type REAL:

```
-8.738  
239.21E-6  
.79  
299
```

Default type INTEGER:

-8.738
239.21E-6
.79
299E

Default type DECIMAL (VAX-11 BASIC only):

-8.738E
239.21E-6
.79E
299E

Very large and very small numbers can be represented in E (exponential) notation. This form of mathematical shorthand uses the format:

\pm number E \pm n

where:

+ or - Is the number's sign. The plus sign is optional, but negative numbers require a minus sign.

number Is the number carried to a maximum of:

- 6 decimal places for SINGLE precision
- 16 decimal places for DOUBLE precision
- 15 decimal places for GFLOAT precision (VAX-11 BASIC only)
- 33 decimal places for HFLOAT precision (VAX-11 BASIC only)

E Represents the words "times 10 to the power of."

+ or - Is the exponent's sign. The plus sign is optional, but the minus sign is mandatory for negative exponents.

n Is an integer constant (the power of 10). If an exponent sign is specified, n can be zero, but not blank. If an exponent sign is not specified, n can be blank.

Table 3 compares numbers in standard and E notation.

Table 3: Numbers in E notation

Standard Notation	E Notation
.0000001	.1E-06
1,000,000	.1E+07
-10,000,000	-.1E+08
100,000,000	.1E+09
1,000,000,000,000	.1E+13

The range and precision of floating-point constants are determined by the current default data types or the explicit data type used in the DECLARE CONSTANT statement. There are, though, limits to the range allowed for numeric data types. Table 2 lists BASIC data types and ranges. BASIC signals the fatal error "floating point error or overflow" when your program specifies a constant value outside of the allowable range for a floating-point data type.

5.1.2 Integer Constants

An integer constant is a literal or named constant, either positive or negative, with no fractional digits and an optional trailing percent sign (%). The percent sign is required for integer literals if the default type is not INTEGER. For example:

Default type INTEGER:

```
81257  
-3477  
79
```

Default type REAL or (VAX-11 BASIC only) DECIMAL:

```
81257%  
-3477%  
79%
```

The range of allowable values for integer constants is determined by either the current default data type or the explicit data type used in the DECLARE CONSTANT statement. Table 2 lists BASIC data types and ranges. BASIC signals an error for a number outside the applicable range.

BASIC treats numeric literals as floating-point numbers unless:

- The default data type is INTEGER
- The literal has a % suffix

Thus, BASIC must convert numeric literals when assigning them to integer variables. This means that your program runs somewhat slower than it would if integer values were explicitly declared. You can prevent this conversion step by using percent signs for integer constants, numeric literal notation, or named integer constants.

Note

You cannot use percent signs in integer constants that appear in DATA statements. An attempt to do so causes BASIC to signal "Data format error" (ERR=50).

5.1.3 Packed Decimal Constants (VAX-11 BASIC Only)

A packed decimal constant is a number, either positive or negative, that has a specified number of digits and a specified decimal point position (scale). You specify the number of digits (d) and the position of the decimal point (s) when you declare the constant as a DECIMAL. If the constant is not declared, the number of digits and the position of the decimal are determined by the representation of the constant. For example, when the default data type is DECIMAL, 1.234 is a DECIMAL(4,3) constant, regardless of the default decimal size. Likewise, using explicit literal notation, "1.234" P is a



DECIMAL(4,3) constant, regardless of the default data type and default DECIMAL size. Explicit literal notation is described in Section 5.4. See the *BASIC User's Guide* for more information on packed decimal numbers.

5.2 String Constants

String constants are either string literals or named constants. A string literal is a series of characters enclosed in string delimiters. Valid string delimiters are:

- Double quotation marks ("text")
- Single quotation marks ('text')

You can embed double quotation marks within single quotation marks ('this is a "text" string') and vice versa ("this is a 'text' string"). Note, however, that BASIC does not accept incorrectly paired quotation marks and that only the outer quotation marks must be paired. The following character strings, for example, are valid:

```
"The record number does not exist."  
'I'm here!'  
'The terminating 'condition' is equal to A$.'  
"REPORT 543"
```

The following strings are not valid:

```
"Quotation marks do not match'  
'No closing quotation mark
```

Characters in string constants can be letters, numbers, spaces, tabs, or any ASCII character except a line terminator or NUL (ASCII code 0). If you need a string constant that contains a NUL, you should use the NUL predefined constant in a compile-time constant expression or explicit literal notation. See Section 5.4 in this manual for information on explicit literal notation and the *BASIC User's Guide* for more information on the NUL predefined constant.

BASIC determines the value of the string constant by scanning all its characters. For example, because of the number of spaces between the delimiters and the characters, these two string constants are not the same:

```
"      END-OF-FILE REACHED      "  
"END-OF-FILE REACHED"
```

BASIC stores every character between delimiters exactly as you type it into the source program, including:

- Lowercase letters (a–z)
- Leading, trailing, and embedded spaces
- Tabs
- Special characters

BASIC does not print the delimiting quotation marks when executing the program. That is, the value of the string constant does not include the delimiting quotation marks. For example:

```
100 PRINT "END-OF-FILE REACHED"
      !
      !
      !
200 END

RUNNH

END-OF-FILE REACHED
```

BASIC prints double or single quotation marks when they are enclosed in a second paired set:

```
100 PRINT 'FAILURE CONDITION: "RECORD LENGTH"'
      !
      !
      !
200 END

RUNNH

FAILURE CONDITION: "RECORD LENGTH"
```

5.3 Named Constants

BASIC allows you to name constants. You can assign a mnemonic name to a constant that is internal to your program and refer to the constant by name throughout the program. You can also name a constant that is external to your program and refer to it by name throughout your program. This naming feature is useful for the following reasons:

- If a commonly-used constant must be changed, you need to make only one change in your program.
- A logically named constant makes your program easier to understand.

You can use named constants anywhere you can use a constant, for example, to specify the number of elements in an array.

You cannot change the value of an explicitly named constant during program execution. To change the value of a constant, you must change the program statement that names the constant and declares its value and then recompile the program.

5.3.1 Naming Constants Within a Program Unit

You name constants within a program unit with the DECLARE statement. For example:

```
100 DECLARE DOUBLE CONSTANT Preferred_rate = .147
      DECLARE SINGLE CONSTANT Normal_rate = .162
      DECLARE DOUBLE CONSTANT Risky_rate = .175
      !
      !
      !
500 New_bal = Old_bal * (1 + Preferred_rate)^Years_Payment
```

When interest rates change, only three lines have to be changed rather than every line that contains an interest rate constant.

Constant names must conform to the rules for naming internal, explicitly declared variables listed in Section 6.1. No constant name can have embedded spaces.

The value associated with a named constant can be a compile-time expression as well as a literal value. For example:

```
100  DECLARE STRING CONSTANT Congrats =      &
     "+-----+" + LF + CR +  &
     "! Congratulations! !" + CR + CR +  &
     "+-----+"
!
!
!
500  PRINT Congrats
!
!
!
1000 PRINT Congrats
```

Named constants can save you programming time (since you don't have to retype the congratulations box every time you want to display it) and execution time (since the named constant is known at compile time).

Allowable operators in DECLARE CONSTANT expressions include all valid arithmetic, relational, and logical operators except exponentiation. You cannot use built-in functions in DECLARE CONSTANT expressions.

BASIC-PLUS-2 allows you to name floating-point, integer, and string constants, but floating-point constants cannot be named as expressions. Only STRING and INTEGER constants can be named as expressions in DECLARE CONSTANT statements. *VAX-11 BASIC* allows constants of all data types to be named as expressions. For example:

```
100  DECLARE DOUBLE CONSTANT    &
     MIN_VALUE = 0,      &
     MAX_VALUE = PI / 2
```

This example is valid only in *VAX-11 BASIC*.

Note that you can specify only one data type in a DECLARE CONSTANT statement. To declare a constant of a different data type, you must use a second DECLARE CONSTANT statement.

5.3.2 Naming Constants External to a Program Unit

To declare constants outside the program unit, use the EXTERNAL statement. For example:

```
200  EXTERNAL LONG CONSTANT SS$NORMAL
     EXTERNAL WORD CONSTANT IS,SUC
```

The first line declares the VAX/VMS status code SS\$NORMAL to be an external LONG constant. The second line declares IS,SUC, a success code, to be an external WORD constant. Note that *VAX-11 BASIC* allows external BYTE, WORD, LONG, and SINGLE constants, while *BASIC-PLUS-2* allows only external WORD constants. The linker or task builder supplies the values for the constants specified in EXTERNAL statements.

External constant names cannot exceed six characters in *BASIC-PLUS-2* and 31 characters in VAX-11 *BASIC* and must conform to the rules for naming external variables listed in Section 6.1. No constant name can have embedded spaces.

The types of external constants you can refer to vary from system to system. In VAX-11 *BASIC*, the named constant might be a system status code or a global constant declared in a VAX-11 MACRO or VAX-11 BLISS program. In *BASIC-PLUS-2*, the named constant might be a global constant declared in a MACRO-11 program or an RMS constant. See the user's guide for your system for more information on external constants available to your programs.

5.4 Explicit Literal Notation

You can specify the value and data type of numeric literals by using a special notation. The format of this notation in VAX-11 *BASIC* is:

[*radix*] *num-str-lit* [*data-type*]

Radix specifies an optional base.

In VAX-11 *BASIC*, radix can be:

- D Decimal (base 10)
- B Binary (base 2)
- O Octal (base 8)
- X Hexadecimal (base 16)

The VAX-11 *BASIC* default radix is D, but you can also specify binary, octal, and hexadecimal integer literals. Binary, octal, and hexadecimal notation allows you to set or clear individual bits in the representation of an integer. This feature is useful in forming conditional expressions and in using logical operations.

In *BASIC-PLUS-2*, *num-str-lit* is always treated as decimal (base 10), so the format for explicit literal notation in *BASIC-PLUS-2* is:

num-str-lit [*data-type*]

Num-str-lit is a quoted string that can consist of digits and an optional decimal point when the radix is decimal. You can also use E notation for floating-point constants. A leading minus sign cannot appear inside the quotation marks, but can appear before the radix.

In VAX-11 *BASIC*, *num-str-lit* can be the digits 0 and 1 when the radix is binary, the digits 0 through 7 when the radix is octal, and the digits 0 through F when the radix is hexadecimal.

Data-type is an optional single letter that corresponds to a data-type keyword, excluding INTEGER and REAL:

- B BYTE
- W WORD
- L LONG
- F SINGLE

(continued on next page)

- D DOUBLE
- G GFLOAT (VAX-11 BASIC only)
- H HFLOAT (VAX-11 BASIC only)
- P DECIMAL (VAX-11 BASIC only)

For example:

- "255" L Specifies a LONG decimal constant with a value of 255.
 "4000" F Specifies a SINGLE decimal constant with a value of 4000.
 -"125" B Specifies a BYTE decimal constant with a value of -125.

A quoted numeric string alone, without a *radix* and a *data-type*, is a string literal, not a numeric literal. For example:

- "255" W Specifies a WORD decimal constant with a value of 255.
 "255" Is a string literal.

 In VAX-11 BASIC, if you specify a binary, octal, or hexadecimal *radix*, *data-type* must be an integer. If you do not specify a data type, BASIC uses the default integer data type. For example:

- B"11111111" B Specifies a BYTE binary constant with a value of -1.
 B"11111111" W Specifies a WORD binary constant with a value of 255.
 B"11111111" Specifies a binary constant of the default data type (BYTE, WORD, or LONG).
 B"11111111" F Is illegal because F is not an integer data type.
 X"FF" B Specifies a BYTE hexadecimal constant with a value of -1.
 X"FF" W Specifies a WORD hexadecimal constant with a value of 255.
 X"FF" D Is illegal because D is not an integer data type.
 O"377" B Specifies a BYTE octal constant with a value of -1.
 O"377" W Specifies a WORD octal constant with a value of 255.
 O"377" G Is illegal because G is not an integer data type.

When you specify a radix other than decimal, VAX-11 BASIC treats the numeric string as an unsigned integer. When, however, this value is assigned to a variable or used in an expression, VAX-11 BASIC treats the variable as a signed integer. For example:

```
100  DECLARE BYTE A
      A = B"11111111" B
      PRINT A
RUNNH
```

-1

In this example, VAX-11 BASIC sets all eight bits in storage location A. Because A is a BYTE integer, it has only 8 bits of storage and its value is -1 (the 8-bit two's complement of 1 is 11111111). If the data type were W (WORD), VAX-11 BASIC would set the bits to 0000000011111111, and its value would be 255.

Note that in VAX-11 BASIC a D can appear in both the radix position and the data type position. D in the radix position specifies that the numeric string is to be treated as a decimal number (base 10). D in the data type position specifies that the value is to be treated as a double-precision, floating-point constant. A P in the data type position specifies a packed decimal constant. For example:

- “255”D Specifies a double-precision constant with a value of 255.
- “255.55”P Specifies a DECIMAL constant with a value of 255.55.

You can also use explicit literal notation to represent a single-character string in terms of its 8-bit ASCII value. The format in VAX-11 BASIC is:

[radix] num-str-lit C

The format in BASIC-PLUS-2 is:

num-str-lit C

The letter C is an abbreviation for CHARACTER. The value of the numeric string must be between 0 and 255, inclusive.

This feature lets you create your own compile-time string constants containing nonprinting characters. For example:

```
100      DECLARE STRING CONSTANT CONTROL_G = "7"C
PRINT CONTROL_G
```

This example declares a string constant named CONTROL_G (ASCII decimal value 7). When BASIC executes the PRINT statement, the terminal bell sounds.

See the *BASIC User's Guide* for more information on explicit literal notation.

5.5 Predefined Constants

Predefined constants are symbolic representations of either: 1) ASCII characters or 2) mathematical values. They are also called compile-time constants because their value is known at compile time rather than at run time. Predefined constants:

- Format program output to improve readability
- Make source code easier to understand

Table 4 lists predefined constants supplied by BASIC, their ASCII values, and their purposes.

Table 4: Predefined Constants

Constant	Decimal ASCII Value	Purpose
BEL (Bell)	7	Sounds the terminal bell
BS (Backspace)	8	Moves the cursor one position to the left
HT (Horizontal Tab)	9	Moves the cursor to the next horizontal tab stop

(continued on next page)

Table 4: Predefined Constants (Cont.)

Constant	Decimal ASCII Value	Purpose
LF (Line Feed)	10	Moves the cursor to the next line
VT (Vertical Tab)	11	Moves the cursor to the next vertical tab stop
FF (Form Feed)	12	Moves the cursor to the start of the next page
CR (Carriage Return)	13	Moves the cursor to the beginning of the current line
SO (Shift Out)	14	Shifts out for communications networking, screen formatting, and alternate graphics
SI (Shift In)	15	Shifts in for communications networking, screen formatting, and alternate graphics
ESC (Escape)	27	Marks the beginning of an escape sequence
SP (Space)	32	Inserts one blank space in program output
DEL (Delete)	127	Deletes the last character entered
PI	None	Represents the number PI with the precision of the default floating-point data type

You can use predefined constants in many ways. For example, to print and underline a word on a hard copy terminal:

```
110 PRINT "NAME:" + BS + BS + BS + BS + BS + BS + "-----"
120 END
```

RUNNH

NAME:

To print and underline a word on a VT100 video display terminal:

```
100 PRINT ESC + "[4mNAME:" + ESC + "l0m"
110 END
```

RUNNH

NAME:

Note that the "m" in the above example must be lowercase.

You can also create your own predefined constants with the DECLARE CONSTANT statement. For example:

```
10 DECLARE STRING CONSTANT Underlined_name = ESC + "[4mNAME:" + ESC + "l0m"
20 DECLARE DOUBLE CONSTANT D_PI = PI
30 PRINT Underlined_name
      PRINT D_PI,,PI
```

Line 10 defines Underlined_name as a string constant equivalent to the constant displayed by line 100 in the previous example. Line 20 defines D_PI as a DOUBLE constant equal to the predefined constant PI. If the default REAL data size is SINGLE, the program can use both single-precision PI and double-precision D_PI. See the *BASIC User's Guide* for more information on predefined constants and their use in BASIC programs.

6.0 Variables

A variable is a named quantity whose value can change during program execution. Each variable name refers to a location in the program's storage area. Each location can hold only one value at a time. Variables of all data types can have subscripts that indicate their position in an array.

Depending on the program operations specified, the value of a variable can change from statement to statement. BASIC uses the most recently assigned value when performing calculations. This value remains until another statement assigns a new value to the variable.

You can declare variables implicitly or explicitly.

BASIC accepts these general types of variables:

- Floating-point
- Integer
- String
- RFA
- Packed Decimal (VAX-11 BASIC only)
- Record (VAX-11 BASIC only)

See Chapter 9 in the *BASIC User's Guide* for more information on RFA variables and Chapter 6 in *BASIC on VAX/VMS Systems* for more information on record data structures.

6.1 Variable Names

The name given to a variable depends on whether the variable is internal or external to the program and whether the variable is implicitly or explicitly declared.

1. The name of an internal, explicitly declared variable must conform to the following rules:
 - The name consists of from 1 to 31 characters.
 - The first character of the name must be an upper- or lowercase alphabetic character (A through Z).
 - The last character of the name cannot be a dollar sign (\$) or a percent sign (%).
 - The remaining characters, if present, can be any combination of upper- or lowercase letters (A through Z), numbers (0 through 9), dollar signs (\$), underscores (_), or periods (.). The use of underscores in variable names helps improve readability and is preferred to the use of periods.
2. The name of an internal, implicitly declared variable must conform to the following rules:
 - The name consists of from 1 to 31 characters.
 - The first character of the name must be an upper- or lowercase alphabetic character (A through Z).
 - The last character of the name can be either a dollar sign (\$) to indicate a string variable or a percent sign (%) to indicate an integer variable. If the last character is neither a dollar sign nor a percent sign, the name indicates a variable of the default type.

- The remaining characters, if present, can be any combination of upper- or lowercase letters (A through Z), numbers (0 through 9), dollar signs (\$), underscores (_), or periods (.). The use of underscores in variable names helps improve readability and is preferred to the use of periods.
3. The name of an external, explicitly declared variable in VAX-11 BASIC must follow the rules for naming an internal, explicitly declared variable.
 4. The name of an external, explicitly declared variable in BASIC-PLUS-2 must conform to the following rules:
 - The name consists of from one to six characters.
 - The first character of the name must be an upper- or lowercase alphabetic character (A through Z).
 - The remaining characters, if present, can be any combination of upper- or lowercase letters (A through Z), numbers (0 through 9), dollar signs (\$), or periods (.).
 5. A program cannot have external, implicitly declared variables since all implicitly declared names except SUB subprogram names are internal to the program.

In all cases, no variable name can have embedded spaces.

6.2 Implicitly Declared Variables

BASIC accepts three types of implicitly declared variables:

- Floating-point (or default data type)
- Integer
- String

The name of an implicitly declared variable defines its data type. Integer variables end with a percent sign (%), string variables end with a dollar sign (\$), and variables of the default type (usually floating-point) end with any allowable character except a percent sign or dollar sign. All three types of variables must conform to the rules listed in Section 6.1 for naming variables. The current data-type default (INTEGER, REAL, or, in VAX-11 BASIC, DECIMAL) determines the data type of implicitly declared variables that do not end in a percent sign (%) or dollar sign (\$).

A floating-point variable is a named location that stores a single floating-point value. The current default size for floating-point numbers (SINGLE, DOUBLE, or, in VAX-11 BASIC, GFLOAT or HFLOAT) determines the data type of the floating-point variable. The following are valid floating-point variable names:

C	L...5	ID_NUMBER
M1	BIG47	STORAGE.LOCATION.FOR.XX
F67T.J	Z2.	STRESS_VALUE

If a numeric value of a different data type is assigned to a floating-point variable, BASIC converts the value to a floating-point number.

An integer variable is a named location that stores a single integer value. The current default size for integers (BYTE, WORD, or LONG) determines the data type of an integer variable. The following are valid integer variable names:

ABCDEFG%	C_8%	RECORD.NUMBER%
B%	D6E7%	THE.VALUE.I.WANT%

If the default data type is INTEGER, the percent suffix (%) is not necessary.

If you assign a floating-point or decimal (VAX-11 BASIC only) value to an integer variable, BASIC truncates the fractional portion of the value. It does not round to the nearest integer. For example:

```
100    B% = -5.7
```

BASIC assigns the value -5 to the integer variable, not -6.

A string variable is a named location that stores strings. The following are valid string variable names:

C1\$	M\$	EMPLOYEE_NAME\$
L.6\$	F34G\$	TARGET.RECORD\$
ABC1\$	T..\$	STORAGE_SHELF_IDENTIFIER\$

Strings have both value and length. BASIC sets all string variables to a default length of zero before program execution begins, except those in a COMMON, MAP, or virtual array. See Sections 5.0 and 35.0 in Part IV of this manual for information on string length in COMMON and MAP areas. See the *BASIC User's Guide* for information on default string length in virtual arrays.

During execution, the length of a character string associated with a string variable can vary from zero (signifying a null or empty string) to 65535 characters in VAX-11 BASIC or 32767 characters in BASIC-PLUS-2.

6.3 Explicitly Declared Variables

In addition to implicitly declared variables described in the previous sections, BASIC lets you explicitly assign a data type to a variable or an array. For example:

```
100    DECLARE DOUBLE Interest_rate
```

Data-type keywords are described in Section 4.0. For more information on explicit declaration of variables, see the sections on COMMON, DECLARE, DIMENSION, DEF, FUNCTION, EXTERNAL, MAP, and SUB in Part IV of this manual and Chapter 5 in the *BASIC User's Guide*.

6.4 Subscripted Variables and Arrays

A subscripted variable is part of an array. Arrays can be of any valid data type. Subscripted variables and arrays follow the same naming conventions as nonsubscripted variables. Subscripts follow the variable name in parentheses and define the variable's position in the array. When you create an array, bounds follow the array name in parentheses and define the maximum size of the array. For example:

```
100    DECLARE STRING Emp_name(1000)
200    FOR I% = 0% TO 1000%
          INPUT "Employee name";Emp_name(I%)
      NEXT I%
```

The DECLARE statement in the example on the previous page sets the bounds of array Emp_name to 1000. Thus, the maximum value for an Emp_name subscript is 1000. The bounds of the array define the maximum value for a subscript of that array.

In VAX-11 BASIC, subscripts can be any positive integer value from 0 to 2147483646 in LONG mode. In BASIC-PLUS-2, subscripts can be any non-negative integer value from 0 to 32766.

Note

The compiler signals an error if a subscript is bigger than the allowable range. Also, the amount of storage the system can allocate depends on available memory. Therefore, very large arrays may cause an internal allocation error.

An array is a set of data ordered in any number of dimensions. A one-dimensional array, like Emp_name(1000), is called a list or vector. A two-dimensional array, like Payroll_data(5,5), is called a matrix. An array of more than two dimensions, like Big_array(15,9,2), is called a tensor.

BASIC arrays are always zero-based. That is, the number of elements in any dimension always includes element number zero. For example, the array Emp_name(1000) contains 1001 elements, since BASIC allocates element zero. Payroll_data(5,5) contains 36 elements because BASIC always allocates row and column zero.

For all arrays except virtual arrays, the total number of array elements cannot exceed 2147483647 in VAX-11 BASIC and 32767 in BASIC-PLUS-2. For example, VAX-11 BASIC allows array A(2147483646) but does not allow array A(1,2147483646). BASIC-PLUS-2 allows array A(32766) but does not allow array A(1,32766).

VAX-11 BASIC arrays can have up to 32 dimensions. BASIC-PLUS-2 arrays can have up to eight dimensions. You can also specify the type of data the array contains with data-type keywords. Table 2 lists BASIC data types.

An element in a one-dimensional array has a variable name followed by one subscript in parentheses. There can be a space between the array name and the parenthetical subscripts. For example:

A(6%)

B (6%)

C\$ (6%)

A(6%) refers to the seventh item in this list:

A(0%) A(1%) A(2%) A(3%) A(4%) A(5%) A(6%)

An element in a two-dimensional array has two subscripts, in parentheses, following the variable name. The first subscript specifies the row number, the second specifies the column. Use a comma to separate the subscripts. There can be a space between the array name and the parenthetical subscripts. For example:

A (7%,2%) A%(4%,6%) A\$(10%,10%)

In the following table, the arrow points to the element specified by the subscripted variable A%(4%,6%):

	C	O	L	U	M	N	S
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
R	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
O	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
W	2	0	0	0	0	0	0
S	3	0	0	0	0	0	0
4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

← A%(4%,6%)

An element in an array has as many subscripts as there are dimensions. An element of Big_array(15%,9%,2%), for example, would have three subscripts.

Although a program can contain a variable and an array with the same name, this is regarded as poor programming practice. Variable A and the array A(3%,3%) are separate entities and are stored in completely separate locations and should have different names.

Note

A program cannot contain two arrays with the same name and a different number of subscripts. For example, the arrays A(3%) and A(3%,3%) are invalid in the same program.

BASIC arrays can be redimensioned at run time. See Chapter 7 in the *BASIC User's Guide* for more information on arrays.

6.5 Initialization of Variables

BASIC sets variables to zero or null values at the start of program execution. Variables initialized by BASIC include:

- Numeric variables and in-storage array elements (except those in MAP or COMMON statements).
- String variables (except those in MAP or COMMON statements).
- Local variables in function definitions. In addition, BASIC sets these values to zero each time the program calls the function.
- Variables in subprograms. Subprogram variables are initialized to zero or the null string each time the subprogram is called.

BASIC does not initialize virtual arrays.

Note

In *BASIC-PLUS-2*, variables in a MAP statement referenced in an OPEN statement are initialized to zero or the null string when the file is opened. In VAX-11 *BASIC*, these variables are not initialized. You can also use MACRO-11 routines to initialize MAP and COMMON areas. See *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems* or *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems* for more information.

7.0 Expressions

BASIC expressions consist of operands (numbers, strings, constants, variables, functions, or array elements) separated by:

- Arithmetic operators
- String operators
- Relational operators
- Logical operators

All BASIC expressions except string concatenation and invocations of string-valued functions yield numeric values. The way you combine numeric operators and operands and use the resulting values allows you to produce:

- Numeric expressions
- String expressions
- Conditional expressions

BASIC evaluates expressions according to operator precedence and uses the results in program execution. Parentheses can appear in expressions to group operands and operators, thus controlling the order of evaluation.

The following sections explain the types of expressions you can create and the way BASIC evaluates expressions.

7.1 Numeric Expressions

Numeric expressions consist of floating-point, integer, or packed decimal (VAX-11 BASIC only) operands separated by arithmetic operators and optionally grouped by parentheses. Table 5 shows how numeric operators work in numeric expressions.

Table 5: Arithmetic Operators

Operator	Example	Use
+	A + B	Add B to A
-	A - B	Subtract B from A
*	A * B	Multiply A by B
/	A / B	Divide A by B
^	A^B	Raise A to the power B
**	A**B	Raise A to the power B

In general, two arithmetic operators cannot occur consecutively in the same expression. Exceptions are the unary plus and unary minus. The following expressions are valid:

A * + B
A * - B
A * (-B)
A * + - + - B

The following expression is not valid:

A - * B

An operation on two numeric operands of the same data type yields a result of that type. For example:

A% + B% yields an integer value of the default type.

G3 * M5 yields a floating-point value if the default type is REAL.

If the result of the operation exceeds the range of the data type, VAX-11 BASIC signals an overflow error message. For example:

```
10    DECLARE BYTE A, B
      A = 127
      B = 127
      PRINT A + B
99    END
```

This example causes VAX-11 BASIC to signal the error “Integer error or overflow” because the sum of A and B (254) exceeds the range of –128 to +127 for BYTE integers. Similar overflow errors occur for REAL and DECIMAL data types whenever the result of a numeric operation is outside the range of the data type.

Assigning a value of one data type to a variable of a different data type changes the assigned value’s data type to the variable’s data type. For example:

```
10    A% = 5.1 * 6.3
```

This example assigns the value 32 to the integer variable A% even though the floating-point value of the expression is 32.13. This is called numeric conversion. See Chapter 5 of the *BASIC User’s Guide* for more information on numeric conversion.

7.1.1 Floating-Point and Integer Promotion Rules

When an expression contains operands with different data types, the data type of the result is determined by BASIC’s data type promotion rules:

- With one exception, BASIC promotes operands with different data types to the lowest common data type that can hold the largest or most precise possible value of either operand’s data type, then performs the operation in that data type, and yields a result of that data type.
- The exception to the previous rule is that when an operation involves SINGLE and LONG data types, BASIC promotes the LONG data type to SINGLE, rather than to DOUBLE, performs the operation, and yields a result of the SINGLE data type.

Note that BASIC does a sign extend when converting BYTE and WORD integers to a higher INTEGER data type (WORD or LONG). That is, the high order bit (the sign bit) determines how the additional bits are set when the BYTE or WORD is converted to WORD or LONG. If the high order bit is zero (positive), all higher-order bits in the converted BYTE or WORD are set to zero. If the high order bit is one (negative), all higher-order bits in the converted BYTE or WORD are set to one.

Table 6 lists the data type results possible in numeric expressions that combine BYTE, WORD, LONG, SINGLE, and DOUBLE data. Table 7 lists the data type results possible in numeric expressions that combine the VAX-11 BASIC only data types, GFLOAT and HFLOAT. Note that in VAX-11 BASIC, when the operands are DOUBLE and GFLOAT, BASIC promotes both values to HFLOAT, and

returns an HFLOAT value. The promotion of DOUBLE and GFLOAT to HFLOAT is necessary because a DOUBLE value is more precise than a GFLOAT value, but cannot contain the largest possible GFLOAT value. Consequently, BASIC promotes these data types to a data type that can hold the largest and most precise value of either operand.

Table 6: Result Data Types in BASIC Expressions

Operand 1	Operand 2				
	BYTE	WORD	LONG	SINGLE	DOUBLE
BYTE	BYTE	WORD	LONG	SINGLE	DOUBLE
WORD	WORD	WORD	LONG	SINGLE	DOUBLE
LONG	LONG	LONG	LONG	SINGLE	DOUBLE
SINGLE	SINGLE	SINGLE	SINGLE	SINGLE	DOUBLE
DOUBLE	DOUBLE	DOUBLE	DOUBLE	DOUBLE	DOUBLE



Table 7: VAX-11 BASIC Result Data Types

Operand 1	Operand 2	
	GFLOAT	HFLOAT
BYTE	GFLOAT	HFLOAT
WORD	GFLOAT	HFLOAT
LONG	GFLOAT	HFLOAT
SINGLE	GFLOAT	HFLOAT
DOUBLE	HFLOAT	HFLOAT
GFLOAT	GFLOAT	HFLOAT
HFLOAT	HFLOAT	HFLOAT

As Table 6 shows, if one operand is SINGLE and one operand is DOUBLE, BASIC promotes the SINGLE value to DOUBLE, performs the specified operation, and returns the result as a DOUBLE value. This promotion is necessary because the SINGLE data type has less precision than the DOUBLE value, whereas the DOUBLE data type can represent all possible SINGLE values. If BASIC did not promote the SINGLE value and the operation yielded a result outside of the SINGLE range, loss of precision and significance would occur.

The data types BYTE, WORD, LONG, SINGLE, and DOUBLE form a simple hierarchy: if all operands in an expression are these data types, the result of the expression is the highest data type used in the expression.



7.1.2 DECIMAL Promotion Rules (VAX-11 BASIC only)

VAX-11 BASIC also allows the DECIMAL(d,s) data type. The number of digits (d) and the scale or position of the decimal point (s) in the result of operations involving a DECIMAL value depends on the

data type of the other operand. If one operand is DECIMAL and the other is DECIMAL or INTEGER, the d and s values of the result are determined as follows:

- If both operands are typed DECIMAL, and if both operands have the same digit (d) and scale (s) values, no conversions occur and the result of the operation has exactly the same d and s values as the operands. Note, however, that overflow can occur if the result exceeds the range specified by the d value.
- If both operands are DECIMAL but have different digit and scale values, BASIC always uses the larger number of specified digits for the result.

For example:

```
100      DECLARE DECIMAL(5,2) A
          DECLARE DECIMAL(4,3) B
```

Variable A allows three digits to the left of the decimal point and two digits to the right. Variable B allows one digit to the left of the decimal point and three digits to the right. Therefore, the result allows three digits to the left of the decimal point and three digits to the right:

A	-----
B	-----
Result	-----

- If one operand is typed DECIMAL and one is typed INTEGER, the INTEGER value is converted to a DECIMAL(d,s) data type as follows:

BYTE is converted to DECIMAL(3,0).

WORD is converted to DECIMAL(5,0).

LONG is converted to DECIMAL(10,0).

BASIC then determines the d and s values of the result by evaluating the d and s values of the operands as described above.

Note that only INTEGER data types are converted to the DECIMAL data type. If one operand is DECIMAL and one is floating-point, the DECIMAL value is converted to a floating-point value. The total number of digits (d) in the DECIMAL value determines its new data type, as shown in Table 8.

Table 8: Result Data Types for DECIMAL Data

Number of DECIMAL Digits in Operand	Floating-point Operands			
	SINGLE	DOUBLE	GFLOAT	HFLOAT
1–6	SINGLE	DOUBLE	GFLOAT	HFLOAT
7–15	DOUBLE	DOUBLE	GFLOAT	HFLOAT
16	DOUBLE	DOUBLE	HFLOAT	HFLOAT
17–31	HFLOAT	HFLOAT	HFLOAT	HFLOAT

If the value of d is between 7 and 15, the operand is converted to:

- DOUBLE if the floating-point operand is SINGLE or DOUBLE
- GFLOAT if the floating-point operand is GFLOAT
- HFLOAT if the floating-point operand is HFLOAT

Thus, a DECIMAL(8,5) operand is converted to DOUBLE if the other operand is SINGLE or DOUBLE, to GFLOAT if the other operand is GFLOAT, and to HFLOAT if the other operand is HFLOAT.

Note also that exponentiation of a DECIMAL data type returns a REAL value.

See the *BASIC User's Guide* for more information on data type interactions, conversions, and promotion rules in BASIC numeric expressions.

7.2 String Expressions

String expressions are string entities separated by the plus sign (+). When used in a string expression, the plus sign concatenates strings.

For example:

```
100 INPUT "Type two words to be combined";A$, B$  
      C$ = A$ + B$  
      PRINT C$  
200 END  
  
RUNNH  
  
Type two words to be combined? hello  
? goodbye  
  
hellogoodbye  
  
Ready
```

7.3 Conditional Expressions

Conditional expressions can be either relational or logical expressions.

Numeric relational expressions compare numeric operands to determine whether the expression is true or false. String relational expressions compare string operands to determine which string expression occurs first in the ASCII collating sequence.

Logical expressions contain integer operands and logical operators. BASIC determines whether the specified logical expression is true or false by testing the numeric result of the expression. Note that in conditional expressions, as in any numeric expression, when BYTE and WORD operands are converted to WORD and LONG, the specified operation is performed in the higher data type, and the result returned is also of the higher data type. When one of the operands is a negative value, this conversion will produce accurate but perhaps confusing results, because BASIC performs a sign extend when converting BYTE and WORD integers to a higher integer data type. See Section 7.1.1 for information on integer conversion rules.

7.3.1 Numeric Relational Expressions

Operators in numeric relational expressions compare the values of two operands and return: 1) a minus one if the relation is true or 2) a zero if the relation is false. The data type of the result is the default integer type. For example:

Example 1

```
100 A = 10
    B = 15
    X% = (A <> B)
    IF X% = -1%
        THEN PRINT 'Relationship is true'
    ELSE IF X% = 0
        THEN PRINT 'Relationship is false'
    END IF
END IF
```

RUNNH

Relationship is true

Example 2

```
10 A = 10
    B = 15
    X% = A = B
    IF X% = -1%
        THEN PRINT 'Relationship is true'
    ELSE IF X% = 0
        THEN PRINT 'Relationship is false'
    END IF
END IF
```

RUNNH

Relationship is false

Table 9 shows how numeric operators work in numeric relational expressions.

Table 9: Numeric Relational Operators

Operator	Example	Meaning
=	A = B	A is equal to B.
<	A < B	A is less than B.
>	A > B	A is greater than B.
<= or =<	A <= B	A is less than or equal to B.
>= or =>	A >= B	A is greater than or equal to B.
<> or ><	A <> B	A is not equal to B.
==	A == B	A and B will PRINT the same because they are equal to six significant digits.

7.3.2 String Relational Expressions

Operators in string relational expressions determine how BASIC compares strings. BASIC determines the value of each character in the string by converting it to its ASCII value. ASCII values are listed in Appendix C in *BASIC on VAX/VMS Systems*, *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems*, and *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems*. BASIC compares the strings character by character, left to right, until it finds a difference in ASCII value. For example:

```
10 A$ = 'ABC'
   B$ = 'ABZ'
20 IF A$ < B$
   THEN PRINT 'ABC comes before ABZ'
   GOTO 99
 ELSE IF A$ == B$
   THEN PRINT 'The strings are identical'
   GOTO 99
 ELSE IF A$ > B$
   THEN PRINT 'ABC comes after ABZ'
   GOTO 99
 END IF
END IF
55 PRINT 'Strings are equal but not identical'
99 END
```

In this example, BASIC compares A\$ and B\$ character by character. The strings are identical up to the third character. Because the ASCII value of "Z" (90) is greater than the ASCII value of "C" (67), A\$ is less than B\$. BASIC evaluates the expression A\$ < B\$ as true (-1), prints "ABC comes before ABZ" and goes to line 99.

If two strings of differing lengths are identical up to the last character in the shorter string, BASIC pads the shorter string with spaces (ASCII value 32) to generate strings of equal length, unless the operator is the double equals sign (==). If the operator is the double equals sign, BASIC does not pad the shorter string. For example:

```
10 A$ = 'ABCDE'
   B$ = 'ABC'
20 PRINT 'B$ comes before A$' IF B$ < A$
   PRINT 'A$ comes before B$' IF A$ < B$
30 C$ = 'ABC'
   IF B$ == C$
   THEN PRINT 'B$ exactly matches C$'
   ELSE PRINT 'B$ does not exactly match C$'
END IF
IF B$ = C$
   THEN PRINT 'B$ matches C$ with padding'
   ELSE PRINT 'B$ does not match C$'
END IF
```

RUNNH

```
B$ comes before A$
B$ does not exactly match C$
B$ matches C$ with padding
```

In this program, BASIC compares "ABCDE" to "ABC " to determine which string comes first in the collating sequence. "ABC " comes before "ABCDE" because the ASCII value for space (32) is lower than the ASCII value of "D" (68). Then BASIC compares "ABC " with "ABC" using the double

equals sign and determines that the strings do not match exactly without padding. The third comparison uses the single equals sign. BASIC pads “ABC” with spaces and determines that the two strings match with padding.

Table 10 shows how numeric operators work in string relational expressions.

Table 10: String Relational Operators

Operator	Example	Meaning
=	A\$ = B\$	Strings A\$ and B\$ are identical after the shorter string has been padded with spaces to equal the length of the longer string.
<	A\$ < B\$	String A\$ occurs before string B\$ in ASCII sequence.
>	A\$ > B\$	String A\$ occurs after string B\$ in ASCII sequence.
<= or =<	A\$ <= B\$	String A\$ is identical to or precedes string B\$ in ASCII sequence.
>= or =>	A\$ >= B\$	String A\$ is identical to or follows string B\$ in ASCII sequence.
<> or ><	A\$ <> B\$	String A\$ is not identical to string B\$.
==	A\$ == B\$	Strings A\$ and B\$ are identical in composition and length, without padding.

BASIC treats unquoted strings typed in response to the INPUT statement differently than quoted strings by ignoring leading and trailing spaces and tabs. That is, BASIC evaluates the quoted strings “ABC” and “ABC ” as equal but not identical because the == operator does not pad the shorter string with spaces. When you input the same strings as unquoted strings in response to the INPUT prompt, BASIC evaluates them as equal and identical because it ignores the trailing spaces. The LINPUT statement, on the other hand, treats unquoted strings as string literals so the trailing spaces are part of the string, and BASIC evaluates the strings as equal but not identical.

7.3.3 Logical Expressions

A logical expression contains either:

- A unary logical operator and one integer operand
- Two integer operands separated by a binary logical operator
- One integer operand

Logical expressions are valid only when the operands are integers. If the expression contains two integer operands of differing data types, the resulting integer has the same data type as the higher integer operand. For instance, the result of an expression that contains a BYTE integer and a WORD integer would be a WORD integer. Table 6 shows how integer data types interact with each other in expressions.

BASIC determines whether the condition is true or false by testing the result of the logical expression to see whether any bits are set. If no bits are set, the value of the expression is zero and it is evaluated as false; if any bits are set, the value of the expression is nonzero, and the expression is evaluated as true. BASIC generally accepts any nonzero value in logical expressions as true. However, logical operators can return unanticipated results unless minus one is specified for true values and zero for false. Therefore, logical operators should be used on the results of relational expressions to obtain valid and predictable results. Table 11 lists logical operators. Examples that show how logical operators work on nonzero and minus one values follow the table.

Table 11: Logical Operators

Operator	Example	Meaning
NOT	NOT A%	The bit-by-bit complement of A%. If A% is true (-1), NOT A% is false (0).
AND	A% AND B%	The logical product of A% and B%. A% AND B% is true only if both A% and B% are true.
OR	A% OR B%	The logical sum of A% and B%. A% OR B% is false only if both A% and B% are false; otherwise, A% OR B% is true.
XOR	A% XOR B%	The logical exclusive OR of A% and B%. A% XOR B% is true if either A% or B% is true but not if both are true.
EQV	A% EQV B%	The logical equivalence of A% and B%. A% EQV B% is true if A% and B% are both true or both false; otherwise, the value is false.
IMP	A% IMP B%	The logical implication of A% and B%. A% IMP B% is false only if A% is true and B% is false; otherwise, the value is true.

The truth tables in Table 12 summarize the results of these logical operations. Zero is false; minus one is true.

Table 12: Truth Tables

A%		NOT A%	A%	B%	A% OR B%
0	-1	0	0	0	0
-1	0	-1	0	-1	-1
			-1	-0	-1
			-1	-1	-1
A%	B%	A% AND B%	A%	B%	A% EQV B%
0	0	0	0	0	-1
0	-1	0	0	-1	0
-1	0	0	-1	0	0
-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1
A%	B%	A% XOR B%	A%	B%	A% IMP B%
0	0	0	0	0	-1
0	-1	-1	0	-1	-1
-1	0	-1	-1	0	0
-1	-1	0	-1	-1	-1

The operators XOR and EQV are logical complements.

Note that in logical expressions, any nonzero value is evaluated as true, while in relational expressions, a minus one is generated as a true value. Logical operators set bits in the result of the expression; any bit set is a nonzero value and is evaluated as true. For this reason, it is important to use logical operators on the results of relational expressions (the values of minus one and zero) to avoid unanticipated results. For example:

```

10  A% = 2%
20  B% = 4%
30  IF A% THEN PRINT 'A% IS TRUE'

```

```
40 IF B% THEN PRINT 'B% IS TRUE'
50 IF A% AND B% THEN PRINT 'A% AND B% IS TRUE'
      ELSE PRINT 'A% AND B% IS FALSE'
60 END
```

RUNNH

```
A% IS TRUE
B% IS TRUE
A% AND B% IS FALSE
```

In this example, the values of A% and B% both test as true because they are nonzero values. However, the logical AND of these two variables returns an unanticipated result of "false."

The program returns this seemingly contradictory result because logical operators work on the individual bits of the operands. The 8-bit binary representation of 2% is:

```
0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0
```

The 8-bit binary representation of 4% is:

```
0 0 0 0 0 1 0 0
```

Each value tests as true because it is nonzero. However, the AND operation on these two values sets a bit in the result only if the corresponding bit is set in both operands. Therefore, the result of the AND operation on 4% and 2% is:

```
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
```

No bits are set in the result, so the value tests as false (zero).

If the value of B% is changed to 6%, the resulting value tests as true (nonzero) because both 6% and 2% have the second bit set. Therefore, BASIC sets the second bit in the result and the value tests as nonzero and true.

The 8-bit binary representation of minus one is:

```
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
```

The result of -1% AND -1% is -1% because BASIC sets bits in the result for each corresponding bit that is set in the operands. The result, therefore, tests as true because it is a nonzero value. For example:

```
10 A% = -1%
20 B% = -1%
30 IF A% THEN PRINT 'A% IS TRUE'
40 IF B% THEN PRINT 'B% IS TRUE'
50 IF A% AND B% THEN PRINT 'A% AND B% IS TRUE'
      ELSE PRINT 'A% AND B% IS FALSE'
60 END
```

RUNNH

```
A% IS TRUE
B% IS TRUE
A% AND B% IS TRUE
```

Your program may also return unanticipated results if you use the NOT operator with a nonzero operand that is not minus one. For example:

```
10  A%=-1%
20  B%=2
30  IF A% THEN PRINT 'A% IS TRUE'
    ELSE PRINT 'A% IS FALSE'
40  IF B% THEN PRINT 'B% IS TRUE'
    ELSE PRINT 'B% IS FALSE'
50  IF NOT A% THEN PRINT 'NOT A% IS TRUE'
    ELSE PRINT 'NOT A% IS FALSE'
60  IF NOT B% THEN PRINT 'NOT B% IS TRUE'
    ELSE PRINT 'NOT B% IS FALSE'
99  END
```

RUNNH

```
A% IS TRUE
B% IS TRUE
NOT A% IS FALSE
NOT B% IS TRUE
```

In this example, BASIC evaluates both A% and B% as true because they are nonzero. NOT A% is evaluated as false (zero) because the binary complement of minus one is zero. NOT B% is evaluated as true because the binary complement of two has bits set and, therefore, is a nonzero value.

Note

DIGITAL recommends that you use logical operators on the results of relational expressions to avoid obtaining unanticipated results.

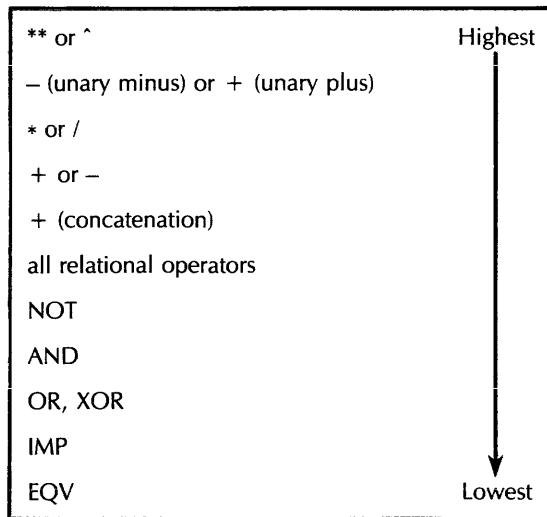
7.4 Evaluating Expressions

BASIC evaluates expressions according to operator precedence. Each arithmetic, relational, and string operator in an expression has a position in the hierarchy of operators. The operator's position tells BASIC when to perform the operation. Parentheses can change the order of precedence.

Table 13 lists all operators as BASIC evaluates them. Note that:

- Operators with equal precedence are evaluated logically from left-to-right.
- BASIC evaluates expressions enclosed in parentheses first, even when the operator in parentheses has a lower precedence than that outside the parentheses.

Table 13: Numeric Operator Precedence



BASIC thus evaluates the expression $A = 15^2 + 12^2 - (35 * 8)$ in five steps:

1. $15^2 = 225$ Exponentiation (left-most expression)
2. $12^2 = 144$ Exponentiation
3. $225 + 144 = 369$ Addition
4. $(35 * 8) = 280$ Multiplication
5. $369 - 280 = 89$ Subtraction

There is one exception to this order of precedence: when an operator that does not require operands on either side of it (such as NOT) immediately follows an operator that does require operands on both sides (such as +), BASIC evaluates the second operator first. For example:

$A\% + \text{NOT } B\% + C\%$

This expression is evaluated as:

$(A\% + (\text{NOT } B\%)) + C\%$

BASIC evaluates the expression NOT B before it evaluates the expression A + NOT B. When the NOT expression does not follow the + expression, the normal order of precedence is followed:

$\text{NOT } A\% + B\% + C\%$

This expression is evaluated as:

$\text{NOT } ((A\% + B\%) + C\%)$

BASIC evaluates the two plus expressions (A% + B%) and ((A% + B%) + C%) because the plus (+) operator has a higher precedence than the NOT operator.

BASIC evaluates nested parenthetical expressions from the inside out. For example:

```
100    A = (((25 + 5) / 5) * 7) + 3
      PRINT A
300    B = 25 + 5 / 5 * 7 + 3
      PRINT B
```

RUNNH

```
45
35
```

In this program, BASIC evaluates the parenthetical expression A quite differently from expression B. For expression A, BASIC evaluates the innermost parenthetical expression (25 + 5) first, then the second inner expression (30 / 5), then (6 * 7), and finally (42 + 3). For expression B, BASIC evaluates (5 / 5) first, then (1 * 7), then (25 + 7 + 3) to obtain a different value.

PART II

Compiler Commands

APPEND

1.0 APPEND

Function

The APPEND command merges an existing BASIC source program with the program currently in memory.

Format

```
APPEND [ file-spec ]
```

Syntax Rules

1. *File-spec* names the file of BASIC program lines you want to merge with the program currently in memory. The VAX-11 BASIC default file type is BAS, and the BASIC-PLUS-2 default file type is B2S.

General Rules

1. If you type APPEND without specifying a file name, BASIC prompts with:

```
APPEND file name--
```

Respond with a file name. If you respond with a carriage return and no file name, VAX-11 BASIC searches for a file named NONAME.BAS. BASIC-PLUS-2 searches for a file named NONAME.B2S. If the compiler cannot find NONAME.BAS or NONAME.B2S, VAX-11 BASIC signals the error "file not found"; BASIC-PLUS-2 signals "can't find file or account".

APPEND

2. You can append the contents of *file-spec* to a source program called into memory with the OLD command or created in the BASIC environment. If there is no program in memory, BASIC appends the *file-spec* to an empty program with the default file name, NONAME.
3. If the *file-spec* contains a BASIC line with the same line number as a line of the program in memory, the line in the appended file replaces the line of the program in memory. Otherwise, BASIC inserts appended lines into the program in memory in sequential, ascending line number order.
4. The APPEND command does not change the name of the program in memory.
5. If you have not saved the appended version of the program, BASIC signals the warning "Unsaved change has been made, CTRL/Z or EXIT to exit" the first time you try to leave the BASIC environment.

Examples

APPEND PROGB

2.0 ASSIGN (VAX-11 BASIC)

Function

The ASSIGN command equates a logical name to a complete file specification, a device, or another logical name within the context of the BASIC environment.

Format

```
ASSIGN equiv-nam[:] log-nam[:]
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Equiv-nam* specifies the file specification, device, or logical name to be assigned a logical name. If you specify a physical device name, terminate it with a colon (:).
2. *Log-nam* is the 1– to 63–character logical name to be associated with *equiv-nam*. You can specify a logical name for any portion of a file specification. If the logical name translates to a device name, and will be used in place of a device name in a file specification, terminate it with a colon (:).

General Rules

1. When the logical name assignment supersedes another logical name assigned previously, BASIC displays the message “previous logical name assignment replaced”.
2. If *log-nam* has more than 63 characters, BASIC signals the error “invalid logical name”.
3. Logical names assigned with the ASSIGN command are placed in the process logical name table and remain there until you exit the BASIC environment.

Examples

```
ASSIGN [LEONARD.BAS] PRO:
```

BRLRES

3.0 BRLRES (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The BRLRES command allows you to specify a memory-resident BASIC-PLUS-2 or user-created library to be used when you task-build the program. When you use the BUILD command, BASIC-PLUS-2 includes the specified library in the Task Builder command file. The default library for the BRLRES command is chosen by your system manager when BASIC-PLUS-2 is installed.

Format

BRLRES [lib-param]
lib-param: { file-spec NONE }

Syntax Rules

1. If you enter the BRLRES command without a *lib-param*, BASIC prompts for one and displays the name of the current default memory-resident library.
 - *File-spec* can be a library supplied by BASIC-PLUS-2 or a user-created library.
 - NONE tells the Task Builder not to link your task to the BASIC-PLUS-2 default resident library. Therefore, the Task Builder links to the BASIC-PLUS-2 object module library, BP2OTS.OLB.
 - If you type a carriage return in response to the prompt, the current default memory-resident library is used.

General Rules

1. The memory-resident libraries supplied by BASIC-PLUS-2 are LB:[1,1]BP2RES and LB:[1,1]BP2SML on RSX-11M/M-PLUS systems and LB:BP2RES and LB:BP2SML on RSTS/E systems. LB: is a RSTS/E logical name for the library account on disk. Because memory-resident libraries are optional, your system manager can select none, one, or both when BASIC-PLUS-2 is installed. See *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems* or *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems* for information on BASIC-PLUS-2 memory-resident libraries.
2. BASIC-PLUS-2 links the specified memory-resident library to your program when you task-build the program, so you must use the BRLRES command before you use the BUILD command to include the specified library in the Task Builder command file.
3. The BRLRES library you specify is included in your Task Builder command files until you specify a new library with the BRLRES command or exit from the BASIC environment. When you exit from the environment, the original default library is restored as the default.
4. You can override the BRLRES command with the /BRLRES qualifier added to the BUILD command, but the specified library remains in effect for only one BUILD operation.

BRLRES

5. The Task Builder returns an error message when the requested memory-resident library is not available.
6. Consult your system manager for information about the resident libraries available to you.

Examples

RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems

```
BRLRES LB:[1,1]BP2RES
```

RSTS/E Systems

```
BRLRES LB:BP2RES
```

BUILD

4.0 BUILD (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The BUILD command generates a command (CMD) file and an overlay description language (ODL) file for the Task Builder. The command file contains instructions that enable the Task Builder to link your program module(s) with libraries and other routines. The overlay description language file specifies how segments of the task-built program are overlaid when you run it.

Format

```
BUILD [ prog-nam [ sub-nam,... ] ] [ /qualifier ]...
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Prog-nam* names the program you want to build. If you do not specify a *prog-nam*, BASIC-PLUS-2 creates CMD and ODL files for the current program or for NONAME if there is no current program.
2. *Sub-nam* names the subprogram or subprograms you want to link to the main program. You must specify a *prog-nam* if you specify a *sub-nam*.
3. The command file takes the name of the main program and a default extension of CMD. The ODL file takes the name of the main program and a default extension of ODL.
4. */Qualifier* specifies a qualifier keyword that sets a BASIC default. Table 17 lists all BASIC-PLUS-2 qualifiers and describes their functions.
5. The BUILD command line must fit on a single 80-character line.

General Rules

1. The BUILD command does not change the current context of the BASIC-PLUS-2 environment.
2. The BUILD command generates the CMD and ODL files. It does not cause the Task Builder to begin operation.
3. In addition to program names and build qualifiers, the BUILD command accepts defaults from previously specified BRLRES, DSKLIB, ODLRMS, RMSRES, LIBR, and SET commands.
4. BUILD qualifiers tell the Task Builder to perform special operations on object modules when you task-build the program. You can abbreviate all qualifiers to the first three letters of the qualifier keyword.

Examples

```
BUILD MAIN,SUB1,SUB2 /DUMP /REL
```

5.0 \$ Command

Function

You can enter a system command while in the BASIC environment by typing a dollar sign (\$) before the command. BASIC passes the command to the operating system for execution. The context of the BASIC environment and the program currently in memory do not change in VAX-11 BASIC and BASIC-PLUS-2 on RSX-11M/M-PLUS systems. On RSTS/E systems, the system command executes and control returns to the default run-time system, not to BASIC-PLUS-2.

Format

```
$ system-command
```

Syntax Rules

1. BASIC passes *system-command* directly to your operating system without checking for validity.

General Rules

1. The terminal displays any error messages or output that the *system-command* generates.

VAX-11 BASIC



1. Control returns to the BASIC environment after the *system-command* executes. The context (source file status, loaded modules, and so on) of the BASIC environment and the program currently in memory do not change unless the *system-command* causes the operating system to abort BASIC or log you out.
2. On VAX/VMS systems, the *system-command* you specify executes within the context of a subprocess. Consequently, commands such as the DCL SET command execute only within the subprocess and do not affect the process running BASIC.

BASIC-PLUS-2

1. On RSX-11M/M-PLUS systems, control returns to the BASIC environment after the *system-command* executes. The context (source file status, loaded modules, and so on) of the BASIC environment and the program currently in memory do not change unless the *system-command* causes the operating system to abort BASIC or log you out.
2. On RSTS/E systems, the context of the environment and the program currently in memory are lost. After the system command executes, control passes to monitor level, not to BASIC-PLUS-2.
RSTS
RSTS/E logo: A circle containing the letters "RSTS" and "E".
3. If you have made changes to the program currently in memory, BASIC-PLUS-2 displays the message "Unsaved change has been made – type SCRATCH or REPLACE" when you enter a *system-command*.

\$ Command

Examples

VAX-11 BASIC

Ready

```
$SHOW PROTECTION  
SYSTEM=RWED, OWNER=RWED, GROUP=RWED, WORLD=RE
```

Ready

BASIC-PLUS-2

```
$DIR STOCK,B2S  
%Unsaved change has been made - type SCRATCH or REPLACE,
```

BASIC2

REPLACE

BASIC2

```
$DIR STOCK,B2S
```

6.0 COMPILE

Function

The COMPILE command converts a BASIC source program to an object module and writes the object file to disk.

Format

```
COMPILE [ file-spec ] [ /qualifier ]...
```

Syntax Rules

1. *File-spec* specifies a name for the output file or files. If you do not provide a *file-spec*, the compiler uses the name of the program currently in memory for the file name, a default file type of OBJ for the object file, and a default file type of LIS (VAX-11 BASIC) or LST (BASIC-PLUS-2) for the listing file, if a listing file is requested. BASIC-PLUS-2 uses a default file type of MAC for the macro source code file when a macro file is requested.
2. In VAX-11 BASIC, *file-spec* can precede or follow */qualifier*. In BASIC-PLUS-2, *file-spec* must precede the qualifiers.
3. */Qualifier* specifies a qualifier keyword that sets a BASIC default. See Section 22.0 for information on BASIC qualifiers. Table 16 lists and describes VAX-11 BASIC qualifiers. Table 17 lists and describes BASIC-PLUS-2 qualifiers.
4. In cases of ambiguous or erroneous qualifiers, VAX-11 BASIC signals "Unknown qualifier", BASIC-PLUS-2 signals "Illegal switch", and the program does not compile. When qualifiers conflict, BASIC compiles the program using the last specified conflicting qualifier. For example:

```
COMPILE /OBJ /NOOBJ
```

BASIC compiles the program currently in memory but does not create an OBJ file.

5. You can abbreviate all positive COMPILE qualifiers to the first three letters of the qualifier keyword. A negative qualifier can be abbreviated to NO and the first three letters of the qualifier keyword.
6. There must be a program in memory or the COMPILE command does not execute and BASIC does not signal an error or warning.

General Rules

1. If an object file for the program already exists in your directory, BASIC-PLUS-2 on RSTS/E systems overwrites it with the new object file. VAX-11 BASIC and BASIC-PLUS-2 on RSX-11M/M-PLUS systems create a new version of the OBJ file.

COMPILE

2. You should not specify both a file name and file type. For example:

VAX `COMPILE NEWOBJ.FIL /LIS /OBJ`

- VAX-11 BASIC creates two versions of NEWOBJ.FIL. The first version, NEWOBJ.FIL;1, is the listing file; the second version, NEWOBJ.FIL;2, is the object file. If you specify only a file name, BASIC uses the OBJ and LIS file type defaults when creating these files.
- BASIC-PLUS-2 creates only the object file and names it NEWOBJ.FIL.

3. Use the COMPILE/NOOBJECT command to check your program for errors without producing an object file.

Examples

`COMPILE NEWSTRING /DOUBLE /LIST`

7.0 CONTINUE

Function

The CONTINUE command continues program execution after BASIC executes a STOP statement or, in VAX-11 BASIC, encounters a CTRL/C.

Format

```
CONTINUE
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. In VAX-11 BASIC, a program stops executing in response to a STOP statement or a CTRL/C:
 - You can enter immediate mode commands and resume program execution with the CONTINUE command.
 - You cannot resume program execution if you have made source code changes or additions.
2. In BASIC-PLUS-2, a program stops executing when BASIC executes a STOP statement and control passes to the BASIC-PLUS-2 debugger, which prompts with a pound sign (#). Type the CONTINUE command to resume program execution. Note that if the program was executed with the RUN/DEBUG command, you can enter debugger commands before resuming program execution with the CONTINUE command. See Part VI in this manual for more information on debugger commands.



Examples

VAX-11 BASIC

```
%BAS-I-STO, Stop  
-BAS-I-FROLINMOD, from line 25 in module ABC  
Ready
```

```
CONTINUE
```

BASIC-PLUS-2

```
Stop at line 20  
#CONTINUE
```

DELETE

8.0 DELETE

Function

The **DELETE** command removes a specified line or range of lines from the program currently in memory.

Format

DELETE lin-num [sep lin-num] ,...
sep: { , } - { }

Syntax Rules

1. You must enter at least one line number. If you do not, **DELETE** has no effect in VAX-11 *BASIC*, while *BASIC-PLUS-2* signals the error "Illegal Delete command".
2. The *sep* characters allow you to delete individual lines or a block of lines.
 - If you separate line numbers with commas, *BASIC* deletes each specified line number.
 - If you separate line numbers with a hyphen (-), *BASIC* deletes the inclusive range of lines. The lower line number must come first. If it does not, **DELETE** has no effect in VAX-11 *BASIC*, while *BASIC-PLUS-2* signals the error "Bad line number pair".
3. You can combine individual line numbers and line ranges in a single **DELETE** command. Note, however, that a line number range must be followed by a comma and not another hyphen, or *BASIC* signals an error.

General Rules

1. *BASIC-PLUS-2* signals an error if there are no lines in the specified range. VAX-11 *BASIC* does not signal an error and the **DELETE** command has no effect.
2. If you do not specify a beginning line number for a range, VAX-11 *BASIC* signals the error "illegal line number". *BASIC-PLUS-2* assumes a beginning line number of 1 and deletes all lines in the range 1 - *lin-num*.
3. If you do not specify an end line number in a range, VAX-11 *BASIC* does not delete any lines and does not signal an error. *BASIC-PLUS-2* deletes only the specified line number.

Examples

DELETE 50

DELETE 70-80, 110, 124

DELETE 50,60,90-110

9.0 DSKLIB (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The DSKLIB command lets you select a disk-resident, object module library to be used when you build your program. When you use the BUILD command, *BASIC-PLUS-2* includes the specified library in the Task Builder command file. Every system has a disk library default set when *BASIC-PLUS-2* is installed.

Format

```
DSKLIB [ file-spec ]
```

Syntax Rules

1. If you enter the DSKLIB command without a *file-spec*, *BASIC-PLUS-2* prompts for one and displays the name of the current default disk-resident library.
 - *File-spec* can be a disk-resident, object module library supplied with *BASIC-PLUS-2* or a user-created library.
 - If you type a carriage return in response to the prompt, *BASIC-PLUS-2* uses the default disk-resident library.

General Rules

1. The object module libraries supplied by *BASIC-PLUS-2* are LB:BP2OTS.OLB on *RSTS/E* systems and LB:[1,1]BP2OTS.OLB on *RSX-11M/M-PLUS* systems. LB: is a *RSTS/E* logical name for the library account on disk. These libraries contain the BASIC Object Time System (OTS). OLB is the default object module library file type. If your system does not have memory-resident libraries, the Task Builder extracts all BASIC routines from these disk-resident libraries. See *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems* and *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems* for more information on object module libraries.
2. The Task Builder links the specified library to your program when you task-build the program. You must use the DSKLIB command before you use the BUILD command to include the library you want in the Task Builder command file.
3. The DSKLIB library you specify is included in all Task Builder command files until you specify a new library with the DSKLIB command or exit from the BASIC environment. When you exit from the BASIC environment, the default object module library set at installation is restored as the default disk-resident library.
4. You can override the DSKLIB command with the /DSKLIB qualifier added to the BUILD command, but the specified library remains in effect for only one BUILD routine.
5. The Task Builder returns an error message when the requested disk-resident library is not available.
6. Consult your system manager for information about the disk-resident libraries available to you.

DSKLIB

Examples

RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems

```
DSKLIB LB:[1,1]BP2OTS
```

RSTS/E Systems

```
DSKLIB LB:BP2OTS
```

10.0 EDIT

Function

The EDIT command allows you to edit individual program lines in the BASIC environment. In VAX-11 BASIC, EDIT with no arguments invokes the default text editor and reads the current program into the editor's buffer. In BASIC-PLUS-2, EDIT with no arguments puts you in the BASIC-PLUS-2 editing mode. BASIC-PLUS-2 editing mode commands are listed in Table 14 and described in Sections 10.1 to 10.6.

Format

VAX-11 BASIC

```
EDIT [ [ lin-num ] search-clause [ replace-clause ] ]  
  
search-clause:    delim unq-str1 delim  
replace-clause:   [ unq-str2 ] [ delim [ int-const1 ] [ , int-const2 ] ]
```



BASIC-PLUS-2

```
EDIT [ [ lin-num [ - lin-num ] ] search-clause [ replace-clause ] ]  
  
search-clause:    delim unq-str1 delim  
replace-clause:   [ unq-str2 ] delim [ int-const1 ]
```



Syntax Rules

1. *Lin-num* specifies the line to be edited.
2. *Search-clause* specifies the text you want to remove or replace. *Unq-str1* is the search string you want to remove or replace.
3. *Replace-clause* specifies the replacement text and the occurrence of the search string you want to replace.
 - *Unq-str2* is the replacement string.
 - *Int-const1* specifies the occurrence of *unq-str1* you want to replace. If you do not specify an occurrence, BASIC replaces the first occurrence of *unq-str1*.
4. *Delim* can be any printing character not used in *unq-str1* or *unq-str2*. The examples in this and the following sections use the slash (/) as a delimiter.
5. The *delim* characters in *search-clause* must match, or BASIC signals an error.
6. If the *delim* you use to signal the end of *replace-clause* does not match the *delim* used in *search-clause*, BASIC does not signal an error and treats the end *delim* as part of *unq-str2*.

EDIT

7. BASIC replaces or removes text in a program line as follows:
 - If *unq-str1* is found, BASIC replaces it with *unq-str2*.
 - If *unq-str1* is not found, BASIC signals an error.
 - If *unq-str1* is null, VAX-11 BASIC signals “no change made”. BASIC-PLUS-2 replaces the first character of the last edited line with *unq-str2* and does not signal an error.
 - If *unq-str2* is null, BASIC deletes *unq-str1*. The *delim* in the *replace-clause* is required if you want to delete *unq-str1*.
 - BASIC matches and replaces strings exactly as you type them. If *unq-str1* is uppercase, BASIC searches for an uppercase string. If it is lowercase, BASIC searches for a lowercase string.



VAX-11 BASIC

1. The EDIT command followed by a carriage return causes BASIC to temporarily save your program in a file called BASEEDITMP.TMP. BASIC then invokes the same editor you use when you type the DCL EDIT command. When you finish editing your program and exit the editor, the edited program is the program currently in memory, and the context of the BASIC environment is unchanged. Note that BASIC deletes all versions of BASEEDITMP.TMP when you return to BASIC from the editor.
2. *Int-const2* in *replace-clause* specifies the sub-line of a block of program code where you want BASIC to begin the search.



BASIC-PLUS-2

1. The EDIT command followed by a carriage return puts you in the BASIC-PLUS-2 editing mode. Editing mode commands, listed in Table 14 and described in Sections 10.1 to 10.6, are valid only in the BASIC-PLUS-2 editing mode. The editing mode prompt is an asterisk (*).
2. BASIC-PLUS-2 sets a specified line number as the current edit line, even when the editing operation fails. That line number remains set as the current edit line until you specify another line number or exit the BASIC environment.
3. You can edit a range of lines by separating two line numbers with a hyphen. BASIC signals an error and does not edit the specified range if there are spaces between the hyphen and the line numbers.
4. If you specify a range of lines and an occurrence, BASIC replaces each occurrence of *unq-str1* in each line of the range beginning with the specified occurrence. For example:

```
10 PRINT DISPLAY$, DISPLAY$, DISPLAY$  
20 PRINT DISPLAY$, DISPLAY$, DISPLAY$  
EDIT 10-20 /DISPLAY$/NEW$/2
```

```
10 PRINT DISPLAY$, NEW$, NEW$  
20 PRINT DISPLAY$, NEW$, NEW$
```

```
"DISPLAY$" replaced by "NEW$",  
4 substitutions
```

General Rules**VAX-11 BASIC**

1. VAX-11 BASIC displays the edited line with changes after the EDIT command successfully executes.
2. If you specify a *lin-num* with no text parameters, VAX-11 BASIC displays the line.

**BASIC-PLUS-2**

1. BASIC-PLUS-2 displays the edited line or lines with changes after the EDIT command successfully executes. It also displays a message showing the search string, replacement string, and number of replacements made.
2. If you want to edit a range of numbers, you must specify both the beginning and end of the range. BASIC-PLUS-2 does not default to the last edited line or to the last line number in the program.
3. When you specify a *lin-num* with no text parameters, BASIC-PLUS-2 displays the message "Current edit line is x", where x is the specified *lin-num*.
4. When you type EDIT with no parameters to enter the editing mode, BASIC-PLUS-2 checks the last edited line number to make sure that it still exists in the current program. If it has been deleted, BASIC-PLUS-2 displays the message "?No current line".

**Examples****VAX-11 BASIC**

```
EDIT 100 /LEFT$/RIGHT$/3,2
```

```
EDIT
```

BASIC-PLUS-2

```
EDIT 300-400 /LEFT$/ /
```

```
EDIT 300 /LEFT$/RIGHT$/3
```

```
EDIT
```

EDIT

BP2

Table 14: BASIC-PLUS-2 Editing Mode Commands

Command	Function
DEFINE	Used to enter a macro definition. A macro definition consists of editing commands. You cannot, though, use the DEFINE and EXECUTE commands in a macro definition. To end the macro definition, type a carriage return and then EXIT or CTRL/Z. You must use the EXECUTE command to execute the macro definition.
EXECUTE	Executes the macro defined by the DEFINE command as many times as you specify.
EXIT (or CTRL/Z)	Allows you to exit from editing mode, execute an INSERT command, or end a DEFINE command.
FIND	Searches from the last edited line to the end of the current program for a specified string.
INSERT	Allows you to add program lines after a specified line number. Type a carriage return and EXIT or CTRL/Z to execute this subcommand.
SUBSTITUTE	Performs the same function and accepts the same text parameters as the EDIT command; you cannot, however, specify line numbers or line number ranges.

DEFINE

10.1 DEFINE (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The DEFINE editing mode command allows you to enter a macro definition. The macro consists of a series of editing mode commands in the order in which they are to execute.

Format

```
{ D  
  DEFINE }
```

Syntax Rules

1. The macro definition must consist of valid editing mode commands or *BASIC-PLUS-2* signals an error. You cannot use the DEFINE or EXECUTE editing mode commands in a macro definition.

General Rules

1. Type the DEFINE command and a carriage return, then enter your macro definition. Type EXIT or CTRL/Z in response to the DEFINE prompt (->) when you have finished entering your macro definition. *BASIC-PLUS-2* displays the editing mode prompt, and you can enter more editing commands.
2. BASIC writes the macro definition to a file, so the definition remains in effect until you enter another DEFINE command. That is, an EXECUTE command executes the last defined macro definition.

Examples

```
*DEFINE  
  
Enter command sequence:  
->FIND REM  
->SUBSTITUTE /REM//  
->EXIT  
  
*
```

EXECUTE

10.2 EXECUTE (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The EXECUTE editing mode command executes the last macro defined by the DEFINE command. You specify the number of times the macro is to execute.

Format

```
{ EXE  
EXECUTE } [ int-const ]
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Int-const* specifies the number of times the macro executes. If you do not specify *int-const*, BASIC-PLUS-2 executes the macro once.

General Rules

1. An EXECUTE command always executes the last defined macro definition. If no macro definition exists, BASIC-PLUS-2 signals the error "Command sequence has not been defined".

Examples

```
*EXECUTE 5
```

10.3 EXIT or CTRL/Z (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The EXIT or CTRL/Z editing mode command marks the end of a DEFINE or INSERT command or exits from editing mode.

Format

```
{ E  
| EXIT }
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. If you type EXIT or CTRL/Z in response to the editing mode prompt, *BASIC-PLUS-2* exits from editing mode.
2. If you type EXIT or CTRL/Z to end a DEFINE or INSERT command, *BASIC-PLUS-2* displays the editing mode prompt and you can enter more editing commands.

Examples

*DEFINE

```
Enter command sequence  
->FIND REM  
->SUBS /REM /!  
->EXIT
```

*

FIND

10.4 FIND (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The FIND editing mode command searches the current program for a specified string starting at the last edited line and continuing to the end of the program.

Format

```
{ F  
FIND { [ unq-str ] }
```

Syntax Rules

1. The FIND command does not require character delimiters for *unq-str*. Delimiters are the space after the command and a carriage return.

General Rules

1. When *unq-str* is found, BASIC-PLUS-2 displays the line that contains the *unq-str*, sets it as the last edited line, and displays an informational message.
2. If *unq-str* is not found, the last edited line remains unchanged and BASIC-PLUS-2 displays a message telling you that the string was not found.
3. The FIND command matches *unq-str* exactly as you type it. If *unq-str* is uppercase, BASIC-PLUS-2 searches for uppercase characters. The delimiters (space and carriage return) are not included in the match.
4. If you do not specify an *unq-str*, the FIND command matches the *unq-str* specified by the last FIND command. If there is no previous FIND command, BASIC-PLUS-2 matches the first character of the last edited line.

Examples

```
*FIND PRIMT  
330      PRIMT 'How many receipts do you have';RECEIPTS  
"PRIMT" found on line 330  
*
```

10.5 INSERT (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The INSERT editing mode command allows you to add lines to a program.

Format

```
{ I  
  } INSERT [ lin-num ]
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Lin-num* specifies the line number after which you want to insert new program lines. If you do not specify a *lin-num*, BASIC defaults to the last edited line.
2. If *lin-num* does not exist in the source program currently in memory, BASIC signals an error.

General Rules

1. Type in program lines, beginning with a line number, after entering the INSERT command. When you are finished inserting lines, type EXIT or CTRL/Z to return to the editing mode. BASIC-PLUS-2 displays the editing mode prompt and you can enter more editing mode commands.
2. If you insert a line number that already exists, BASIC-PLUS-2 replaces the existing line with the code you insert and does not signal a warning.
3. BASIC-PLUS-2 does not perform syntax checks on inserted program lines even when syntax checking is enabled.
4. The current edit line does not change. For example, if the current edit line is 10 and you insert lines 20 and 30, line 10 remains the current edit line.

Examples

```
*INSERT 30  
  
Enter lines to be added after line 30  
->40 INPUT 'More receipts';RECEIPTS$  
->50 IF RECEIPTS$ = ""  
->    THEN GOTO 32767  
->    END IF  
->EXIT  
*
```

SUBSTITUTE

10.6 SUBSTITUTE (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The SUBSTITUTE editing mode command allows you to substitute one character string for another in the program currently in memory. SUBSTITUTE is the editing mode equivalent of the EDIT command with one exception: you cannot specify a range of lines. The SUBSTITUTE subcommand can replace only one occurrence of the specified search string, while the EDIT command can replace all occurrences in a range of lines, if you so specify.

Format

<p style="margin: 0;">{ S SUBSTITUTE { search-clause [replace-clause]</p>
<p style="margin: 0;">search-clause: delim unq-str1 delim replace-clause: [unq-str2] delim [int-const]</p>

Syntax Rules

1. *Delim* marks the beginning and end of the search and replace strings. Delimiters are required before and after *unq-str1*. The delimiter after *unq-str2* is optional.
 - *Delim* can be any printing character not used in the search or replace strings. The examples in this section use the slash (/) as a delimiter.
 - The beginning and ending *delim* characters must match, or BASIC signals an error.
2. *Unq-str1* specifies the string you want to remove or replace. *Unq-str2* specifies the string to be substituted for *unq-str1*.
 - If *unq-str1* is found, BASIC replaces it with *unq-str2*.
 - If *unq-str1* is not found, BASIC signals an error.
 - If you do not specify *unq-str2*, BASIC deletes *unq-str1*.
 - If you do not specify *unq-str1*, BASIC replaces the first character of the last edited line with *unq-str2*.
 - The SUBSTITUTE subcommand matches and replaces strings exactly as you type them. If *unq-str1* is uppercase, BASIC searches for an uppercase string. If it is lowercase, BASIC searches for a lowercase string.
3. *Int-const* specifies the occurrence of *str-lit1* you want to replace. If you do not specify an *int-const*, BASIC replaces the first occurrence of *str-lit1*.
4. If you type only the SUBSTITUTE subcommand and a carriage return, BASIC-PLUS-2 signals the error "Parameters required".

SUBSTITUTE

General Rules

1. BASIC displays the edited line with changes after the SUBSTITUTE command executes.

Examples

```
*SUBSTITUTE /A% /ABSOLUTE% /3
```

EXIT

11.0 EXIT

Function

The EXIT command or CTRL/Z clears memory and returns control to the operating system.

Format

```
EXIT
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. If you type EXIT after creating a new program or editing an old program without first typing SAVE or REPLACE, BASIC signals “Unsaved change has been made, CTRL/Z or EXIT to exit”. The message warns you that the new or revised program will be lost if you do not SAVE or REPLACE it. If you type EXIT again, BASIC exits from the environment whether you have saved your changes or not.

Examples

```
EXIT
```

12.0 HELP

Function

The HELP command displays on-line documentation for BASIC commands, keywords, statements, functions, and conventions.

Format

```
HELP [ unq-str ] ...
```

Syntax Rules

1. If you type HELP with no parameters, BASIC displays a list of topics.
2. *Unq-str* is BASIC topic, keyword, command, statement, function, or convention.
3. The first *unq-str* must be a topic. If it is not, BASIC displays a list of topics for you to choose from.
4. You can specify a subtopic after the topic. Separate one *unq-str* from another with a space.
5. You can use the asterisk (*) wildcard character in *unq-str* or alone as *unq-str*. If you use an asterisk in *unq-str*, BASIC displays information on all topics that match the specified portion of *unq-str*. If you use the asterisk alone, BASIC displays information on all BASIC topics.

General Rules

1. If the *unq-str* you specify is not a unique topic or subtopic, BASIC displays information on all topics or subtopics beginning with *unq-str*. For example:

```
Ready
HELP STATEMENTS CH
STATEMENTS
CHAIN
```

The CHAIN statement transfers control from the current program to another BASIC program. The program to which you CHAIN must be in executable format.

Format

CHAIN <str-exp>

Example

240 CHAIN "COSINE.EXE"

(continued on next page)

HELP

STATEMENTS

CHANGE

The CHANGE statement: 1) converts a string of characters to their ASCII integer values, or 2) converts a list of numbers to a string of ASCII characters.

Format

String Variable to Array:

CHANGE str-exp TO num-array

Array to String Variable:

CHANGE num-array TO str-vbl

Example

200 CHANGE ARRAY_CHANGES TO A\$

Topic?

2. An asterisk (*) indicates that you want to display information that matches any portion of the topic you specify. For example, if you type HELP GO*, BASIC displays information on GOSUB and GOTO.
3. When information on a particular topic or subtopic is not available, BASIC signals the message "Sorry, no documentation on *unq-str*" and a list of "Additional information available".

Examples

HELP STATEMENTS ON GOTO

STATEMENTS

ON

GOTO

The ON GOTO statement transfers program control to one of several lines, depending on the value of a control expression.

Format

```
{ GO TO }
ON int-exp { GOTO } target ,..., [ OTHERWISE target ]
```

Example

330 ON INDEX% GOTO 700,800,900, OTHERWISE 1000

Topic?

IDENTIFY

13.0 IDENTIFY

Function

The IDENTIFY command displays an identification header on the controlling terminal. The header contains the name and version number of BASIC.

Format

```
IDENTIFY
```

General Rules

1. The message displayed by the IDENTIFY command includes the name of the BASIC compiler and the version number.

Examples

VAX-11 BASIC

```
IDENTIFY
```

VAX-11 BASIC V2.0

BASIC-PLUS-2

```
IDENTIFY
```

PDP-11 BASIC-PLUS-2 V2.0

INQUIRE

14.0 INQUIRE

Function

The INQUIRE command is a synonym for the HELP command. See the HELP command for syntax rules.

15.0 LIBRARY (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The LIBRARY command allows you to specify a memory-resident BASIC-PLUS-2 or user-created library to be used when you task-build the program. When you use the BUILD command, BASIC-PLUS-2 includes the specified library in the Task Builder command file. The default library for the LIBRARY command is chosen by your system manager when BASIC-PLUS-2 is installed.

Format

LIBRARY [lib-param]
lib-param: { file-spec lib-nam NONE }

Syntax Rules

1. If you enter the LIBRARY command without a *lib-param*, BASIC-PLUS-2 prompts for one and displays the name of the current default memory-resident library.
 - *Lib-nam* or *file-spec* can be a memory-resident library supplied by BASIC-PLUS-2 or a user-created library. If you specify only *lib-nam* with no device, BASIC-PLUS-2 assumes LB: on RSTS/E systems and LB:[1,1] on RSX-11M/M-PLUS systems.
 - NONE tells the Task Builder not to link your task to the BASIC default memory-resident library. Therefore, the Task Builder links to the BASIC disk-resident, object module library, BP2OTS.OLB.
 - If you type a carriage return in response to the prompt, the current default memory-resident library is used.

General Rules

1. The memory-resident libraries supplied by BASIC-PLUS-2 are BP2RES and BP2SML. Because memory-resident libraries are optional, your system manager can select none, one, or both when BASIC-PLUS-2 is installed. See *BASIC on RSX-11M/MPLUS Systems* or *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems* for information on using BASIC-PLUS-2 memory-resident libraries. See your system manager for information on the libraries available on your system.
2. On RSTS/E systems, the LIBRARY command does not require the LB: logical name. BASIC automatically searches this account for the memory-resident library symbol table. On RSX-11M/M-PLUS systems, the LIBRARY command automatically references libraries on LB:[1,1] unless you specify another UIC.
3. BASIC-PLUS-2 links the specified library to your program when you task-build the program. You must use the LIBRARY command before you use the BUILD command to include the specified library in the Task Builder command file.

LIBRARY

4. The library you specify is included in your Task Builder command files until you specify a new library with the LIBRARY command or exit from the compiler. When you exit from the compiler, the original default library is restored as the default.
5. You can override the LIBRARY command with the /LIBRARY qualifier added to the BUILD command, but the specified library remains in effect for only one BUILD routine.
6. The Task Builder returns an error message when the requested resident library is not available.

Examples

```
LIBRARY BP2RES
```

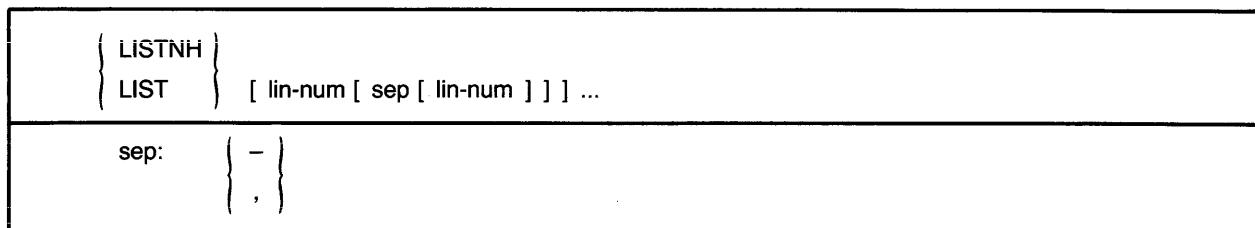
16.0 LIST and LISTNH

Function

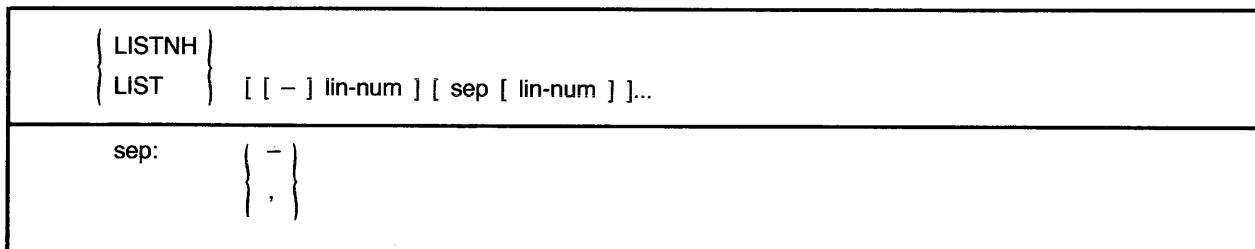
The LIST command displays the program lines of the program currently in memory. Line numbers are sequenced in ascending order. LISTNH displays program lines without the program header.

Format

VAX-11 BASIC



BASIC-PLUS-2



Syntax Rules

1. The LIST command displays program lines, along with a header containing the program name, the current time, and the date. To suppress the program header, type LISTNH.
2. LIST without parameters displays the entire program.
3. The sep characters allow you to display single lines or a range of lines.

- To display single lines, separate line numbers with commas. For example:

`LIST 30,70`

displays a header and lines 30 and 70.

- To display an inclusive range of lines, separate line numbers with a hyphen. The first number must be lower than the second number in the range or BASIC signals an error. For example:

`LIST 30-70`

displays lines 30 through 70.

4. Line number ranges must be separated from other ranges or individual line numbers by commas as BASIC does not allow two consecutive hyphens.

LIST



VAX-11 BASIC

1. A *lin-num* followed by a hyphen and a carriage return displays the specified line and all remaining lines in the program.
2. A hyphen between the LIST command and *lin-num* causes VAX-11 BASIC to signal an error.



BASIC-PLUS-2

1. A hyphen between the LIST command and the *lin-num* displays all lines from the beginning of the program up to and including the *lin-num* you specify.
2. A *lin-num* followed by a comma or a hyphen and a carriage return displays only the specified line.
3. If there are no lines in the specified range, BASIC-PLUS-2 signals an error.

General Rules

1. BASIC displays the source program lines in the order you specify in the command line. That is, BASIC displays line 100 before line 10 if you type LIST 100,10.

Examples

VAX-11 BASIC

```
LIST 50, 200-300, 30000-
```

BASIC-PLUS-2

```
LISTNH -30, 2000-2500, 19000
```

17.0 LOAD

Function

The LOAD command makes a previously created object module or modules available for execution with the RUN command.

Format

```
LOAD file-spec [ + file-spec ] ...
```

Syntax Rules

1. *File-spec* must be a BASIC object module or BASIC signals an error. OBJ is the default file type. If you specify only the file name, BASIC searches for an OBJ file in the current default directory.
2. Each device and directory specification applies to all following file specifications until you specify a new directory or device.
3. Each new LOAD command cancels the effect of a previous LOAD command. That is, the LOAD command clears all previously loaded object modules from memory.
4. The LOAD command accepts multiple device, directory, and file specifications.

General Rules

1. BASIC does not process the loaded object files until you issue the RUN command. Consequently, errors in the loaded modules may not be detected until you execute them.
2. BASIC signals an error:
 - If the file is not found
 - If the file specification is not valid
 - If the file is not a BASIC object module
 - If run-time memory is exceededErrors do not change the program currently in memory.
3. Typing the LOAD command does not change the program currently in memory.

Examples

```
LOAD PROGA + PROGB + PROGC
```

LOCK

18.0 LOCK

Function

The LOCK command changes default values for COMPILE command qualifiers. It is a synonym for the SET command. See the SET command for syntax rules.

19.0 NEW

Function

The NEW command clears BASIC memory and allows you to assign a name to a new program.

Format

```
NEW [ prog-nam ]
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Prog-nam* is the name of the program you want to create. VAX-11 BASIC and BASIC-PLUS-2 on RSX-11M/M-PLUS systems allow names to contain up to nine alphanumeric characters. BASIC-PLUS-2 on RSTS/E systems allows names to contain up to six alphanumeric characters.
2. BASIC-PLUS-2 on RSTS/E systems truncates a *prog-nam* that exceeds six characters and does not signal an error.
3. VAX-11 BASIC and BASIC-PLUS-2 on RSX-11M/M-PLUS systems signal an error if the *prog-nam* exceeds nine characters.
4. VAX-11 BASIC signals "error in program name" if you specify a file type. BASIC-PLUS-2 ignores the file type and does not signal an error.

General Rules

1. If you do not specify a *prog-nam*, BASIC prompts with:

```
New file name--
```

2. The default name is NONAME. If you do not provide a *prog-nam* in response to the prompt, BASIC assigns the file name NONAME to your program.
3. When you type the NEW command, the program currently in memory is lost. Program modules loaded with the LOAD command remain unchanged.

Examples

```
NEW PROG1
```

ODLRMS

20.0 ODLRMS (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The ODLRMS command allows you to select an overlay description (ODL) file to describe the RMS overlay structure to be used when your program is task built. When you use the BUILD command, BASIC-PLUS-2 includes the specified ODL file in the Task Builder command file. Every system has an ODL default set when BASIC-PLUS-2 is installed. See your system manager for the name of your BASIC default.

Format

```
ODLRMS [ odl-param ]
```

odl-param:	<table border="0" style="margin-left: 10px;"><tr><td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-right: 5px;"></td><td style="border-right: 1px solid black; padding-right: 5px;">file-spec</td><td style="border-right: 1px solid black; padding-right: 5px;">}</td></tr><tr><td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-right: 5px;"></td><td style="border-right: 1px solid black; padding-right: 5px;">NONE</td><td style="border-right: 1px solid black; padding-right: 5px;"></td></tr></table>		file-spec	}		NONE	
	file-spec	}					
	NONE						

Syntax Rules

1. If you enter the ODLRMS command without an *odl-param*, BASIC-PLUS-2 prompts for one and displays the name of the current default ODL file.
 - *File-spec* can be an ODL file supplied by RMS or a user-created file. Table 15 lists and describes RMS ODL files.
 - NONE tells the Task Builder not to link your task to any RMS ODL file.
 - If you type a carriage return in response to the prompt, BASIC-PLUS-2 uses the default ODL file.

General Rules

1. New versions of RMS can change ODL file names, so consult the RMS distribution kit for current ODL names. LB: is a RSTS/E logical name for the library account on disk. On RSX-11M/M-PLUS systems, you must specify LB:[1,1] before the ODL file name.
2. Enter the ODLRMS command before you enter the BUILD command. The ODL file you specify is included in all Task Builder command files until you enter a new ODLRMS command or exit from the BASIC environment, at which time BASIC-PLUS-2 returns to the ODL default file.
3. You can override the ODLRMS command with the ODL qualifier to the BUILD command for a single BUILD operation.
4. Refer to the RMSRES compiler command to see which ODL files are required for each RMS library.

5. The Task Builder returns an error message if the ODL file you select is not available or valid. Consult your system manager for information about ODL files available to you.
6. Consult *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems* or *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems* for more information on using RMS libraries.

Table 15: ODL Files

ODLRMS Option	File Organization			Type of Library	Overlay Segments
	Seq	Rel	Ind		
RMSRLX	Yes	Yes	Yes	Memory	None
DAPRLX	Yes	Yes	Yes	Memory	None
RMS11S	Yes	Yes	No	Disk	11
RMS12S	Yes	Yes	No	Disk	5
RMS11X	Yes	Yes	Yes	Disk	35
RMS12X	Yes	Yes	Yes	Disk	13
DAP11X	Yes	Yes	Yes	Disk	16

Examples

RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems

```
ODLRMS LB:[1,1]RMSRLX.ODL
```

RSTS/E Systems

```
ODLRMS LB:RMSRLX.ODL
```

OLD

21.0 OLD

Function

The OLD command brings a previously created BASIC program into memory.

Format

```
OLD [ file-spec ]
```

Syntax Rules

1. If you do not name a *file-spec*, BASIC prompts for one. If you do not enter a *file-spec* in response to the prompt, BASIC searches for a file named NONAME.BAS (VAX-11 BASIC) or NONAME.B2S (BASIC-PLUS-2) in the current default directory.
2. The default file type is BAS for VAX-11 BASIC and B2S for BASIC-PLUS-2.

General Rules

1. If the compiler cannot find the *file-spec*, VAX-11 BASIC signals the error "file not found" and BASIC-PLUS-2 signals "can't find file or account".
2. When the specified file is found, it is placed in memory and any program currently in memory is erased. If BASIC does not find the specified file, the program currently in memory does not change.
3. If you specify a file that does not begin with a line number, BASIC discards all text up to the first line number, brings the file into memory, and signals the error "Non-continued statement has no line number near <line number>". You can then LIST and SAVE the program.

Examples

```
OLD CHECK
Ready
```

22.0 Qualifiers

Function

BASIC qualifiers allow you to specify defaults for the compilation process and the BASIC environment. You specify qualifiers with the COMPILE and SET commands. In *BASIC-PLUS-2*, you can also specify qualifiers with the BUILD and RUN commands.

Format

```
command [ /qualifier ] ...
```

Syntax Rules

1. The slash delimiter is not required before the first qualifier in the SET command. Multiple qualifiers, however, must be separated by slashes or commas. See the syntax rules for the SET command for more information on separating qualifiers.
2. You can abbreviate all positive qualifiers to the first three letters of the qualifier keyword. You can abbreviate a negative qualifier to NO and the first three letters of the qualifier keyword.

General Rules

1. Table 16 lists VAX-11 BASIC qualifiers and their functions. Table 17 lists *BASIC-PLUS-2* qualifiers, the commands they can be used with, and their functions.
2. In cases of ambiguous or erroneous qualifiers, VAX-11 BASIC signals the error "Unknown qualifier", while *BASIC-PLUS-2* signals "Illegal switch".
3. When you exit from the BASIC environment, all defaults set with qualifiers return to the defaults. Use the SHOW command before setting any qualifiers to display your system defaults.

Examples

```
COMPILE /NOOBJ /DOUBLE /DEBUG  
SET /TYPE_DEFAULT: EXPLICIT /LIST
```

Qualifiers

Table 16: VAX-11 BASIC COMPILE and SET Command Qualifiers

Qualifier	Function
[NO]ANSI_STANDARD	Tells BASIC to compile programs according to the ANSI Minimal BASIC Standard and to flag syntax that does not conform to the standard. See <i>BASIC on VAX/VMS Systems</i> for information on the ANSI Minimal BASIC Standard.
[NO]AUDIT [sep text-entry] sep: { : } text-entry: { str-lit file-spec }	Tells BASIC to include a history entry in the CDD data base when a CDD definition is extracted. <i>Str-lit</i> is a quoted string. <i>File-spec</i> is a text file. The history entry includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The contents of <i>str-lit</i>, or up to the first 64 lines in the file specified by <i>file-spec</i> • The name of the program module, process, user name, and user UIC that accessed the CDD • The time and date of the access • A note that access was made by the BASIC compiler • A note that the access was an extraction
[NO]BOUNDS_CHECK	Tells BASIC to perform range checks on array subscripts. BASIC checks that all subscript references are within the array boundaries set when the array was declared.
BYTE	Causes the compiler to allocate eight bits of storage as the default for all integer data not explicitly typed in the program. Untyped integer values are treated as BYTE values and must be in the BYTE range or BASIC signals the error "Integer error or overflow". Table 2 in this manual lists BASIC data types and ranges.
[NO]CROSS_REFERENCE [sep [NO]KEYWORDS] sep: { : }	Causes the compiler to include cross-reference information in the program listing file. If you specify KEYWORDS, BASIC also cross-references BASIC keywords used in the program. The listing file takes the program name as the file name and a default file type of LIS.
[NO]DEBUG	Tells BASIC to provide records for the VAX-11 <i>Symbolic Debugger</i> . See <i>BASIC on VAX/VMS Systems</i> for information on using the VAX-11 <i>Symbolic Debugger</i> .
DECIMAL_SIZE sep (d,s) sep: { : }	Allows you to specify the default size and precision for all DECIMAL data not explicitly assigned size and precision in the program. You specify the total number of digits (d) and the number of digits to the right of the decimal point (s). BASIC signals the error "Decimal error or overflow" (ERR=181) when DECIMAL values are outside the range specified with this qualifier. See Table 2 in this manual and Appendix C in <i>BASIC on VAX/VMS Systems</i> for information on the storage and range of packed decimal data.

Table 16: VAX-11 BASIC COMPILE and SET Command Qualifiers (Cont.)

Qualifier	Function
DOUBLE	<p>Causes the compiler to allocate 64 bits of storage in D_FLOAT format as the default size for all floating-point data not explicitly typed in the program. Untyped floating-point values are treated as DOUBLE values and must be in the DOUBLE range or BASIC signals the error "Floating-point error or overflow". Table 2 in this manual lists BASIC data types and ranges.</p>
<p>[NO]FLAG [sep (flag-clause,...)]</p> <p>sep: { : }</p> <p>flag-clause: { [NO]BP2COMPATIBILITY [NO]DECLINING }</p>	<p>Causes BASIC to provide compile-time information about program elements that are not compatible with BASIC-PLUS-2 or that DIGITAL designates as declining. An element is designated declining when BASIC has a preferred and often more powerful way to perform the operation.</p> <p>If you specify BP2COMPATIBILITY, BASIC will flag the following source code as incompatible with BASIC-PLUS-2:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • String comparisons using (<),(>),(<=), or (>=) • DECIMAL keyword and DECIMAL function • HFLOAT keyword • GFLOAT keyword • LOC function • MAR and MAR% functions • MARGIN and NOMARGIN statements • RECORD declarations • More than 16 digits of precision in a floating-point literal • Explicit literal notation that specifies a radix • Explicit literal notation with data type other than "B" (BYTE), "W" (WORD), "L" (LONG), "S" (SINGLE), "D" (DOUBLE), or "C" (CHARACTER) • Names in the EXTERNAL statement that have more than six characters or contain characters not in the Radix-50 character set • BY DESC clauses on anything other than entire arrays or unsubscripted STRING variables • BY VALUE clauses for anything other than BYTE or WORD unsubscripted variables • More than eight parameters to a DEF, subprogram, or external function

(continued on next page)

Qualifiers

Table 16: VAX-11 BASIC COMPILE and SET Command Qualifiers (Cont.)

Qualifier	Function
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Arrays of more than eight dimensions • Terminal-format files opened with no MAP or RECORDSIZE clause and no ACCESS READ clause • BY DESC, BY REF, and BY VALUE clauses in SUB and FUNCTION statements <p>If you specify DECLINING, BASIC will flag the following source code as declining:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CVT\$\$ (use EDIT\$) • CVT%, CVT\$F, CVT\$, CVTF\$, and SWAP% (use multiple MAP statements) • DEF* functions (use DEF functions) • FIELD statements (use MAP DYNAMIC and REMAP) • GOTO lin-num% (do not use the integer suffix with a line number)
GFLOAT	<p>Causes the compiler to allocate 64 bits of storage in G_FLOAT format as the default size for all floating-point data not explicitly typed in the program. Untyped floating-point values are treated as GFLOAT values and must be in the GFLOAT range or BASIC signals "Floating-point error or overflow". Table 2 in this manual lists BASIC data types and ranges.</p>
HFLOAT	<p>Causes the compiler to allocate 128 bits of storage in H_FLOAT format as the default size for all floating-point data not explicitly typed in the program. Untyped floating-point values are treated as HFLOAT values and must be in the HFLOAT range or BASIC signals "Floating-point error or overflow". Table 2 in this manual lists BASIC data types and ranges.</p>
[NO]LINE	<p>Includes line number information in object modules. If you specify NOLINE in a program containing a RESUME statement or using the run-time ERL function, BASIC warns that the NOLINE qualifier has been overridden.</p>
[NO]LIST	<p>Tells BASIC to produce a source listing file. By default, this file contains a memory allocation map. The listing file takes the name of the program and a default file type of LIS.</p>

(continued on next page)

Qualifiers

Table 16: VAX-11 BASIC COMPILE and SET Command Qualifiers (Cont.)

Qualifier	Function
LONG	Causes the compiler to allocate 32 bits of storage as the default size for all integer data not explicitly typed in the program. Untyped integer values are treated as LONG values and must be in the LONG range or BASIC signals the error "Integer error or overflow". Table 2 in this manual lists BASIC data types and ranges.
[NO]MACHINE_CODE	Causes BASIC to include the machine code generated by the compilation in the program listing file.
[NO]OBJECT	Generates an object module with the same file name as the program and a default file type of OBJ. Use NOOBJECT to check your program for errors without creating an object file.
[NO]OVERFLOW [sep (data-type,...)] sep: data-type:	Tells BASIC to report arithmetic overflow for operations on integer and/or packed decimal data. sep: { : = } data-type: { INTEGER DECIMAL }
[NO]ROUND	Tells BASIC to round rather than truncate DECIMAL values.
[NO]SETUP	Tells BASIC to make calls to the Run-Time Library that set up the stack for BASIC variables, set up dynamic string and array descriptors, initialize variables, and enable BASIC error handling. If you specify NOSETUP, BASIC will attempt to optimize your program by omitting these calls. If your program contains any of the following elements, BASIC provides an informational diagnostic and does not optimize your program: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• CHANGE statements• DEF or DEF* statements• Dynamic string variables• Executable DIM statements• EXTERNAL string functions• MAT statements• MOVE statements for an entire array• ON ERROR statements

(continued on next page)

Qualifiers

Table 16: VAX-11 BASIC COMPILE and SET Command Qualifiers (Cont.)

Qualifier	Function
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • READ statements • REMAP statements • RESUME statements • String concatenation • Built-in string functions • Virtual array declarations <p>Note that program modules compiled with NOSETUP cannot perform any I/O and have no error handling capabilities. If an error occurs in such a module, the error is signaled to the calling program.</p>
<p>[NO]SHOW [sep (show-item,...)]</p> <p>sep: { : = }</p> <p>show-item: { [NO]CDD_DEFINITIONS [NO]ENVIRONMENT [NO]INCLUDE [NO]MAP [NO]OVERRIDE }</p>	<p>Tells BASIC what to include in the listing file:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CDD_DEFINITIONS specifies translated CDD definitions. • ENVIRONMENT specifies a listing of the compilation qualifiers in effect. • INCLUDE specifies a listing of the contents of %INCLUDE files. • MAP specifies a storage allocation map. • OVERRIDE cancels the effect of all %NOLIST directives in the source program. <p>If you do not specify a <i>show-item</i>, BASIC uses the defaults set with the DCL command.</p>
SINGLE	Causes the compiler to allocate 32 bits of storage in F_FLOAT format as the default size for all floating-point data not explicitly typed in the program. Untyped floating-point values are treated as SINGLE values and must be in the SINGLE range or BASIC signals the error "Floating-point error or overflow". Table 2 in this manual lists BASIC data types and ranges.
[NO]SYNTAX_CHECK	Tells BASIC to perform syntax checking after each program line is typed.
[NO]TRACEBACK	Causes BASIC to include traceback information in the object file that allows reporting of the sequence of calls that transferred control to the statement where an error occurred.

(continued on next page)

Table 16: VAX-11 BASIC COMPILE and SET Command Qualifiers (Cont.)

Qualifier	Function
<p>TYPE_DEFAULT sep default-clause</p> <p>sep: $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} : \\ = \end{array} \right\}$</p> <p>default-clause: $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{REAL} \\ \text{INTEGER} \\ \text{DECIMAL} \\ \text{EXPLICIT} \end{array} \right\}$</p>	<p>Sets the default data type (REAL, INTEGER, or DECIMAL) for all data not explicitly typed in your program or specifies that all data must be explicitly typed (EXPLICIT).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> REAL specifies that all data not explicitly typed is floating-point data of the default size (SINGLE, DOUBLE, GFLOAT, or HFLOAT). INTEGER specifies that all data not explicitly typed is integer data of the default size (BYTE, WORD, or LONG). DECIMAL specifies that all data not explicitly typed is packed decimal data of the default size. EXPLICIT specifies that all data in a program must be explicitly typed. Implicitly declared variables cause BASIC to signal an error.
<p>VARIANT sep int-const</p> <p>sep: $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} : \\ = \end{array} \right\}$</p>	<p>Establishes <i>int-const</i> as a value to be used in compiler directives. The variant value can be referenced in a lexical expression by using the lexical function, %VARIANT. <i>Int-const</i> always has a data type of LONG.</p>
<p>[NO]WARNINGS [sep warn-clause]</p> <p>sep: $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} : \\ = \end{array} \right\}$</p> <p>warn-clause: $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{[NO]WARNINGS} \\ \text{[NO]INFORMATIONALS} \end{array} \right\}$</p>	<p>Tells BASIC to display warning and/or informational messages. If you specify WARNINGS but do not specify a warn-clause, BASIC displays both warnings and informational messages.</p>
<p>WORD</p>	<p>Causes the compiler to allocate 16 bits of storage as the default for all integer data not explicitly typed in the program. Untyped integer values are treated as WORD values and must be in the range -32768 to 32767 or BASIC signals the error "Integer error or overflow." Table 2 in this manual lists BASIC data types and ranges.</p>

Qualifiers

Table 17: BASIC-PLUS-2 Command Qualifiers

Qualifier	Commands	Function
BRLRES: lib-param lib-param: { file-spec NONE }	BUILD	Lets you specify a memory-resident library to be linked to your program. <i>File-spec</i> can be a library supplied with BASIC-PLUS-2 or a user-created library. NONE tells the Task Builder not to link your task to the default memory-resident library. See the BRLRES command syntax rules in this manual for more information on memory-resident libraries.
BYTE	COMPILE RUN SET	Causes the compiler to allocate eight bits of storage as the default for all integer data not explicitly typed in the program. Untyped integer values are treated as BYTE values and must be in the BYTE range or BASIC signals the error "Integer error or overflow". Table 2 in this manual lists BASIC data types and ranges.
[NO]CHAIN	COMPILE** RUN** SET**	Enables other programs to CHAIN into the program using the LINE clause of the CHAIN statement. The default (CHAIN or NOCHAIN) is an installation option. If the program has more than 200 line numbers, NOCHAIN reduces the memory needs of the output program by disabling storage of line numbers in memory. You cannot chain from one DECNET node to another.
[NO]CLUSTER[:lib-param] lib-param: { file-spec NONE }	BUILD SET	Tells the Task Builder to cluster memory-resident libraries to increase the space available for your task. For the cluster qualifier to have an effect, at least two resident libraries must be linked to the task: the BASIC-PLUS-2 resident library, and one other resident library. <i>File-spec</i> specifies a memory-resident library to be clustered. NONE specifies that only the BASIC-PLUS-2 and RMS libraries are clustered. If there is no default CLUSTER library, the CLUSTER qualifier without a parameter acts the same as the CLUSTER:NONE qualifier. The specified library must be in the account LB: on RSTS/E systems or the account LB:[1,1] on RSX systems. Consult <i>BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems</i> or <i>BASIC on RSTS/E Systems</i> for more information on using RMS libraries.
[NO]CROSS_REFERENCE[:[NO]KEYWORDS]	COMPILE SET	Causes the compiler to include cross-reference information in the program listing file. If you specify KEYWORDS, BASIC also cross-references BASIC keywords used in the program. The listing file takes the program name as the file name and a default file type of LST.

(continued on next page)

Qualifiers

Table 17: BASIC-PLUS-2 Command Qualifiers (Cont.)

Qualifier	Commands	Function
[NO]DEBUG	COMPILE RUN SET	Tells BASIC to provide records for the BASIC-PLUS-2 debugger when you compile a program or to pass control to the debugger when you execute a program with RUN in the BASIC environment. The LINE qualifier must be in effect when you compile a program with the DEBUG qualifier in effect.
DOUBLE	COMPILE RUN SET	Causes the compiler to allocate 64 bits of storage as the default size for all floating-point data not explicitly typed in the program. Untyped floating-point values are treated as DOUBLE values and must be in the DOUBLE range or BASIC signals the error "Floating-point error". Table 2 in this manual lists BASIC data types and ranges.
DSKLIB : file-spec	BUILD	Lets you specify a disk-resident object module library to be linked to your program. <i>File-spec</i> can be a library supplied with BASIC-PLUS-2 or a user-created library. NONE tells the Task Builder not to link your task to the default object module library. See the DSKLIB command syntax rules for more information on disk-resident libraries.
[NO]DUMP	BUILD SET	Tells the Task Builder to generate a memory dump if the program aborts with a fatal error.
EXTEND: int-const	BUILD SET	Specifies the amount of space to be added to the initial task size when the task is started. The Task Builder rounds the extension up to the nearest 32-word boundary. The maximum extension is 32000.
FLAG:[NO]DECLINING	COMPILE RUN SET	Causes BASIC to provide compile-time information about program elements that DIGITAL designates declining. An element is designated declining when BASIC has a preferred and often more powerful capability. When you specify FLAG:DECLINING, BASIC will flag the following source code: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CVT\$\$ (use EDIT\$) • CVT\$\$%, CVT\$F, CVT\$\$%, CVTF\$, and SWAP% (use multiple MAP statements) • DEF* functions (use DEF functions)

(continued on next page)

Qualifiers

Table 17: BASIC-PLUS-2 Command Qualifiers (Cont.)

Qualifier	Commands	Function
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> FIELD statements (use MAP DYNAMIC and REMAP) GOTO lin-num% (do not use the integer suffix with a line number)
[NO]IND	BUILD SET	Causes the Task Builder to include the code needed for indexed file operations. <i>BASIC-PLUS-2</i> enables this qualifier automatically for programs containing an OPEN statement with an ORGANIZATION INDEXED clause.
LIBRARY: lib-param lib-param: { lib-nam file-spec NONE }	BUILD	Lets you specify a memory-resident library to be linked to your program. <i>File-spec</i> and <i>lib-nam</i> can be a library supplied with <i>BASIC-PLUS-2</i> or a user-created library. If you specify only a <i>lib-nam</i> with no device, <i>BASIC</i> assumes LB: on <i>RSTS/E systems</i> and LB:[1,1] on <i>RSX systems</i> . NONE tells the Task Builder not to link your task to the default memory-resident library. Therefore, the Task Builder links to the <i>BASIC</i> disk-resident, object module library, BP2OTS.OLB. See the LIBRARY command syntax rules for more information on memory-resident libraries.
[NO]LINE	COMPILE RUN SET	Includes line number information in object modules. If you specify NOLINE in a program containing a RESUME statement or using the run-time ERL function, <i>BASIC</i> warns that the NOLINE qualifier has been overridden.
[NO]LIST	COMPILE SET	Tells <i>BASIC</i> to produce a source listing file. The listing file takes the name of the program and a default file type of LST.
LONG	COMPILE RUN SET	Causes the compiler to allocate 32 bits of storage as the default size for all integer data not explicitly typed in the program. Untyped integer values are treated as LONG values and must be in the LONG range or <i>BASIC</i> signals the error "Integer error". Table 2 in this manual lists <i>BASIC</i> data types and ranges.
[NO]MACRO	COMPILE SET	Converts the program into MACRO source code and saves it in a file with the same name as the program and a file type of MAC. The MAC file can be assembled.

(continued on next page)

Qualifiers

Table 17: BASIC-PLUS-2 Command Qualifiers (Cont.)

Qualifier	Commands	Function
[NO]MAP	BUILD	Includes information for the allocation map in the Task Builder command file.
[NO]OBJECT	COMPILE SET	Generates an object module with the same file name as the program and a default file type of OBJ. Use NOOBJECT to check your program for errors without creating an object file.
ODLRMS: odl-param odl-param: {file-spec NONE}	BUILD	Lets you specify an ODL file to describe the RMS overlay structure to be used by the Task Builder. <i>File-spec</i> can be an ODL file supplied by RMS or a user-created file. NONE tells the Task Builder not to link your task to the default ODL file. See the ODLRMS command syntax rules in this manual for more information on ODL files.
PAGE_SIZE: int-const	COMPILE SET	Sets the page size for the listing file. <i>Int-const</i> must be greater than zero or BASIC signals the warning "Listing length out of range — ignored".
[NO]REL	BUILD SET	Causes the Task Builder to include the code needed for relative file operations. BASIC-PLUS-2 sets this qualifier automatically for programs containing an ORGANIZATION RELATIVE clause in an OPEN statement.
RMSRES: lib-param lib-param: {file-spec NONE}	BUILD	Lets you specify an RMS library that supplies code for file and record operations to be linked to your program. <i>File-spec</i> can be a library supplied by RMS or a user-created library. NONE tells the Task Builder not to link your task to the default RMS library. See the RMSRES command syntax rules for more information on RMS libraries.
[NO]SCALE: const	COMPILE	Allows control of accumulated round-off errors when double precision numbers (values typed DOUBLE) are used. Numbers are stored as multiples of 10 by setting the scale factor (<i>const</i>) from 0 to 6. Floating-point numbers are truncated to an integer value of 0 to 6. A scale factor larger than 6 causes BASIC to signal the error message "Scale factor of <i>n</i> is out of range."
[NO]SEQ	BUILD SET	Causes the Task Builder to include the RMS-11 code needed for sequential file operations. BASIC-PLUS-2 sets this qualifier automatically for programs containing an ORGANIZATION SEQUENTIAL clause in the OPEN statement.

(continued on next page)

Qualifiers

Table 17: BASIC-PLUS-2 Command Qualifiers (Cont.)

Qualifier	Commands	Function
SINGLE	COMPILE RUN SET	Causes the compiler to allocate 32 bits of storage as the default size for all floating-point data not explicitly typed in the program. Untyped floating-point values are treated as SINGLE values and must be in the SINGLE range or BASIC signals the error "Floating-point error". Table 2 in this manual lists BASIC data types and ranges.
[NO]SYNTAX_CHECK	COMPILE RUN SET	Tells BASIC to perform syntax checking after each program line is typed.
TYPE_DEFAULT: default-clause default-clause: { REAL INTEGER EXPLICIT }	COMPILE RUN SET	<p>Sets the default data type (REAL or INTEGER) for all data not explicitly typed in your program or specifies that all data must be explicitly typed (EXPLICIT).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • REAL specifies that all data not explicitly typed is floating-point data of the default size (SINGLE or DOUBLE). • INTEGER specifies that all data not explicitly typed is integer data of the default size (BYTE, WORD, or LONG). • EXPLICIT specifies that all data in a program must be explicitly typed. Implicitly declared variables cause BASIC to signal an error.
VARIANT: int-const	COMPILE RUN SET	Establishes <i>int-const</i> as a value to be used in compiler directives. The variant value can be referenced i. a lexical expression by using the lexical function, %VARIANT. <i>Int-const</i> always has a data type of WORD.
[NO]VIR	BUILD* SET*	Causes the Task Builder to include the RMS code needed for virtual array and block I/O file operations. BASIC-PLUS-2 sets this qualifier automatically when you compile a program containing an ORGANIZATION VIRTUAL clause in the OPEN statement.

(continued on next page)

Qualifiers

Table 17: BASIC-PLUS-2 Command Qualifiers (Cont.)

Qualifier	Commands	Function
WIDTH: int-const	COMPILE SET	Sets the width of the listing file. <i>Int-const</i> must be in the range 72 to 132, inclusive, or BASIC signals the warning "Listing width out of range — ignored".
WORD	COMPILE RUN SET	Causes the compiler to allocate 16 bits of storage as the default for all integer data not explicitly typed in the program. Untyped integer values are treated as WORD values and must be in the range -32768 to 32767 or BASIC signals the error "Integer error." Table 2 in this manual lists BASIC data types and ranges.

* RSX only

** RSTS/E only

23.0 RENAME

Function

The RENAME command allows you to assign a new name to the program currently in memory. BASIC does not write the renamed program to a file until you save the program with the REPLACE or SAVE command.

Format

```
RENAME [ prog-nam ]
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Prog-nam* specifies the new program name. VAX-11 BASIC and BASIC-PLUS-2 on RSX-11M/M-PLUS systems allow names to contain up to nine alphanumeric characters. BASIC-PLUS-2 on RSTS/E systems allows names to contain up to six alphanumeric characters.
2. The program you want to rename must be in memory. If you type RENAME with no program in memory, BASIC renames the default program, NONAME, to the specified *prog-nam*.

VAX-11 BASIC



1. If you do not specify a *prog-nam*, VAX-11 BASIC renames the program currently in memory NONAME.
2. If you specify a file type, VAX-11 BASIC signals the error "error in program name".

BASIC-PLUS-2



1. BASIC-PLUS-2 prompts for the new *prog-nam* if you do not specify one with the RENAME command. If you do not specify a *prog-nam* in response to the prompt, the name of the program currently in memory remains unchanged.
2. If you specify a file type, BASIC-PLUS-2 ignores the file type, does not signal an error, and assigns the B2S file type to the file when you save it.

General Rules

1. You must type SAVE or REPLACE to write the renamed program to a file. If you do not type SAVE or REPLACE, BASIC does not save the renamed program.
2. The RENAME command does not affect the original saved version of the program. For example:

```
OLD TEST  
Ready
```

```
RENAME NEWTES  
Ready
```

```
SAVE
```

RENAME

In this example, the OLD command calls the program named TEST into memory. The RENAME command renames TEST to NEWTES and the SAVE command writes NEWTES.BAS (VAX-11 BASIC) or NEWTES.B2S (BASIC-PLUS-2) to a file. The original file, TEST.BAS or TEST.B2S, is not changed and is not deleted from your account.

Examples

```
RENAME NEWPRO
```

24.0 REPLACE

Function

The REPLACE command writes the current program to a storage medium.

Format

```
REPLACE [ file-spec ]
```

Syntax Rules

1. If you do not supply a *file-spec*, BASIC writes the program to the default disk with the file name of the program currently in memory.
 - VAX-11 BASIC and BASIC-PLUS-2 on RSX-11M/M-PLUS systems create and save a new version of the file, incrementing the version number by one. Previous versions of the file remain unchanged.
 - BASIC-PLUS-2 on RSTS/E systems overwrites the original version of the file with the new version.

General Rules

1. The *file-spec* does not have to match that of the program currently in memory. You can differentiate a changed program from the original version of the program by specifying a new *file-spec*. BASIC saves the program with the new *file-spec*.
2. The program currently in memory does not change.

Examples

```
REPLACE PROGA.NEW
```

RESEQUENCE

25.0 RESEQUENCE (VAX-11 BASIC)

Function

The RESEQUENCE command allows you to resequence the line numbers of the program currently in memory. BASIC also changes all references to the old line numbers so they reference the new line numbers.

Format

```
RESEQUENCE [ lin-num1 [ - lin-num2 ] [ lin-num3 ] ] [ STEP int-const ]
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Lin-num1* is the line number in the program currently in memory where resequencing begins. The default for *lin-num1* is the first line of the program module.
2. *Lin-num2* is the optional end of the range of line numbers to be resequenced. If you specify a range, BASIC begins resequencing with *lin-num1* and resequences through *lin-num2*. If you do not specify *lin-num2*, BASIC resequences the specified line. If you do not specify either *lin-num1* or *lin-num2*, BASIC resequences the entire program.
3. *Lin-num3* specifies the new first line number; the default number for the new first line is 100.
 - If *lin-num3* will cause existing lines to be deleted or surrounded, BASIC signals an error.
 - You can specify *lin-num3*, the new first line number, only when resequencing a range of lines.
4. *Int-const* specifies the numbering increment for the resequencing operation. The default for *int-const* is 10.
5. BASIC signals an error when you try to resequence a program that contains a %IF directive. BASIC also signals an error when you try to resequence a program that has a %INCLUDE directive if the file to be included contains a reference to a line number.

General Rules

1. Before the RESEQUENCE command executes, BASIC verifies the syntax of the program. If the program is not syntactically valid, the RESEQUENCE command does not execute.
2. BASIC sorts the renumbered program in ascending order when the RESEQUENCE command executes.
3. If the renumbering creates a line number greater than the maximum line number of 32767, BASIC signals an error.
4. BASIC signals an error if resequencing causes a change in the order in which program statements are to execute and does not resequence the program.
5. BASIC issues the error "undefined line number" in the case of undefined line numbers and does not resequence the program.

RESEQUENCE

6. BASIC corrects all line numbers for statements that transfer control.
7. BASIC does not modify the program currently in memory when the RESEQUENCE command generates an error.
8. In general, the RESEQUENCE command is not recommended for programs containing error handlers that test the value of ERL. However, the RESEQUENCE command correctly modifies the program if the tests that reference ERL are of this form:

```
ERL relational-operator int-lit
```

The RESEQUENCE command does not correctly renumber programs if the test compares ERL with an expression or a variable, or if ERL follows the relational operator. The following line number references, for example, would not be correctly renumbered:

```
IF ERL = 1000 + A% THEN ...
IF 1000 > ERL THEN ...
```

Examples

```
RESEQUENCE 100-1000 STEP 5
```

RMSRES

26.0 RMSRES (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The RMSRES command allows you to select an RMS memory-resident library to be used when your program is task built. You can also choose to use no RMS memory-resident library. The RMS library supplies RMS code for file and record operations. After you specify a library with the RMSRES command, when you use the BUILD command, BASIC-PLUS-2 includes the specified library in the Task Builder command file. Every system has an RMS library default set when BASIC-PLUS-2 is installed.

Format

RMSRES lib-param
lib-param: { file-spec NONE }

Syntax Rules

1. If you enter the RMSRES command without a *lib-param*, BASIC-PLUS-2 prompts for one and displays the name of the current default RMS library.
 - *File-spec* can be RMSRES (the RMS memory-resident library) or a user-created resident library. Table 18 lists and describes RMS libraries.
 - NONE tells the Task Builder not to link your task to the RMS default resident library. Therefore, the Task Builder links to the RMS object module library, RMSLIB.OLB.
 - If you type a carriage return in response to the prompt, the current default memory-resident library is used.

General Rules

1. LB: is a RSTS/E logical name for the library account on disk. On RSX-11M/M-PLUS systems, you must specify LB:[1,1] before the ODL file name.
2. BASIC-PLUS-2 links the specified RMS library to your program when you task-build the program. You must use the RMSRES command before you use the BUILD command to include the specified library in the Task Builder command file.
3. If you use an RMS library other than the default, you must specify one of the RMS ODL files listed in Table 18. See the ODLRMS compiler command for more information.

4. The RMSRES library you specify is included in your Task Builder command files until you specify a new library with the RMSRES command or exit from the BASIC environment. When you exit from the environment, the original RMS default library is restored as the default.
5. You can override the RMSRES command with the /RMSRES qualifier added to the BUILD command, but the specified library remains in effect for only one BUILD routine.
6. The Task Builder returns an error message when the requested library is not available.
7. Consult your system manager for information about the RMS libraries available to you. Consult *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems* or *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems* for more information on using RMS libraries

Table 18: RMS Libraries

Library Name	File Organization			Type of Library	ODL File Required
	Seq	Rel	Ind		
RMSRES	Yes	Yes	Yes	Memory	RMSRLX.ODL
DAPRES	Yes	Yes	Yes	Memory	DAPRLX.ODL
RMSLIB	Yes	Yes	Yes	Disk	

Examples*RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems***RMSRES LB:[1,1]RMSRES***RSTS/E Systems***RMSRES LB:RMSRES**

RUN

27.0 RUN and RUNNH

Function

The RUN command allows you to execute a program from the BASIC environment without first invoking the *PDP-11* Task Builder or the *VAX-11* Linker to construct an executable image. The program can be:

- A BASIC program brought into memory with the OLD command, created in response to the NEW command, or specified in the RUN command
- An object module or modules placed in memory with the LOAD command
- A combination of the above

RUN executes the program starting at the lowest line number. Program modules previously compiled and placed in memory with the LOAD command are referenced when the RUN command is given. RUNNH executes the program but does not display the program header.

Format



VAX-11 BASIC

{ RUNNH	
RUN	[file-spec]



BASIC-PLUS-2

{ RUNNH	
RUN	[file-spec] [/qualifier]...

Syntax Rules

1. If you specify only the file name, BASIC searches for a file with a BAS (VAX-11 BASIC) or B2S (BASIC-PLUS-2) file type in the current default directory.
2. If you do not supply a *file-spec*, BASIC executes the program currently in memory.
3. BASIC signals the warning message "No main program" if you do not supply a *file-spec* and do not have a program currently in memory.
4. The RUNNH command is identical to RUN, except that it does not display the program header, current date, and time.



BASIC-PLUS-2

1. /*Qualifier* specifies a qualifier keyword that sets a BASIC default. See Section 22.0 for information on BASIC qualifiers. Table 17 lists all BASIC-PLUS-2 qualifiers and the commands they can be used with, and describes their functions.
2. Support for RUN is an installation option. Use the SHOW command to see whether your system supports the RUN command.

General Rules

1. When you specify a *file-spec* with the RUN command, BASIC brings the program into memory and then executes it. You do not have to bring a program into memory with the OLD command in order to run it. The RUN command executes just as if the program had been brought into memory with the OLD command.
2. If your program calls a subprogram, the subprogram must be compiled and placed in memory with the LOAD command. If your program tries to call a subprogram that has not been compiled and loaded, BASIC signals an error.
3. The RUN command does not create an object module file or a listing file.

VAX-11 BASIC

1. The program stops executing and control passes to the BASIC environment and immediate mode when BASIC encounters a STOP statement in the program.
 - Any BASIC statement that does not require the creation of new storage can be entered in immediate mode to debug the program. You cannot create new variables in immediate mode.
 - Type the CONTINUE command to resume program execution.
2. The RUN command uses whatever qualifiers have been set with the exception of those that have no effect on a program running in the environment. These are:
 - NOCROSS
 - NODEBUG
 - NOLIST
 - NOMACHINE
 - NOOBJECT

These qualifiers are always in effect when you run a program in the environment.

BASIC-PLUS-2

1. The program stops executing when BASIC encounters a STOP statement:
 - If you used the RUN command to execute the program, BASIC displays a pound sign (#) prompt. In response to the prompt, you can type only CONTINUE to resume program execution, or EXIT to end the program.
 - If you used the RUN/DEBUG command to execute the program, control passes to the BASIC-PLUS-2 debugger. You can then use BASIC-PLUS-2 debugger commands to display and change program values and to analyze your program. Use the CONTINUE debugger command to resume program execution. See Part VI in this manual for more information on debugger commands.

Examples

RUN PROG1

SAVE

28.0 SAVE

Function

The SAVE command writes the BASIC source program currently in memory to a file on the default or specified device.

Format

```
SAVE [ file-spec ]
```

Syntax Rules

1. If you do not supply a *file-spec*, BASIC saves the file with the name of the program currently in memory and the BAS (VAX-11 BASIC) or B2S (BASIC-PLUS-2) default file type.
2. If you specify only the file name, BASIC saves the program with the default file type in the current default directory.

General Rules

1. In BASIC-PLUS-2, if you type SAVE and the *file-spec* already exists as a disk file, BASIC displays the message "File exists – Rename or Replace".
2. VAX-11 BASIC writes a new version of a previously saved program when you type the SAVE command.
3. BASIC stores the sorted program in ascending line number order.
4. You can store the program on a specified device. For example:

```
SAVE DBA1:NEWTST.PRO
```

BASIC saves the file NEWTST.PRO on disk DBA1:.

Examples

```
SAVE JUNK.BAS
```

29.0 SCALE

Function

The SCALE command allows you to control accumulated round-off errors by multiplying numeric values by 10 raised to the scale factor before storing them.

Format

```
SCALE int-const
```

Syntax Rules

1. In BASIC-PLUS-2, SCALE with no argument causes BASIC to display the message "Current scale factor is *n*", where *n* is an integer from 0 to 6 inclusive. In VAX-11 BASIC, SCALE with no argument causes BASIC to signal the error "illegal argument for command".
2. *Int-const* specifies the power of 10 you want to use as the scaling factor.
 - In VAX-11 BASIC, *int-const* must be an integer from 0 to 6, inclusive, or BASIC signals the error "illegal argument for command".
 - In BASIC-PLUS-2, *int-const* can be a floating-point or integer number up to 6.999999. BASIC truncates a floating point value and displays the message "%Scale factor has been truncated to *n*", where *n* is the integer portion of the value. If the specified value is greater than 6.999999, BASIC signals the error "Scale factor of *n* is out of range", where *n* is the specified value.

General Rules

1. SCALE affects only values of the data type DOUBLE.
2. BASIC multiplies values using the scale factor you specify. The value 2.488888, for example, is rounded as follows:

Scale:	Produces:
0	2.48889
1	2.4
2	2.48
3	2.488
4	2.4888
5	2.48888
6	2.48889

Examples

```
SCALE 2
```

SCRATCH

30.0 SCRATCH

Function

The SCRATCH command clears any program currently in memory, removes any object files loaded with the LOAD command, and resets the program name to NONAME.

Format

```
SCRATCH
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

None.

Examples

```
SCRATCH
```

31.0 SEQUENCE

Function

The SEQUENCE command causes BASIC to automatically generate line numbers for your program text. BASIC supplies line numbers for your text until you end the procedure or reach the maximum line number of 32767.

Format

```
SEQUENCE [ lin-num ] [ , int-const ]
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Lin-num* specifies the line number where sequencing begins.
 - If you do not specify a *lin-num*, the VAX-11 BASIC default is the last line inserted by a SEQUENCE command; if there is no previous SEQUENCE command, the default is line number 100.
 - The BASIC-PLUS-2 default *lin-num* is always line number 100.
2. *Int-const* specifies the line number increment for your program.
 - If you do not specify an increment, VAX-11 BASIC defaults to the *int-const* specified in the last SEQUENCE command; if there is no previous SEQUENCE command, the default is 10.
 - BASIC-PLUS-2 always defaults to 10.

General Rules

1. If you specify a *lin-num* that already contains a statement, or if the sequencing operation generates a line number that already contains a statement, BASIC signals "Attempt to sequence over existing statement", and returns to normal input mode.
2. Enter your program text in response to the line number prompt; the carriage return ends each line and causes BASIC to generate a new line number.
3. If you enter a CTRL/Z in response to the line number prompt, BASIC terminates the sequencing operation and prompts for another command.
4. You can also terminate the sequence operation in BASIC-PLUS-2 by typing a carriage return in response to the line number prompt.
5. When the maximum line number of 32767 is reached, BASIC terminates the sequencing process and returns to normal input mode.
6. BASIC does not check syntax during the sequencing process.

Examples

```
SEQUENCE 100,10
```

SET

32.0 SET

Function

The SET command allows you to specify BASIC defaults for all BASIC qualifiers. Qualifiers control the compilation process and the run-time environment. Qualifiers are set or reset as you specify. The defaults you set remain in effect for all subsequent operations until they are reset or until you exit from the compiler.

Format

```
SET [qualifier,...]  
      [/qualifier...]
```

Syntax Rules

1. /*Qualifier* specifies a qualifier keyword that sets a BASIC default. See Section 22.0 for information on BASIC qualifiers. Table 16 lists and describes all VAX-11 BASIC qualifiers. Table 17 lists and describes all BASIC-PLUS-2 qualifiers.
2. If you do not specify any qualifiers, VAX-11 BASIC resets all defaults to the defaults specified with the DCL BASIC command.
3. If you do not specify any qualifiers, BASIC-PLUS-2 resets all qualifiers except those set with the BRLRES, DSKLIB, LIBRARY, ODLRMS, RMSRES, or EXTEND qualifier to the installation defaults. The SCALE value set with the SCALE command is also not reset to the installation default.
4. VAX-11 BASIC signals the error "unknown qualifier" and BASIC-PLUS-2 signals "Illegal switch" if you do not separate multiple qualifiers with commas or slashes, or if you mix commas and slashes on the same command line. The same error is signaled if you separate qualifiers with a slash but do not prefix the first qualifier with a slash.

General Rules

None.

Examples

```
SET /DOUBLE /BYTE /LIST
```

SHOW

33.0 SHOW

Function

The SHOW command displays the current defaults for the BASIC compiler on your terminal.

Format

```
SHOW
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

None.

Examples

VAX-11 BASIC

```
SHOW
VAX-11 BASIC V2.      Current Environment Status    11-DEC-1982 10:05:56.57
DEFAULT DATA TYPE INFORMATION:          LISTING FILE INFORMATION INCLUDES:
  Data type : REAL                  NO Source
  Real size : SINGLE                NO Cross reference
  Integer size : LONG               CDD Definitions
  Decimal size : (15,2)             Environment
  Scale factor : 0                 NO Override of ZNOLIST
  NO Round decimal numbers        NO Machine code
                                         Map
                                         INCLUDE files
COMPILATION QUALIFIERS IN EFFECT:          FLAGGERS:
  Object file                      Declining features
  Overflow check integers          NO BASIC PLUS 2 subset
  Overflow check decimal numbers
  Bounds checking
  NO Syntax checking
  Lines
  Variant : 0
  Warnings
  Informationals
  Setup
  Object Libraries : NONE
                                         DEBUG INFORMATION:
                                         Traceback records
                                         NO Debug symbol records
Ready
```

BASIC-PLUS-2

```
SHOW
PDP-11 BASIC-PLUS-2 V2.0
ENVIRONMENT INFORMATION:          RMS FILE ORGANIZATION:
  Current edit line : 0           NO Index
  NO Modules loaded              NO Relative
  NO Main module loaded          NO Sequential
  Run support                     NO Virtual
```

(continued on next page)

SHOW

```
DEFAULT DATA TYPE INFORMATION:
  Data type : REAL
  Real size : SINGLE
  Integer size : WORD
  Scale factor : 0
COMPILATION QUALIFIERS:
  NO Object
  NO Macro
    Lines
  NO Debug records
  NO Syntax checking
  Flag : Declining
  Variant : 0

LISTING FILE INFORMATION:
  NO Source
  NO Cross Reference
  NO Keywords
    60 lines by 132 columns
BUILD QUALIFIERS:
  NO Dump
  NO Map
    Task extend : 512
  RMS ODL file : LB:RMSRLX
  BP2 Disk lib : LB:BP2OTS
  BP2 Resident lib : LB:BP2RES
  RMS Resident lib : LB:RMSRES
```

34.0 UNSAVE

Function

The UNSAVE command deletes a specified file from storage.

Format

```
UNSAVE [ file-spec ]
```

Syntax Rules

1. *File-spec* is optional.
 - If you do not supply a *file-spec*, BASIC deletes a file that has the file name of the program currently in memory and a file type of BAS (VAX-11 BASIC) or B2S (BASIC-PLUS-2).
 - If you do not supply a *file-spec* and do not have a program in memory, BASIC searches for the default file NONAME.BAS.
2. You do not have to supply a full *file-spec*. If you specify only a file name, BASIC deletes the file with the specified name and the BAS (VAX-11 BASIC) or B2S (BASIC-PLUS-2) file type from the default device and directory. Other file types with the same file name are not deleted.

General Rules

1. The program currently in memory does not change even when it is the deleted file because it is a copy of the deleted file.

Examples

```
UNSAVE DB2:CHECK.DAT
```


PART III

Compiler Directives

%ABORT

1.0 %ABORT

Function

The %ABORT directive terminates program compilation and displays a fatal error message you supply.

Format

```
%ABORT [ str-lit ]
```

Syntax Rules

1. The %ABORT directive cannot begin in column one.
2. Only a line number or a comment field can appear on the same physical line as the %ABORT directive.

General Rules

1. BASIC stops the compilation and terminates the listing file as soon as it encounters a %ABORT directive. *Str-lit* is displayed on the terminal screen and in the compilation listing, if one has been requested.

Examples

```
100  %IF %VARIANT = 2 %THEN
      %ABORT "Cannot compile with variant 2"
%END %IF
```

%CROSS

2.0 %CROSS

Function

The %CROSS directive causes BASIC to begin or resume accumulating cross-reference information for the listing file.

Format

```
%CROSS
```

Syntax Rules

1. The %CROSS directive cannot begin in column one.
2. Only a line number or a comment field can appear on the same physical line as the %CROSS directive.

General Rules

1. When a cross-reference is requested, the compiler starts or resumes accumulating cross-reference information immediately after encountering the %CROSS directive.

Examples

```
1000    %CROSS
```

3.0 %IDENT

Function

The %IDENT directive lets you identify the version of a program module. The identification text is placed in the object module and printed in the listing header.

Format

```
%IDENT str-lit
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Str-lit* is the identification text. VAX-11 BASIC allows *str-lit* to consist of up to 31 ASCII characters. BASIC-PLUS-2 allows *str-lit* to consist of up to six RAD-50 characters. Both truncate extra characters from *str-lit* and signal a warning message.
2. In BASIC-PLUS-2, if *str-lit* contains non-RAD-50 characters, a warning message is issued, and the %IDENT directive is ignored. See *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems* or *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems* for more information on RAD-50 characters. BP2
3. The %IDENT directive cannot begin in column one.
4. Only a line number or a comment field can appear on the same physical line as the %IDENT directive.

General Rules

1. The compiler inserts the identification text in the first 6 or 31 character positions of the second line on each listing page. The compiler also includes the identification text in the object module, if the compilation produces one, and in the map file created by the Task Builder (BASIC-PLUS-2) or the VAX-11 Linker.
2. The %IDENT directive should appear at the beginning of your program if you want the identification text to appear on the first page of your listing. If the %IDENT directive appears after the first program statement, the text will appear on the next page of the listing file.
3. You can use the %IDENT directive only once in a module. If you specify more than one %IDENT directive in a module, BASIC signals a warning and uses the identification text specified in the first %IDENT.

%IDENT

-  4. The default *BASIC-PLUS-2* identification text is a 6-digit number. The first two digits represent the compiler base level, while the last four digits represent the month and day. For example, the identification text 100712 represents base level 10, and a date of July 12.
-  5. VAX-11 *BASIC* does not provide a default identification text.

Examples

```
100      %IDENT "V3,2"
```

%IF-%THEN-%ELSE-%END-%IF

4.0 %IF-%THEN-%ELSE-%END-%IF

Function

The %IF-%THEN-%ELSE-%END-%IF directive lets you conditionally include source code or execute another compiler directive.

Format

```
%IF lex-exp %THEN code [ %ELSE code ] %END %IF
```

Syntax Rules

1. The %IF directive can appear anywhere in a program where a space is allowed, except in column one or within a quoted string. This means that you can use the %IF directive to make a whole statement, part of a statement, or a block of statements conditional.
2. Lex-exp is always a LONG integer in VAX-11 BASIC and a WORD integer in BASIC-PLUS-2. It can be:
 - A lexical constant named in a %LET directive.
 - An integer literal, with or without the percent sign suffix.
 - A lexical built-in function (%VARIANT).
 - Any combination of the above, separated by valid lexical operators. Lexical operators include logical operators, relational operators, and the arithmetic operators for addition (+), subtraction (-), multiplication (*), and division (/).
3. Code is BASIC program code. It can be any BASIC statement or another compiler directive, including another %IF directive. You can nest %IF directives to eight levels.
4. %THEN, %ELSE, and %END %IF do not have to be on the same physical line as %IF.

General Rules

1. If *lex-exp* is true, BASIC processes the %THEN clause. If *lex-exp* is false, BASIC processes the %ELSE clause. If there is not an %ELSE clause, BASIC processes the %END %IF clause. The compiler includes statements in the %THEN or %ELSE clause in the source program and executes directives in order of occurrence.
2. You must include the %END %IF clause. Otherwise, BASIC assumes the remainder of the program is part of the last %THEN or %ELSE clause and signals the error "missing %END %IF" when compilation ends.

%IF-%THEN-%ELSE-%END-%IF

Examples

```
100      %IF (%VARIANT = 2)
%THEN DECLARE SINGLE HOURLY_PAY(100)
%ELSE %IF (%VARIANT = 1)
        %THEN DECLARE DOUBLE SALARY_PAY(100)
%ELSE %ABORT "Can't compile with specified variant"
%END %IF
%END %IF
        .
        .
        .
1000     PRINT %IF (%VARIANT = 2)
        %THEN PRINT 'Hourly Wage Chart'
                GOTO Hourly_routine
        %ELSE PRINT 'Salaried Wage Chart'
                GOTO Salary_routine
%END %IF
```

%INCLUDE

5.0 %INCLUDE

Function

The %INCLUDE directive lets you include BASIC source text from another program file in the current program compilation. VAX-11 BASIC also lets you access record definitions in the VAX-11 Common Data Dictionary (CDD).

Format

General

```
%INCLUDE file-spec
```

VAX-11 BASIC

```
%INCLUDE %FROM %CDD str-lit
```

VAX

Syntax Rules

1. The %INCLUDE directive cannot begin in column one.
2. Only a line number or a comment field can appear on the same physical line as the %INCLUDE directive.
3. *File-spec* specifies the file to be included. BASIC uses the default device, directory, and file type (BAS in VAX-11 BASIC and B2S in BASIC-PLUS-2) if you do not specify these parts of the file specification.
4. *File-spec* must be a disk file or BASIC signals an error.
5. *File-spec* must be a string literal enclosed in quotation marks.

VAX-11 BASIC only

1. *Str-lit* specifies a VAX-11 CDD path specification. This lets you extract a RECORD definition from the CDD.
2. There are two types of CDD path names: *absolute* and *relative*. An absolute path name begins with CDD\$TOP and specifies the complete path to the record definition. A relative path name begins with any string other than CDD\$TOP.

General Rules

1. The compiler includes the specified source file in the program compilation at the point of the %INCLUDE directive and prints the included code in the program listing file if the compilation produces one.
2. The included file cannot contain line numbers or BASIC signals the error "Line number may not appear in %INCLUDE file".

%INCLUDE

3. All statements in the accessed file are associated with the line number of the program line that contains the %INCLUDE directive. This means that a %INCLUDE directive cannot appear before the first line number in a source program.
4. A file accessed by %INCLUDE can itself contain a %INCLUDE directive.
5. All %IF directives in an included file must have a matching %END %IF directive in the file.



VAX-11 BASIC only

1. You can control whether or not included text appears in the compilation listing with the /SHOW:INCLUDE qualifier. When you specify /SHOW:INCLUDE, the compilation listing file identifies any text obtained from an included file by placing a mnemonic in the first character position of the line on which the text appears. The mnemonic is of the form "In" where "I" tells you that the text was accessed with a %INCLUDE directive and "n" is a number that tells you the nesting level of the included text. See the *BASIC User's Guide* for more information on listing mnemonics.
2. When you use the %INCLUDE directive to extract a record definition from the CDD, BASIC translates the CDD definition to the syntax of the BASIC RECORD statement.
3. You can use the /SHOW:CDD_DEFINITIONS to specify that translated CDD definitions (in RECORD statement syntax) are included in the compilation listing file. BASIC places a "C" in column one when the translated RECORD statement appears in the listing file.
4. When you do not specify /SHOW:CDD_DEFINITIONS, BASIC includes the names, data types, and offsets of the CDD record components in the program listing's allocation map.
5. See *BASIC on VAX/VMS Systems* and the *VAX-11 Common Data Dictionary Utilities Reference Manual* for more information on CDD definitions.

Examples

General

```
100      %INCLUDE "YESNO"
```

VAX-11 BASIC only

```
1000     %INCLUDE %FROM %CDD "CDD$TOP,EMPLOYEE"
```

6.0 %LET

Function

The %LET directive declares and provides values for lexical constants. You can use lexical constants only in conditional expressions in the %IF-%THEN-%ELSE directive and in lexical expressions in subsequent %LET directives.

Format

```
%LET %lex-const-nam = lex-exp
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Lex-const-nam* is the name of a lexical constant. Lexical constants are always LONG integers in VAX-11 BASIC and WORD integers in BASIC-PLUS-2.
2. *Lex-const-nam* must be preceded by a percent sign and cannot end with a dollar sign (\$) or percent sign.
3. *Lex-exp* can be:
 - A lexical constant named in a previous %LET directive.
 - An integer literal, with or without the percent sign suffix.
 - A lexical built-in function (%VARIANT)
 - Any combination of the above, separated by valid lexical operators. Lexical operators may be logical operators, relational operators, and the arithmetic operators for addition (+), subtraction (-), multiplication (*), and division (/).
4. The %LET directive cannot begin in column one.
5. Only a line number or a comment field can appear on the same physical line as the %LET directive.

General Rules

1. You cannot change the value of *lex-const-nam* within a program unit once it has been named in a %LET directive.

Examples

```
100      %LET %DEBUG_ON = 1%
```

%LIST

7.0 %LIST

Function

The %LIST directive causes the compiler to start or resume accumulating compilation information for the program listing file.

Format

```
%LIST
```

Syntax Rules

1. The %LIST directive cannot begin in column one.
2. Only a line number or a comment field can appear on the same physical line as the %LIST directive.

General Rules

1. As soon as it encounters the %LIST directive, the compiler starts or resumes accumulating information for the program listing file. Thus, the directive itself appears as the next line in the listing file.
2. The %LIST directive has no effect unless you requested a listing file.

Examples

```
100      %LIST
```

8.0 %NOCROSS

Function

The %NOCROSS directive causes the compiler to stop accumulating cross-reference information for the program listing file.

Format

```
%NOCROSS
```

Syntax Rules

1. The %NOCROSS directive cannot begin in column one.
2. Only a line number or a comment field can appear on the same physical line as the %NOCROSS directive.

General Rules

1. The compiler stops accumulating cross-reference information for the program listing file immediately after encountering the %NOCROSS directive.
2. The %NOCROSS directive has no effect unless you requested cross-reference information.
3. Digital recommends that you not embed a %NOCROSS directive within a statement. Embedding a %NOCROSS directive within a statement makes the accumulation of cross-reference information behave unpredictably.

Examples

```
1000      %NOCROSS
```

%NOLIST

9.0 %NOLIST

Function

The %NOLIST directive causes the compiler to stop accumulating compilation information for the program listing file.

Format

```
%NOLIST
```

Syntax Rules

1. The %NOLIST directive cannot begin in column one.
2. Only a line number or a comment field can appear on the same physical line as the %NOLIST directive.

General Rules

1. As soon as it encounters the %NOLIST directive, the compiler stops accumulating information for the program listing file. Thus, the directive itself does not appear in the listing file.
2. The %NOLIST directive has no effect unless you requested a listing file.
3. In VAX-11 BASIC, you can override all %NOLIST directives in a program with the /SHOW: OVERRIDE qualifier.

Examples

100 %NOLIST



10.0 %PAGE

Function

The %PAGE directive causes BASIC to begin a new page in the program listing file immediately after the line that contains the %PAGE directive.

Format

```
%PAGE
```

Syntax Rules

1. The %PAGE directive cannot begin in column one.
2. Only a line number or a comment field can appear on the same physical line as the %PAGE directive.

General Rules

None.

Examples

```
1000      %PAGE
```

%SBTTL

11.0 %SBTTL

Function

The %SBTTL directive lets you specify a subtitle for the program listing file.

Format

```
%SBTTL str-lit
```

Syntax Rules

1. VAX-11 BASIC allows *str-lit* to contain 45 characters. BASIC-PLUS-2 allows *str-lit* to contain 48 characters.
2. BASIC truncates extra characters from *str-lit* and does not signal a warning or error.
3. The %SBTTL directive cannot begin in column one.
4. Only a line number or a comment field can appear on the same physical line as the %SBTTL directive.

General Rules

1. The specified subtitle appears underneath the title on the second line of all pages of the listing file until the compiler encounters another %SBTTL or %TITLE directive.
2. Because BASIC assumes that a subtitle is associated with a title, a new %TITLE directive eliminates the current subtitle. In this case, no subtitle appears in the listing until the compiler encounters another %SBTTL directive.
3. If you want a subtitle to appear on the first page of your listing, the %SBTTL directive should appear at the beginning of your program, immediately after the %TITLE directive. Otherwise, the subtitle will appear on the second page of the listing, but not on the first.
4. If you want the subtitle to appear on the page of the listing that contains the %SBTTL directive, the %SBTTL directive should immediately follow a %PAGE directive or a %TITLE directive that follows a %PAGE directive.

Examples

```
100      %SBTTL 'DESMAZ19 Production Elements'
```

12.0 %TITLE

Function

The %TITLE directive lets you specify a title for the program listing file.

Format

```
%TITLE str-lit
```

Syntax Rules

1. VAX-11 BASIC allows *str-lit* to contain 45 characters. BASIC-PLUS-2 allows *str-lit* to contain 48 characters.
2. BASIC truncates extra characters from *str-lit* and does not signal a warning or error.
3. The %TITLE directive cannot begin in column one.
4. Only a line number or a comment field can appear on the same physical line as the %TITLE directive.

General Rules

1. The specified title appears on the first line of every page of the listing file until BASIC encounters another %TITLE directive in the program.
2. The %TITLE directive should appear on the first line of your program, before the first statement, if you want the specified title to appear on the first page of your listing.
3. If you want the specified title to appear on the page that contains the %TITLE directive, the %TITLE directive should immediately follow a %PAGE directive.
4. Because BASIC assumes that a subtitle is associated with a title, a new %TITLE directive eliminates the current subtitle.

Examples

```
100      %TITLE 'Production Control for DESMA219'
```

%VARIANT

13.0 %VARIANT

Function

%VARIANT is a built-in lexical function that allows you to conditionally control program compilation. %VARIANT returns an integer value when you reference it in a lexical expression. You set the variant value with the /VARIANT qualifier when you compile the program or with the SET command.

Format

```
%VARIANT
```

Syntax Rules

1. The %VARIANT function can appear only in a lexical expression.

General Rules

1. The %VARIANT function returns the integer value specified at compile-time with the /VARIANT qualifier to the COMPILE command or with the SET command, or in VAX-11 BASIC, set with the DCL BASIC command. The returned integer always has a data type of LONG in VAX-11 BASIC and WORD in BASIC-PLUS-2.

Examples

```
100  %IF (%LOOP_CONST <= %VARIANT)
      %THEN GOTO Tax_Routine
      %ELSE %ABORT 'Variant too large for program to compile'
      %END %IF
```

PART IV

Statements

CALL

1.0 CALL

Function

The CALL statement transfers control to a BASIC subprogram or other callable routine. You can pass optional arguments to the routine and can specify how these arguments are to be passed. When the called routine finishes executing, control returns to the calling program.

Format

CALL routine [pass-mech] [([actual-param],...)]	
routine:	{ sub-nam any callable routine }
pass-mech:	{ BY REF BY VALUE BY DESC }
actual-param:	{ exp array ([,]...) } [pass-mech]

Syntax Rules

1. *Routine* is the name of the BASIC SUB subprogram you want to call or the name of any other callable module, such as a system service or an RTL routine on VAX/VMS systems. It cannot be a variable name.

CALL

2. *Pass-mech* specifies how arguments are passed to the called routine. If you do not specify a *pass-mech*, BASIC passes arguments as indicated in Tables 19 and 20.
3. You can use passing mechanisms only when calling non-BASIC routines.
4. When *pass-mech* appears before the parameter list, it applies to all arguments passed to the called *routine*. You can override this passing mechanism by specifying a *pass-mech* for individual arguments in the *actual-param* list.
5. *Actual-param* lists the arguments to be passed to the called *routine*.
6. You can pass expressions or entire arrays. Optional commas in parentheses after the array name specify the dimensions of the array. The number of commas is equal to the number of dimensions minus one. Thus, no comma specifies a one-dimensional array, one comma specifies a two-dimensional array, two commas specify a three-dimensional array, and so on.



VAX-11 BASIC

1. The name of the *routine* can consist of from 1 to 31 characters and must conform to the following rules:
 - The first character of an unquoted name must be an alphabetic character (A through Z). The remaining characters, if present, can be any combination of letters, digits (0 through 9), dollar signs (\$), periods (.), or underscores (_).
 - A quoted name can consist of any combination of printable ASCII characters.
2. *Routine* can be a system service, an RTL routine, or any procedure written in a language that supports the *VAX-11 Procedure Calling Standard*. See *BASIC on VAX/VMS Systems* for more information on using system services, RTL routines, and other procedures.
3. VAX-11 BASIC allows you to pass up to 255 parameters.
4. You cannot pass virtual arrays.



BASIC-PLUS-2

1. The name of the *routine* can consist of from one to six characters and must conform to the following rules:
 - The first character of an unquoted name must be an alphabetic character (A through Z). The remaining characters, if present, can be any combination of letters, digits (0 through 9), dollar signs (\$), or periods (.).
 - A quoted name can consist of any combination of alphabetic characters, digits, dollar signs (\$), periods (.), or spaces.
2. *Routine* can be a *BASIC-PLUS-2* subprogram or a subprogram written in another language.

Note

Although you can call routines written in other languages, *BASIC-PLUS-2* does not support calling anything but *BASIC-PLUS-2* routines.

CALL

3. You can pass all arguments BY REF, but you can pass only string values and entire arrays BY DESC.
4. BASIC-PLUS-2 lets you pass up to eight parameters to a BASIC-PLUS-2 subprogram and up to 255 parameters to a MACRO-11 subprogram.

General Rules

1. The optional *pass-mech* clauses tell BASIC how to pass arguments to the called subprogram. Table 19 describes VAX-11 BASIC parameter passing mechanisms. Table 20 describes BASIC-PLUS-2 parameter passing mechanisms.
 - BY REF specifies that BASIC passes the argument's address. This is the default for all arguments except strings and entire arrays.
 - BY VALUE specifies that VAX-11 BASIC passes the argument's 32-bit value and that BASIC-PLUS-2 passes the argument's 16-bit value.
 - BY DESC specifies that BASIC passes the address of a VAX-11 BASIC descriptor or a BASIC-PLUS-2 descriptor. For information about the format of a VAX-11 BASIC descriptor for strings and arrays, see Appendix C in *BASIC on VAX/VMS Systems*; for information on other types of descriptors, see the *VAX Architecture Handbook*. BASIC-PLUS-2 creates descriptors only for strings and arrays; these descriptors are described in Appendix C in *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems* and *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems*.
2. You can specify a null argument as an *actual-param* for non-BASIC routines by omitting the argument and the *pass-mech*, but not the commas or parentheses. This forces BASIC to pass a null argument as defined by your operating system and allows you to access system routines from BASIC.
3. Arguments in the *actual-param* list must agree in data type and number with the formal parameters specified in the subprogram.
4. An argument is modifiable when changes to it are evident in the calling program. Changing a modifiable parameter in a subprogram means the parameter is changed for the calling program as well. Variables and entire arrays passed BY DESC or BY REF are modifiable.
5. An argument is nonmodifiable when changes to it are not evident in the calling program. Changing a nonmodifiable argument in a subprogram does not affect the value of that argument in the calling program. Arguments passed BY VALUE, constants, and expressions are nonmodifiable. Passing an argument as an expression (by placing it in parentheses) changes it from a modifiable to a nonmodifiable argument.
6. For expressions and virtual array elements passed BY REF, BASIC makes a local copy of the value, and passes the address of this local copy. For dynamic string arrays, BASIC passes a descriptor of the array of string descriptors. BASIC passes the address of the argument's actual value for all other arguments passed BY REF.
7. No files are closed when the CALL statement executes.

VAX-11 BASIC

1. Only BYTE, WORD, LONG, and SINGLE values can be passed by BY VALUE. BYTE and WORD values passed by VALUE are converted to LONG values.



CALL

BP2

BASIC-PLUS-2

1. Only BYTE and WORD values can be passed BY VALUE. BYTE values passed BY VALUE are converted to WORD values.
2. *BASIC-PLUS-2* does not allow recursion. That is, once a subprogram is called, it cannot be called again until the SUBEND or SUBEXIT statement has executed or until an error has been trapped with ON ERROR GO BACK.

Examples

```
200      CALL SUB1 BY REF (EMPNAME$, (Z%) BY VALUE, D$() BY DESC)
```

Table 19: VAX-11 BASIC Parameter Passing Mechanisms

Argument Type	BY VALUE	BY REF	BY DESC
Numeric Arguments			
Variables	**YES	*YES	YES
Constants	**YES	*Local copy	Local copy
Expressions	**YES	*Local copy	Local copy
Array elements	**YES	*YES	YES
Virtual array elements	**YES	*Local copy	Local copy
Entire arrays	NO	YES	*YES
Entire virtual arrays	NO	NO	NO
String Arguments			
Variables	NO	YES	*YES
Constants	NO	Local copy	*Local copy
Expressions	NO	Local copy	*Local copy
Array elements	NO	YES	*YES
Virtual array elements	NO	Local copy	*Local copy
Entire arrays	NO	YES	*YES
Entire virtual arrays	NO	NO	NO

* One asterisk indicates the default parameter passing mechanisms for BASIC programs.

** Two asterisks indicate that the value can have 32 bits, at most.

Table 20: BASIC-PLUS-2 Parameter Passing Mechanisms

Argument Type	BY VALUE	BY REF	BY DESC
Numeric Arguments			
Variables	**YES	*YES	NO
Constants	**YES	*Local copy	NO
Expressions	**YES	*Local copy	NO
Array elements	**YES	*Local copy	NO
Virtual array elements	**YES	*Local copy	NO
Entire arrays	NO	YES	*YES
Entire virtual arrays	NO	NO	*YES
String Arguments			
Variables	NO	YES	*YES
Constants	NO	Local copy	*Local copy
Expressions	NO	Local copy	*Local copy
Array elements	NO	Local copy	*Local copy
Virtual array elements	NO	Local copy	*Local copy
Entire arrays	NO	YES	*YES
Entire virtual arrays	NO	NO	*YES

* One asterisk indicates the default parameter passing mechanisms for BASIC programs. You should never use a BY clause when calling a BASIC subprogram from a BASIC main program.

** Two asterisks indicate that the value can be only WORD or BYTE. Other data types require more than the 16 bits of storage allowed.

Note

DIGITAL recommends that you not pass entire virtual arrays as parameters in the CALL statement. Instead, you can share the data in a virtual array between a calling program and a subprogram by opening a virtual file in either program and dimensioning the array (using the same channel number) in both programs.

CHAIN

2.0 CHAIN

Note

The CHAIN statement is not recommended for new program development. DIGITAL recommends that you use the CALL statement for program segmentation.

Function

The CHAIN statement transfers control from the current program to an executable BASIC program. CHAIN closes all files, then requests that the new program begin execution. Control does not return to the original program when the new program finishes executing.

Format

<i>General</i>
CHAIN str-exp
<i>BASIC-PLUS-2 on RSTS/E only</i>
CHAIN str-exp [LINE lin-num]

Syntax Rules

1. *Str-exp* represents the file specification of the program to which control is passed. It can be a quoted or unquoted string.
 - *Str-exp* must refer to an executable image or BASIC signals an error.
 - If you do not specify a file type, VAX-11 BASIC searches for an EXE file type and BASIC-PLUS-2 searches for a TSK file type.
 - You cannot chain to a program on another node.

BASIC-PLUS-2

1. On RSTS/E systems you can specify that control pass to a specified line number in another BASIC-PLUS-2 program.
 - *Lin-num* specifies a line in another BASIC program. It must be in the range 1 to 32767, inclusive.
 - If you specify a *lin-num*, the program to which control passes must have been compiled with the /CHAIN qualifier. The /CHAIN qualifier overrides the /NOLINE qualifier.

General Rules

1. Execution starts at the first line number of the specified program unless your system is RSTS/E and you have specified a *lin-num* at which execution is to start.
2. On RSTS/E systems, BASIC-PLUS-2 signals an error when the specified line number does not exist.

3. Before chaining takes place, all active output buffers (except terminal-format files) are written, all open files are closed, and all storage is released. On *RSTS/E* systems, the last buffer (512 bytes) of a terminal-format file does not get written unless the file is closed before the CHAIN statement executes.
4. Because a CHAIN statement passes control from the executing image, the values of any program variables are lost. This means that you can pass parameters to a chained program only by using files or a system-specific feature such as the GET/PUT Core Common on *RSTS/E* systems, or LIB\$GET and LIB\$PUT on *VMS* systems.
5. See *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems* or *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems* for information about how the CHAIN statement is implemented on your system.

Examples

General

```
100      CHAIN "PROG2"  
900      CHAIN PROG5.EXE
```

BASIC-PLUS-2 on RSTS/E only

```
200      CHAIN PROGA.TSK LINE 300
```

CHANGE

3.0 CHANGE

Function

The CHANGE statement: 1) converts a string of characters to their ASCII integer values or 2) converts a list of numbers to a string of ASCII characters.

Format

String Variable to Array

CHANGE str-exp TO num-array

Array to String Variable

CHANGE num-array TO str-vbl

Syntax Rules

1. *Num-array* should be a one-dimensional array (or list). If you specify a two-dimensional array, BASIC converts only the zero row of that array. BASIC does not support CHANGE to or from arrays of more than two dimensions.
2. *Str-exp* is a string expression.
3. VAX-11 BASIC does not support RECORD elements as a destination string or as a source or destination array for the CHANGE statement.



General Rules

String Variable to Array

1. This format converts each character in *str-exp* to its ASCII value.
2. BASIC assigns the value of *str-exp*'s length to the zero element (0) or (0,0) of the *num-array*.
3. BASIC assigns the ASCII value of the first character in *str-exp* to the first element, (1) or (0,1), of *num-array*, the ASCII value of the second character to the second element, (2) or (0,2), and so on.
4. If the string is longer than the bounds of *num-array*, BASIC does not translate the excess characters, and signals the error "subscript out of range" (ERR=55). Element zero, (0) or (0,0), of *num-array* still contains the length of *str-exp*.

Array to String Variable

1. This format converts the elements of *num-arr* to a string of characters.
2. The length of *str-vbl* is determined by the value in the zero element, (0) or (0,0), of *num-array*. If the value of element zero is greater than the array bounds, BASIC signals the error "subscript out of range" (ERR=55).

CHANGE

3. BASIC changes the first element, (1) or (0,1), of *num-array* to its ASCII character equivalent, the second element, (2) or (0,2), to its ASCII equivalent, and so on. The length of the returned string is determined by the value in the zero element of *num-array*. For example, if *num-arr* is dimensioned as (10), but the zero element (0) contains the value 5, BASIC changes only elements (1), (2), (3), (4), and (5) to string characters.
4. BASIC truncates floating-point values to integers before converting them to characters.
5. Values in array elements are treated modulo 256.

Examples

String Variable to Array

```
50      DIM ARRAY_CHANGES%(6)
60      CHANGE "ABCDE" TO ARRAY_CHANGES%
```

Array to String Variable

```
200      CHANGE ARRAY_CHANGES% TO A$
```

CLOSE

4.0 CLOSE

Function

The CLOSE statement ends I/O processing to a device or file on the specified channel.

Format

```
CLOSE chnl-exp,...
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Chnl-exp* is a numeric expression that specifies a channel number associated with a file. It can be preceded by an optional pound sign (#).

General Rules

1. BASIC writes the contents of any active buffers to the file or device before it closes that file or device.
2. Channel 0 (the controlling terminal) cannot be closed. An attempt to do so has no effect.
3. If you close a magnetic tape file that is open FOR OUTPUT, BASIC writes an end-of-file on the magnetic tape.
4. If you try to close a channel that is not currently open, BASIC does not signal an error and the CLOSE statement has no effect.

Examples

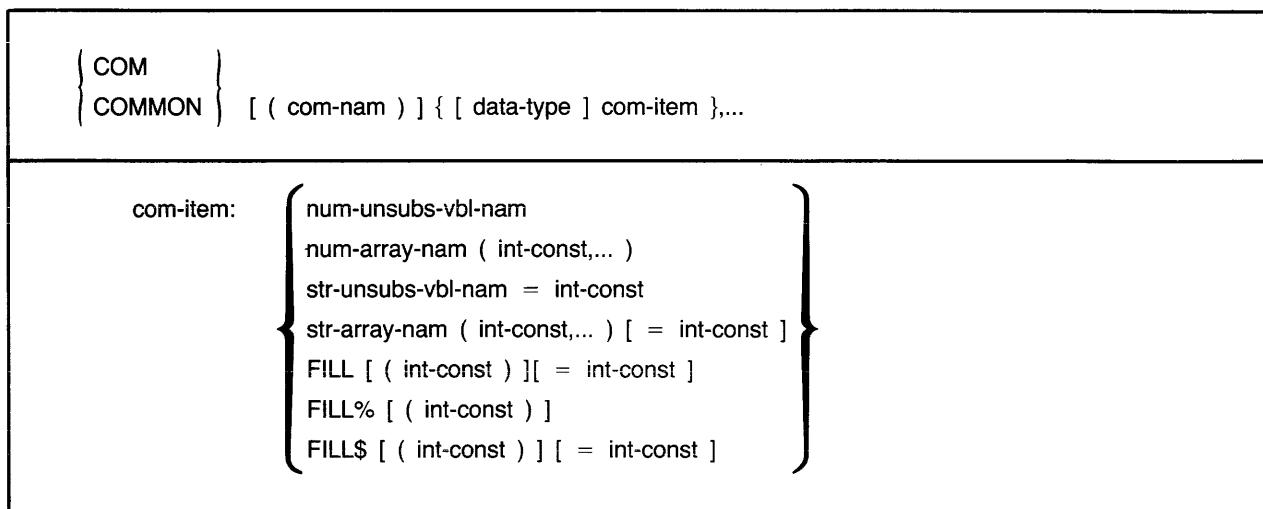
```
1000    CLOSE #1, 3
```

5.0 COMMON

Function

The COMMON statement defines a named, shared storage area called a COMMON block or program section (PSECT). BASIC program modules can access the values stored in the COMMON by specifying a COMMON with the same name.

Format



Syntax Rules

1. *Com-nam* is optional. If present, it must be in parentheses.
2. A COMMON can have the same name as a program variable. However, in BASIC-PLUS-2, a COMMON cannot have the same name as a subprogram within the same task image.
3. A COMMON and a MAP in the same program module cannot have the same name.
4. *Com-item* declares the name and format of the data to be stored.
 - *Num-unsubs-vbl-nam* and *num-arr-nam* specify a numeric variable or a numeric array.
 - *Str-unsubs-vbl-nam* and *str-arr-nam* specify a fixed-length string variable or array. You can specify the number of bytes to be reserved for the variable with the *=int-const* clause. The default string length is 16.
 - The FILL, FILL%, and FILL\$ keywords allow you to reserve parts of the record buffer within or between data elements and to define the format of the storage. *Int-const* specifies the number of FILL items to be reserved. The *=int-const* clause allows you to specify the number of bytes to be reserved for string FILL items. Table 21 describes FILL item format and storage allocation.

COMMON

Note

In the applicable formats of FILL, (*int-const*) represents a repeat count, not an array subscript. FILL (n) represents n elements, not n + 1.

5. Data-type can be any BASIC data-type keyword or, in VAX-11 BASIC, a data type defined in the RECORD statement. Data-type keywords, size, range, and precision are listed in Table 2 in this manual.
6. When you specify a data-type, all following com-items, including FILL items, are of that data type until you specify a new data type.
7. If you do not specify any data-type, com-items take the current default data type and size.
8. Variable names, array names, and FILL items following a data-type cannot end in a dollar sign or percent sign character.
9. Variables and arrays declared in a COMMON statement cannot be declared elsewhere in the program by any other declarative statements.
10. COMMON elements must be separated with commas.



VAX-11 BASIC

1. The default com-nam is "\$BLANK".
2. Com-nam can consist of from 1 to 31 characters. The first character of the name must be an alphabetic character (A through Z). The remaining characters, if present, can be any combination of letters, digits (0 through 9), dollar signs (\$), periods (.), or underscores (_).



BASIC-PLUS-2

1. The default com-nam is ".\$\$\$\$.".
2. Com-nam can consist of from one to six characters. The first character must be an alphabetic character (A through Z). The remaining characters, if present, can be any combination of letters, digits (0 through 9), dollar signs (\$), or periods (.).

Table 21: FILL Item Formats and Storage Allocations

FILL Format	Storage Allocation
FILL	Allocates storage for one floating-point element unless preceded by a <i>data-type</i> ; the number of bytes allocated depends on the default floating-point data size or the specified <i>data-type</i> .
FILL(<i>int-const</i>)	Allocates storage for the number of floating-point elements specified by <i>int-const</i> unless preceded by a <i>data-type</i> ; the number of bytes allocated for each element depends on the default floating-point data size or the specified <i>data-type</i> .
FILL%	Allocates storage for one integer element; the number of bytes allocated depends on the default integer size.
FILL%(<i>int-const</i>)	Allocates storage for the number of integer elements specified by <i>int-const</i> ; the number of bytes allocated for each element depends on the default integer size.
FILL\$	Allocates 16 bytes of storage for a string element. The dollar sign can be omitted if the FILL keyword is preceded by the STRING <i>data-type</i> .
FILL\$(<i>int-const</i>)	Allocates 16 bytes of storage for the number of string elements specified by <i>int-const</i> . The dollar sign can be omitted if the FILL keyword is preceded by the STRING <i>data-type</i> .
FILL\$ = <i>int-const</i>	Allocates the number of bytes of storage specified by = <i>int-const</i> for a string element. The dollar sign can be omitted if the FILL keyword is preceded by the STRING <i>data-type</i> .
FILL\$(<i>int-const</i>) = <i>int-const</i>	Allocates the number of bytes of storage specified by = <i>int-const</i> for the number of string elements specified by <i>int-const</i> . The dollar sign can be omitted if the FILL keyword is preceded by the STRING <i>data-type</i> .

Note

In the applicable formats of FILL, (*int-const*) represents a repeat count, not an array subscript. FILL (n) represents n elements, not n + 1.

General Rules

1. A COMMON area and a MAP area with the same name, in different program modules, specify the same storage area.
2. BASIC does not execute COMMON statements. The COMMON statement allocates and defines the data storage area at compile time.
3. When you link or task-build your program, the size of the COMMON area is the size of the largest COMMON area with that name. That is, BASIC concatenates COMMON statements with the same *com-nam* within a single program module into a single PSECT. The total space allocated is the sum of the space allocated in the concatenated COMMON statements.
4. The COMMON statement must lexically precede any reference to variables declared in it.
5. A COMMON area can be accessed by more than one program module, as long as you define the *com-nam* in each module that references the COMMON.

COMMON

- (BP2)
6. Variable names in a COMMON statement in one program module need not match those in another program module.
 7. VAX-11 BASIC does not initialize variables in COMMON blocks.
 8. Since BASIC-PLUS-2 initializes variables in COMMON blocks, you must use unique names for each variable in each COMMON block.
 9. In BASIC-PLUS-2, you should know how your program overlays if data stored in a COMMON area is to be shared by several program modules. The COMMON should be named in an overlay unit that will remain in memory as long as program units need to reference the COMMON data. If the overlay that names the COMMON is forced out of memory, BASIC reinitializes the COMMON area to zero when the overlay is brought back into memory. See *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems* or *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems* for information on overlay structures.
 10. The *data-type* specified for *com-items* or the default data type and size determines the amount of storage reserved in a COMMON block:
 - BYTE integers reserve 1 byte.
 - WORD integers reserve 2 bytes.
 - LONG integers reserve 4 bytes.
 - SINGLE floating-point numbers reserve 4 bytes.
 - DOUBLE floating-point numbers reserve 8 bytes.
 - GFLOAT floating-point numbers reserve 8 bytes (VAX-11 BASIC only).
 - HFLOAT floating-point numbers reserve 16 bytes (VAX-11 BASIC only).
 - DECIMAL(d,s) packed decimal numbers reserve $(d + 1)/2$ bytes (VAX-11 BASIC only).
 - STRING reserves 16 bytes (the default) or the number of bytes you specify with $=int\text{-}const$.

Examples

```
500      COMMON (INVEN) INTEGER SHELF_NUMBER, STRING ROW = 2, &
          DOUBLE FILL, PART_BIN, LIST_PRICE
```

6.0 DATA

Function

The DATA statement creates a data block for the READ statement.

Format

```
DATA [ num-lit  
      str-lit  
      unq-str ] ,...
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Num-lit* specifies a numeric literal.
2. *Str-lit* is a character string that starts and ends with double or single quotation marks. The quotation marks must match.
3. *Unq-str* is a character sequence that does not start and end with double or single quotation marks and does not contain a comma.
4. Commas separate data elements. If a comma is part of a data item, the entire item must be enclosed in quotation marks.
5. Because BASIC treats comment fields in DATA statements as part of the DATA sequence, do not include comments.
6. A DATA statement must be the last or the only statement on a line.
7. DATA statements must end with a line terminator. BASIC interprets all characters except the ampersand (&) between the keyword DATA and the final line terminator as part of the data. You can continue DATA statements by placing an ampersand (&) immediately before the line terminator.
8. You cannot use the percent sign suffix for integer constants that appear in DATA statements. An attempt to do so causes BASIC to signal “Data format error” (ERR=50) when you try to run the program.

General Rules

1. DATA statements are local to a program module.
2. BASIC does not execute DATA statements. Instead, BASIC passes control to the next executable statement.
3. A program can have more than one DATA statement. BASIC assembles data from all DATA statements in a single program unit into a lexically ordered single data block.
4. BASIC ignores leading and trailing blanks and tabs unless they are in a string literal.

DATA

5. Commas are the only valid data delimiters. You must use a quoted string literal if the comma is to be part of a string.
6. BASIC ignores DATA statements without an accompanying READ statement.
7. BASIC signals the error "Data format error" if the DATA item does not match the data type of the variable specified in the READ statement or if a data element that is to be read into an integer variable ends with a percent sign (%). If a string data element ends with a dollar sign (\$), BASIC treats the dollar sign as part of the string.

Examples

```
300      DATA 35, 32.3, PRODUCTION SEQUENCE, 'SYSTEM', '1,2'
```

7.0 DECLARE

Function

The DECLARE statement explicitly assigns a data type to and names a variable, an entire array, a function, or a constant.

Format

<i>Variables</i>
DECLARE data-type decl-item [, [data-type] decl-item]...
<i>DEF Functions</i>
DECLARE data-type FUNCTION { def-nam [([def-param],...)] },...
<i>Named Constants</i>
DECLARE data-type CONSTANT { const-nam = const },...
decl-item: { unsubs-vbl-nam array-nam (int-const,...) }
def-param: [data-type]

Syntax Rules

1. Data-type can be any BASIC data-type keyword or, in VAX-11 BASIC, a data type defined in the RECORD statement. Data-type keywords, size, range, and precision are listed in Table 2 in this manual.

Variables

1. Decl-item names a variable or an array.
2. A decl-item cannot end in a percent sign (%) or dollar sign (\$).
3. A decl-item named in a DECLARE statement cannot also be named in another DECLARE statement, or a DEF, EXTERNAL, FUNCTION, SUB, COMMON, MAP, or DIM statement.
4. Int-const specifies the upper bounds of the array-nam.
5. Each decl-item is associated with the preceding data-type. A data-type is required for the first decl-item.
6. Decl-items of data-type STRING are dynamic strings.

DECLARE

DEF Functions

1. *Def-nam* names the DEF function. It cannot end with a percent sign (%) or dollar sign (\$).
2. *Data-type* specifies the data type of the value the function returns.
3. *Def-params* specify the number and, optionally, the *data-type* of the DEF parameters. Parameters define the arguments the DEF expects to receive when invoked.
 - When you specify a *data-type*, all following parameters are of that data type until you specify a new data type.
 - If you do not specify any *data-type*, parameters take the current default data type and size.
 - The number of parameters equals the number of commas plus one. For example, empty parentheses specify one parameter of the default type and size; one comma inside the parentheses specifies two parameters of the default type and size, and so on. One *data-type* inside the parentheses specifies one parameter of the specified data type; two *data-types* separated by one comma specifies two parameters of the specified type, and so on.

Named Constants

1. *Const-nam* is the name you assign to the *const*.
2. *Data-type* specifies the data type of the *const-nam*. The value of the *const* must be numeric if the data type is numeric and string if the data type is STRING. If the *data-type* is STRING, *const* must be a quoted string or another string constant.
3. *Const* cannot end with a percent sign (%) or a dollar sign (\$).
4. *Const* cannot be of the RFA data type.
5. For VAX-11 BASIC, string constants cannot exceed 498 characters.
6. For BASIC-PLUS-2, string constants cannot exceed 128 characters.
7. VAX-11 BASIC allows *const* to be an expression for all data types except DECIMAL. Expressions are not allowed as values when you name DECIMAL constants.
8. BASIC-PLUS-2 allows *const* to be an expression for STRING and INTEGER data types. Expressions are not allowed as values when you name floating-point constants.
9. Allowable operators in DECLARE CONSTANT expressions include all valid arithmetic, relational, and logical operators except exponentiation. Built-in functions cannot be used in DECLARE CONSTANT expressions. The following examples use valid expressions as values:

```
100      DECLARE DOUBLE CONSTANT MAX_VALUE = (PI / 2) (VAX-11 BASIC only)
100      DECLARE STRING CONSTANT LEFT_ARROW = ('<----' + LF + CR)
```

DECLARE

General Rules

1. The DECLARE statement is not executable.
2. The DECLARE statement must lexically precede any reference to the variables, functions, or constants named in it.
3. You cannot declare virtual arrays.
4. To avoid confusion and to retain BASIC's implicit data typing feature, variable names ending with a dollar sign or percent sign are invalid in a DECLARE statement.

Variables

1. Variables named in a DECLARE statement are initialized to zero if numeric or to the null string if string.
2. Subsequent *decl-items* are associated with the specified data type until you specify another *data-type*.

DEF Functions

1. The DECLARE FUNCTION statement allows you to name a function defined in a DEF statement, specify the data type of the value the function returns, and declare the number and data type of the DEF parameters.
2. Data-type keywords must be separated by commas. For example:

```
100      DECLARE DOUBLE FUNCTION INTEREST(,DOUBLE,SINGLE)
```

This example declares two parameters of the default type and size, one DOUBLE parameter, and one SINGLE parameter for the function named INTEREST.
3. The first specification of a *def-param* is the default for subsequent arguments until you specify another *def-param*.

Named Constants

1. The DECLARE CONSTANT statement allows you to name a constant value and assign a data type to that value. Note that you can specify only one data type in a DECLARE CONSTANT statement. To declare another constant, you must use a second DECLARE CONSTANT statement.
2. You cannot change the value assigned to *const-nam*.
3. You cannot use a *const-nam* where a variable is required.

DECLARE

4. In VAX-11 BASIC, the specified *data-type* determines the data type of *const*. For example: 

```
100      DECLARE WORD CONSTANT MMM = 1.5
200      DECLARE REAL CONSTANT ZZZ = 123%
300      DECLARE BYTE CONSTANT YYY = '123'L
400      PRINT MMM,ZZZ,YYY
```

RUNNH

```
1           123          123
```

In this example, BASIC truncates the value 1.5 to a WORD integer, and ignores the percent suffix and the L (LONG) data type.

5. BASIC-PLUS-2 signals the error "Constant is inconsistent with the type of <name>" if the  data type of *const* does not match the specified *data-type*.

Note

Data types specified in a DECLARE statement override any defaults specified in COMPILE command qualifiers or OPTION statements.

Examples

Variables

```
100      DECLARE INTEGER CATALOG_NUM, DOUBLE PRICE, STRING ITEM_NAME
```

DEF Functions

```
100      DECLARE INTEGER FUNCTION AMOUNT(,DOUBLE,BYTE,,)
```

Named Constants

```
100      DECLARE DOUBLE CONSTANT INTEREST_RATE = 15.22
```

8.0 DEF

Function

The DEF statement lets you define a single- or multi-line function.

Format

Single-Line DEF

```
DEF [ data-type ] def-nam [ ( [ [ data-type ] unsubs-vbl-nam ],... ) ] = exp
```

Multi-Line DEF

```
DEF [ data-type ] def-nam [ ( [ [ data-type ] unsubs-vbl-nam ],... ) ]
```

```
[ statement ]...
```

```
{ END DEF  
FNEND }
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Data-type* can be any BASIC data-type keyword or, in VAX-11 BASIC, a data type defined in the RECORD statement. Data-type keywords, size, range, and precision are listed in Table 2 in this manual.
2. The *data-type* that precedes the *def-nam* specifies the data type of the value returned by the DEF function.
3. *Def-nam* is the name of the DEF function. The *def-nam* may contain from 1 to 31 characters.
4. If the *def-nam* also appears in a DECLARE FUNCTION statement, the following rules apply:
 - A function *data-type* is required.
 - The first character of the *def-nam* must be an alphabetic character (A through Z). The remaining characters may be any combination of letters, digits (0 through 9), dollar signs (\$), underscores (_), or periods (.), with one restriction: the last character cannot be a dollar sign.
5. If the *def-nam* does not appear in a DECLARE FUNCTION statement, but the DEF statement appears before the first reference to the *def-nam*, the following rules apply:
 - The function *data-type* is optional.
 - The first character of the *def-nam* must be an alphabetic letter (A through Z). The remaining characters can be any combination of letters, digits, dollar signs, underscores, or periods.

(continued on next page)

DEF

- If a function *data-type* is specified, the last character in the *def-nam* cannot be a dollar sign or percent sign.
 - If a function *data-type* is not specified, the last character in the *def-nam* must be a percent sign (%) for an INTEGER function, a dollar sign (\$) for a STRING function, or a letter, digit, period, or underscore for a function of the default type and size.
6. If the *def-nam* does not appear in a DECLARE FUNCTION statement, and the DEF statement appears after the first reference to the *def-nam*, the following rules apply:
- The function *data-type* cannot be present.
 - The first two characters of the *def-nam* must be FN. The remaining characters can be any combination of letters, digits, dollar signs, underscores, or periods, with one restriction: the last character must be a percent sign (%) for an INTEGER function, a dollar sign (\$) for a STRING function, or a letter, digit, period, or underscore for a function of the default type and size.
 - There must be at least one character between the FN characters and the ending dollar sign or percent character. FN\$ and FN% are not valid function names.
7. *Unsubs-vbl-nam* specifies optional formal DEF parameters. Because the parameters are local to the DEF function, any reference to these variables outside the DEF body creates a different variable.
8. You can specify the *data-type* of DEF parameters with a data-type keyword or, in VAX-11 BASIC, with a data type defined in a RECORD statement. If you do not include a data type, the parameters are of the default type and size. Parameters that follow a data-type keyword are of the specified type and size until you specify another data type.
9. BASIC-PLUS-2 allows you to specify up to eight parameters in a DEF statement.
10. VAX-11 BASIC allows you to specify up to 255 parameters in a DEF statement.

Single-Line DEF

1. *Exp* specifies the operations the function performs.

Multi-Line DEF

1. *Statements* specify the operations the function performs.
2. The END DEF or FNEND statement is required to end a multi-line DEF.
3. You can use any BASIC statement except END FUNCTION, END SUB, FUNCTION, FUNCTIONEND, FUNCTIONEXIT, DEF, or DEF* in a function definition.

General Rules

1. When BASIC encounters a DEF statement, control of the program passes to the next executable statement after the DEF.
2. Functions are invoked when you use the function name in an expression.
3. You cannot specify how parameters are passed. When you invoke a function, BASIC evaluates parameters from left to right and passes parameters to the function so that they cannot be modified. Numeric parameters are passed BY VALUE and string parameters are passed BY DESC, where the descriptor points to a local copy. DEF functions may reference variables in the main program, but they cannot reference variables in other DEF or DEF* functions. A DEF function may, therefore, modify other variables in the program, but not variables within another DEF function.
4. A DEF is local to the program or subprogram that defines it.
5. The DEF statement, or the first invocation of a function, whichever occurs first, constitutes the declaration of the function. The DECLARE FUNCTION statement defines the name of the function, but does not invoke it.
6. If your program invokes a function with a name that does not start with FN before the DEF statement defines the function, or if the number of parameters, types of parameters, or type of result declared in the invocation disagree with the number or types of parameters defined in the DEF statement, BASIC signals an error.
7. DATA statements in a multi-line DEF are not local to the function; they are local to the program module containing the function definition.
8. The function value (that is, the location storing the value the function returns) is initialized to zero or the null string each time you invoke the function.
9. ON ERROR GO BACK is the default error handler in a DEF function definition.
10. ON ERROR statements within a DEF are local to the function.
11. A GOTO, GOSUB, ON ERROR GOTO, or RESUME statement in a multi-line function definition must refer to a line number or label in the same function definition.
12. You cannot transfer control into a multi-line DEF except by invoking the function.
13. DEF functions can be recursive.

DEF

Examples

Single-Line DEF

```
1000    DEF DOUBLE ADD (DOUBLE A, B, SINGLE C, D, E) = A + B + C + D + E
2000    INPUT 'Enter five numbers to be added';V,W,X,Y,Z
2010    PRINT 'The sum is';ADD(V,W,X,Y,Z)
```

Multi-Line DEF

```
1000    DEF DOUBLE PAYROLL(INTEGER HOURS, REAL RATE)
        EXIT DEF IF HOURS = 0
        DECLARE INTEGER OVERTIME
        OVERTIME = HOURS - 40
        IF OVERTIME <= 0
            THEN HOURS = HOURS
        ELSE HOURS = 40
        END IF
        DECLARE REAL CONSTANT OVER_RATE = 1.5
        PAYROLL = (HOURS * RATE) + (OVERTIME * (OVER_RATE * RATE))
1030    END DEF
1040    INPUT "Your hours this week";MY_HOURS
1045    INPUT "Your pay rate";MY_PAY_RATE
1050    PRINT 'Your pay for the week is';PAYROLL(MY_HOURS,MY_PAY_RATE)
```

9.0 DEF*

Function

The DEF* statement lets you define a single- or multi-line function.

Note

The DEF* statement is not recommended for new program development. DIGITAL recommends that you use the DEF statement for defining single- and multi-line functions.

Format

*Single-Line DEF**

```
DEF* [ data-type ] def-nam [ ( [ [ data-type ] unsubs-vbl-nam ],... ) ] = exp
```

*Multi-Line DEF**

```
DEF* [ data-type ] def-nam [ ( [ [ data-type ] unsubs-vbl-nam ],... ) ]
      [ statement ]...
      { END DEF
        FNEND }
```

Syntax Rules

1. Data-type can be any BASIC data-type keyword or, in VAX-11 BASIC, a data type defined in the RECORD statement. Data-type keywords, size, range, and precision are listed in Table 2 in this manual.
2. The *data-type* that precedes the *def-nam* specifies the data type of the value returned by the DEF* function.
3. *Def-nam* is the name of the DEF* function. The *def-nam* may contain from 1 to 31 characters.
4. If the *def-nam* also appears in a DECLARE FUNCTION statement, the following rules apply:
 - A function *data-type* is required.
 - The first character of the *def-nam* must be an alphabetic character (A through Z). The remaining characters may be any combination of letters, digits (0 through 9), dollar signs (\$), underscores (_), or periods (.), with one restriction: the last character cannot be a dollar sign.

DEF*

5. If the *def-nam* does not appear in a DECLARE FUNCTION statement, but the DEF* statement appears before the first reference to the *def-nam*, the following rules apply:
 - The function *data-type* is optional.
 - The first character of the *def-nam* must be an alphabetic letter (A through Z). The remaining characters can be any combination of letters, digits, dollar signs, underscores, or periods.
 - If a function *data-type* is specified, the last character in the *def-nam* cannot be a dollar sign or a percent sign.
 - If a function *data-type* is not specified, the last character in the *def-nam* must be a percent sign (%) for an INTEGER function, a dollar sign (\$) for a STRING function, or a letter, digit, period, or underscore for a function of the default type and size.
6. If the *def-nam* does not appear in a DECLARE FUNCTION statement, and the DEF* statement appears after the first reference to the *def-nam*, the following rules apply:
 - The function *data-type* cannot be present.
 - The first two characters of the *def-nam* must be FN. The remaining characters can be any combination of letters, digits, dollar signs, underscores, or periods, with one restriction: the last character must be a percent sign (%) for an INTEGER function, a dollar sign (\$) for a STRING function, or a letter, digit, period, or underscore for a function of the default type and size.
 - There must be at least one character between the FN characters and the ending dollar sign or percent character. FN\$ and FN% are not valid function names.
7. *Unsubs-vbl-nam* specifies optional formal function parameters.
8. You can specify the *data-type* of function parameters with a *data-type* keyword. If you do not specify a *data-type*, parameters are of the default type and size. Parameters that follow a *data-type* keyword are of the specified type and size until you specify another *data-type*.
9. BASIC-PLUS-2 allows you to specify up to eight parameters in a DEF* statement.
10. VAX-11 BASIC allows you to specify up to 255 parameters in a DEF* statement.

*Single-Line DEF**

1. *Exp* specifies the operations the function performs.

*Multi-Line DEF**

1. *Statements* specify the operations the function performs.
2. The END DEF or FNEND statement is required to end a multi-line DEF*.
3. You can use any BASIC statement except END FUNCTION, END SUB, FUNCTION, FUNCTIONEND, FUNCTIONEXIT, DEF, or DEF* in a function definition.

General Rules

1. When BASIC encounters a DEF* statement, control of the program passes to the next executable statement after the DEF.
2. Functions are invoked when you use the function name in an expression.
3. You cannot specify how parameters are passed. When you invoke a DEF* function, BASIC evaluates parameters from left to right and passes parameters to the function so that they cannot be modified. Numeric parameters are passed BY VALUE, and string parameters are passed BY DESC, where the descriptor points to a local copy. DEF* functions may reference variables in the main program, but they cannot reference variables in other DEF or DEF* functions. A DEF* function may, therefore, modify variables in the program, but not variables within another DEF* function.
4. A DEF* is local to the program or subprogram that defines it.
5. The DEF* statement permits inclusion of the GOTO, ON GOTO, GOSUB, and ON GOSUB statements in a multi-line DEF* function. This allows you to transfer program control outside the function definition.
6. Although other variables used within the body of a DEF* are not local to the DEF*, DEF* formal parameters are. However, if you change the value of formal parameters within a DEF* function and then transfer control out of the DEF* without executing the END DEF or FNEND statement, variables outside the DEF* that have the same names as DEF* formal parameters are also changed.
7. The DEF* statement, or the first invocation of a function, whichever occurs first, constitutes the declaration of the function. The DECLARE FUNCTION statement defines the name of the function, but does not invoke it.
8. If your program invokes a function before the DEF* statement defines the function, or if the number of parameters, types of parameters, or type of result declared in the invocation disagree with the number or types of parameters defined in the DEF* statement, BASIC signals an error.
9. DEF* function values are not initialized when DEF* functions are invoked. Therefore, if a DEF* is invoked, and no new function value is assigned, the DEF* returns the value of its previous invocation.
10. DEF* functions can be recursive.
11. DATA statements in a multi-line DEF* are not local to the function; they are local to the program module containing the function definition.
12. The error handler of the program module that contains the DEF* is the default error handler for a DEF* function, not ON ERROR GO BACK as in DEF functions. Parameters return to their original values when control passes to the error handler.

DEF*

Examples

*Single-Line DEF**

```
1000    DEF* STRING CONCAT(STRING A,B) = A + B
2000    INPUT 'Enter two words';WORD1,WORD2
2010    PRINT CONCAT(WORD1,WORD2)
```

*Multi-Line DEF**

```
1000    DEF* DOUBLE EXAMPLE(DOUBLE A, B, SINGLE C, D, E)
          EXIT DEF IF B = 0
          EXAMPLE = (A/B) + C - (DE)
1030    END DEF
1040    INPUT 'Enter 5 numbers';V,W,X,Y,Z
1050    PRINT EXAMPLE(V,W,X,Y,Z)
```

10.0 DELETE

Function

The DELETE statement removes a record from a relative or indexed file.

Format

```
DELETE chnl-exp
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Chnl-exp* is a numeric expression that specifies a channel number associated with a file. It must be immediately preceded by a pound sign (#).

General Rules

1. The DELETE statement removes the current record from a file. You cannot then access the record.
2. The file specified by *chnl-exp* must be open with ACCESS MODIFY or WRITE.
3. You can delete a record only if the last I/O statement executed on the specified channel was a successful GET or FIND.
4. The DELETE statement leaves the Current Record Pointer undefined and the Next Record Pointer unchanged.
5. BASIC signals an error when the I/O channel is illegal or not open, when no current record exists, when access is illegal or illogical, when the operation is illegal, or when the record or bucket is locked.
6. In VAX-11 BASIC, if the record being deleted is in a file opened with UNLOCK EXPLICIT, the DELETE statement does not remove the lock on the record. If no lock was imposed with a previous GET or FIND statement, the default lock, ALLOW NONE, remains imposed. The lock can be removed with the FREE or UNLOCK statement. See the sections on GET, FIND, OPEN, FREE, and UNLOCK in this manual for more information on explicit record locking and unlocking.

Examples

```
1000    DELETE 5
```



DIMENSION

11.0 DIMENSION

Function

The DIMENSION statement creates and names a static, dynamic, or virtual array. The array subscripts determine the dimensions and size of the array. You can specify the data type of the array and associate the array with an I/O channel.

Format

Nonvirtual, Nonexecutable

{ DIM
DIMENSION } { [data-type] array-nam (int-const,...) },...

Virtual

{ DIM
DIMENSION } chnl-exp, { [data-type] array-nam (int-const,...) [= int-const] },...

Executable

{ DIM
DIMENSION } { [data-type] array-nam (int-vbl,...) },...

Syntax Rules

1. *Array-nam* is an array name. It must conform to the rules for naming variables.
2. An *array-nam* in a DIM statement cannot also appear in a COMMON, MAP, or DECLARE statement.
3. *Data-type* can be any BASIC data-type keyword or, in VAX-11 BASIC, a data type defined in the RECORD statement. Data-type keywords, size, range, and precision are listed in Table 2 in this manual.
4. If you do not specify a data type, the *array-nam* determines the type of data the array holds. If the *array-nam* ends in a percent sign (%), the array stores integer data. If the *array-nam* ends in a dollar sign (\$), the array stores string data. Otherwise, the array stores data of the default type and size.
5. A VAX-11 BASIC array can have up to 32 dimensions.
6. A BASIC-PLUS-2 array can have up to eight dimensions.

7. Each instance of *int-const* or *int-vbl* within the parentheses specifies the upper bound of an array dimension.
 - In VAX-11 BASIC, array bounds must be in the range 0 to 2^{31-1} .
 - In BASIC-PLUS-2, array bounds must be in the range 0 to 2^{15-1} .
 - Although the compiler does not generate an error for subscript values outside of these ranges, there is a limit to the amount of storage your system can allocate. Therefore, very large arrays can cause an internal allocation error or a run-time error.

Nonvirtual, Nonexecutable

1. When all the dimension specifications are *int-consts*, as in DIM A(15%,10%,20%), the DIM statement is nonexecutable and the array is static. A static array cannot appear in another DIM statement because BASIC allocates storage at compile time.
2. A nonexecutable DIM statement must lexically precede any reference to the array it dimensions. That is, you must DIMENSION a static array before you can reference array elements.

Virtual

1. The pound sign (#) must precede *chnl-exp* when dimensioning virtual arrays.
2. The virtual array must be dimensioned and the file must be open before you can reference the array.
3. When the data-type is STRING, the =*int-const* clause specifies the length of each array element. The default string length is 16 characters. Virtual string array lengths are rounded to the next higher power of two.

Executable

1. When any of the dimension specifications are *int-vbls*, as in DIM A(10%,20%,Y%), the DIM statement is executable and the array is dynamic. A dynamic array can be redimensioned with a DIM statement any number of times, since BASIC allocates storage at run time.

General Rules

1. You can create an array implicitly by referencing an array element without using a DIM statement. This causes BASIC to create an array with dimensions of (10), (10,10), (10,10,10), and so on, depending on the number of bounds specifications in the referenced array element. You cannot create virtual or executable arrays implicitly.
2. The lower bound of a BASIC array is always zero, rather than one. Thus, A(10) allocates 11 elements, A(10,10) allocates 121 elements, and A(0,0,0) allocates 1 element.
3. BASIC allocates storage for arrays by row, from right to left.

DIMENSION

Nonvirtual, Nonexecutable

1. You can declare arrays with the COMMON, MAP, and DECLARE statements. Arrays so declared cannot be redimensioned with the DIM statement. Furthermore, string arrays declared with a COMMON or MAP statement are always fixed-length.
2. If you reference an array element declared in an array whose subscripts are larger than the bounds specified in the DIM statement, BASIC signals the error "Subscript out of range" (ERR=55).

Virtual

1. When the rightmost subscript varies faster than the subscripts to the left, fewer disk accesses are necessary to access array elements in virtual arrays.
2. Using the same DIM statement for multiple virtual arrays allocates all arrays in a single disk file. The arrays are stored in the order they were declared.
3. Any program or subprogram can access a virtual array by declaring it in a *virtual* DIMENSION statement. For example:

```
100      DIM #1, A(10)
200      DIM #1, B(10)
```

In this example, array B overlays array A. You must, however, specify the same channel number, data types, and limits in the same order as they occur in the DIM statement that created the virtual array.

4. BASIC stores a string in a virtual array by padding it with trailing nulls to the length of the array element. It removes these nulls when it retrieves the string from the virtual array.
5. In *BASIC-PLUS-2* on *RSX-11M/M-PLUS* systems and in *VAX-11 BASIC*, the OPEN statement for a virtual array must include the ORGANIZATION VIRTUAL clause for the *chnl-exp* specified in the DIMENSION statement.
6. BASIC does not initialize virtual arrays and treats them as statically allocated arrays. You cannot redimension virtual arrays.
7. Refer to the *BASIC User's Guide* for more information on virtual arrays.

Executable

1. You create an executable, dynamic array by using integer variables for array bounds as in DIM A(Y%,X%). This eliminates the need to dimension an array to its largest possible size. Array bounds in an executable DIM statement can be constants or variables, but not expressions. At least one bound must be a variable.
2. You cannot reference an array named in an executable DIM statement until after the DIM statement executes.
3. You can redimension a dynamic array to make the bounds of each dimension larger or smaller, but you cannot change the number of dimensions. That is, you cannot redimension a four-dimensional array to be a five-dimensional array.

DIMENSION

4. The executable DIM statement cannot be used to dimension virtual arrays, arrays received as formal parameters, or arrays declared in COMMON, MAP, or nonexecutable DIM statements.
5. An executable DIM statement always reinitializes the array to zero (for numeric arrays) or the null string (for string arrays).
6. If you reference an array element declared in an executable DIM statement whose subscripts are larger than the bounds specified in the last execution of the DIM, BASIC signals the error "Subscript out of range" (ERR=55).

Examples

Nonvirtual, Nonexecutable

```
300      DIM STRING NAME_LIST(100,100), BYTE AGE(100)
```

Virtual

```
100      DIM #1%, STRING NAM_LIST(500), REAL AMOUNT(10,10)
```

Executable

```
200      DIM DOUBLE INVENTORY(BASE,MARKUP)
```

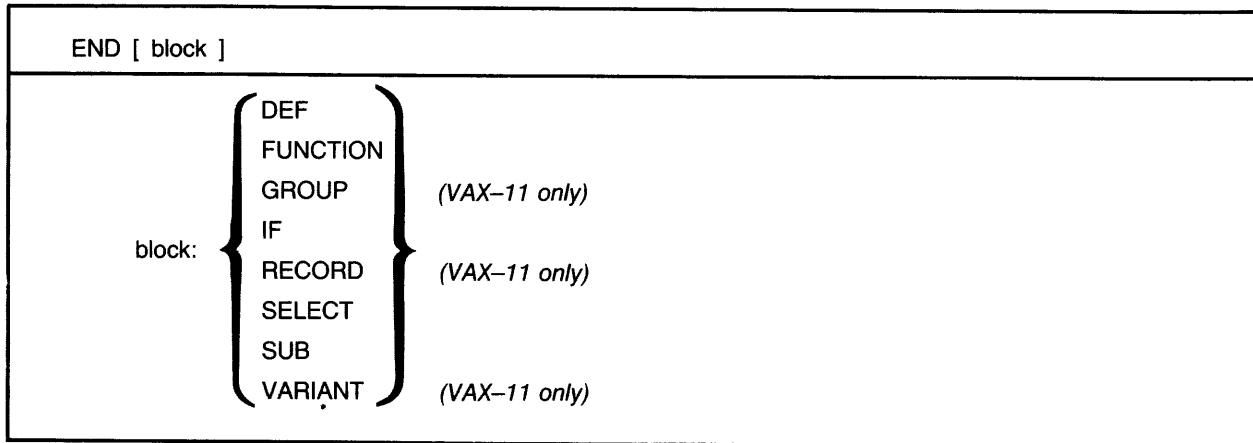
END

12.0 END

Function

The END statement marks the physical and logical end of a main program, a program module, or a block of statements.

Format



Syntax Rules

1. The END statement with no *block* keyword marks the end of a main program. The END statement must be the last statement on the lexically last line in the main program.
2. The END statement followed by a *block* keyword marks the end of a BASIC SUB or FUNCTION subprogram, or a DEF, IF, or SELECT statement block. In VAX-11 BASIC, END RECORD, END GROUP, and END VARIANT mark the end of a RECORD statement, or a GROUP component or VARIANT component of a RECORD statement.
3. The END *block* statement must be the lexically last statement in a subprogram or statement block and must match the statement that established the subprogram or statement block.

General Rules

1. When an END statement marking the end of a main program executes, BASIC closes all files and releases all program storage.
2. BASIC cannot execute an END statement that marks the end of a program unit while an error is being handled. The module must execute a RESUME or ON ERROR statement before the END statement.
3. BASIC signals an error when a program contains an END *block* statement with no corresponding and preceding *block* keyword.
4. When BASIC executes an END DEF or END FUNCTION statement, it returns the function value to the statement that invoked the function and releases all storage associated with the DEF or FUNCTION.

5. The END DEF statement restores the error handling in effect when the DEF was invoked.
6. Error handlers set up in DEF* statements are global. The END DEF statement does not restore the error handling in effect when the DEF* was invoked.
7. The END SUB and END FUNCTION statements do not affect I/O operations or files.
8. The END SUB statement releases the storage allocated to local variables and returns control to the calling program.
9. The END SUB statement cannot be executed in an error handler unless the SUBEND is in a subprogram called by the error handler.

Examples

```
300    IF A = 20
      THEN      PRINT "Bye"
                 GOTO 32767
      ELSE GOTO 100
      END IF
      !
      !
      !
32767  END
```

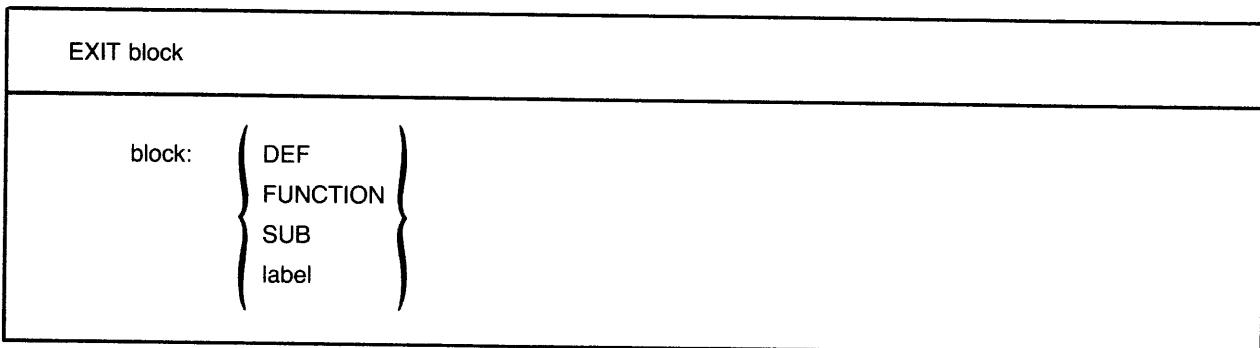
EXIT

13.0 EXIT

Function

The EXIT statement lets you exit from a SUB or FUNCTION subprogram, a multi-line DEF, or from a statement block.

Format



Syntax Rules

1. The FUNCTION, SUB, and DEF keywords specify the type of subprogram or multi-line DEF from which BASIC is to exit.
2. *Label* specifies a statement label for an IF, SELECT, FOR, WHILE, or UNTIL statement block.

General Rules

1. An EXIT DEF, EXIT FUNCTION, or EXIT SUB statement is equivalent to an unconditional branch to an END DEF, END FUNCTION, or END SUB statement. Control then passes to the statement that invoked the DEF or to the statement following the statement that called the subprogram.
2. The EXIT *label* statement is equivalent to an unconditional branch to the first statement following the end of the IF, SELECT, FOR, WHILE, or UNTIL statement labelled by the *label*.
3. An error handler cannot execute an EXIT FUNCTION or EXIT SUB statement unless the error handler calls the FUNCTION or SUB subprogram.
4. An EXIT FUNCTION or EXIT SUB statement cannot be used within a multi-line DEF function.
5. When the EXIT FUNCTION or EXIT SUB statement executes, BASIC releases all storage allocated to local variables and returns control to the calling program.

EXIT

Examples

```
100      LOOP_1: FOR I% = 1% TO 10%
          PRINT I%
          IF I% = 5%
          THEN EXIT LOOP_1
          END IF
          NEXT I%
!
!
!
5000    SUB SUBA
!
!
!
6000    EXIT SUB
!
!
!
10000   END SUB
```

EXTERNAL

14.0 EXTERNAL

Function

The EXTERNAL statement declares constants, variables, functions, and subroutines external to your program. You can describe parameters for external functions and subroutines.

Format

External Constants

```
EXTERNAL data-type CONSTANT const-nam,...
```

External Variables

```
EXTERNAL data-type unsubs-vbl-nam,...
```

External Functions

```
EXTERNAL data-type FUNCTION { func-nam [ pass-mech ] [ ( [ external-param ],... ) ] },...
```

External Subroutines

```
EXTERNAL SUB { sub-nam [ pass-mech ] [ ( [ external-param ],... ) ] },...
```

pass-mech: {
 BY DESC
 BY REF
 BY VALUE }

external-param: [data-type] [DIM ([,]...)] [= int-const] [pass-mech]

Syntax Rules

1. For external variables, *data-type* can be any valid numeric data type.
2. For external constants, *data-type* can be:
 - For VAX-11 BASIC: BYTE, WORD, LONG, SINGLE, INTEGER (any size), or REAL (if the default size is SINGLE).
 - For BASIC-PLUS-2: WORD, or INTEGER (if the default size is WORD).
3. For external functions and subroutines, *data-type* can be any BASIC data-type keyword or, in VAX-11 BASIC, a data type defined by a RECORD statement. Data-type keywords, size, range, and precision are listed in Table 2 in this manual.

EXTERNAL

4. In VAX-11 BASIC, the name of an external constant, variable, function, or subroutine can consist of from 1 to 31 characters and must conform to the following rules:

- The first character of an unquoted name must be an alphabetic character (A through Z). The remaining characters, if present, can be any combination of letters, digits (0 through 9), dollar signs (\$), periods (.), and underscores (_).
 - Quoted names are allowed for the EXTERNAL SUB statement only. Quoted names can consist of any combination of printable ASCII characters.
 - An EXTERNAL SUB or EXTERNAL FUNCTION statement with empty parentheses specifies that the named subprogram has zero arguments.
5. An EXTERNAL SUB or EXTERNAL FUNCTION statement with no parentheses specifies that the named subprogram may receive any number of arguments.
6. In BASIC-PLUS-2, the name of an external constant, variable, or subroutine can consist of from one to six characters and must conform to the following rules:

- The first character of an unquoted name must be an alphabetic character (A through Z). The remaining characters, if present, can be any combination of letters, digits (0 through 9), dollar signs (\$), and periods (.).
- Quoted names are allowed for the EXTERNAL SUB statement only. Quoted names can consist of any combination of alphabetic characters, digits, dollar signs, periods, and spaces.

External Functions and Subroutines

1. The *data-type* that precedes the FUNCTION keyword defines the data type of the function result.
2. *Pass-mech* specifies how parameters are to be passed to the function or subroutine.
 - A *pass-mech* clause outside the parentheses applies to all parameters.
 - A *pass-mech* clause inside the parentheses overrides the previous *pass-mech* and applies only to the specific parameter.
3. *External-param* defines the form of the arguments passed to the external function or subprogram.
 - Empty parentheses indicate that the function or subroutine is being named, but that parameters are not being defined.
 - *Data-type* specifies the data type of a parameter. If you do not specify a data type, parameters are of the default data type and size. When you do specify a data type, all following parameters are of that data type until you specify a new data type.



BP2

EXTERNAL

- The DIM keyword indicates that the parameter is an array. Commas specify array dimensions. The number of dimensions is equal to the number of commas plus one. For example:

```
100      EXTERNAL STRING FUNCTION NEW (DOUBLE, STRING DIM(,), DIM())
```

This example declares a function named NEW that has three parameters. The first is a double-precision floating-point value, the second is a two-dimensional string array, and the third is a one-dimensional string array. The function returns a string result.

- You can specify how an argument is to be passed to the function or subprogram with the optional *pass-mech* clause. If you do not specify a passing mechanism for a parameter, BASIC passes arguments by the default passing mechanisms listed in Tables 19 and 20.

General Rules

1. The EXTERNAL statement must precede any program reference to the constant, variable, function, or subroutine declared in the statement.
2. The EXTERNAL statement is not executable.
3. A name declared in an EXTERNAL CONSTANT statement may be used in any nondeclarative statement as if it were a constant.
4. A name declared in an EXTERNAL FUNCTION statement may be used as a function invocation in an expression.
5. A name declared in an EXTERNAL SUB statement may be used in a CALL statement.
6. The optional *pass-mech* clauses in the EXTERNAL FUNCTION and EXTERNAL SUB statements tell BASIC how to pass arguments to a non-BASIC function or subprogram. Table 19 describes VAX-11 BASIC parameter passing mechanisms. Table 20 describes BASIC-PLUS-2 parameter passing mechanisms.
 - BY REF specifies that BASIC passes the argument's address. This is the default for all arguments except strings and entire arrays.
 - BY VALUE specifies that VAX-11 BASIC passes the argument's 32-bit value and that BASIC-PLUS-2 passes the argument's 16-bit value.
 - BY DESC specifies that BASIC passes the address of a VAX-11 BASIC descriptor or a BASIC-PLUS-2 descriptor. For information about the format of a VAX-11 BASIC descriptor for strings and arrays, see Appendix C in *BASIC on VAX/VMS Systems*. BASIC-PLUS-2 creates descriptors only for strings and arrays; these descriptors are described in Appendix C in *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems* and *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems*.

EXTERNAL

7. The arguments passed to external functions and subroutines should match the external parameters declared in the EXTERNAL FUNCTION or EXTERNAL SUB statement in number, type, ordinality, and passing mechanism as BASIC forces arguments to conform to the declared parameters. BASIC signals an error when conformance is impossible (for example, when a STRING argument is passed where an INTEGER parameter was declared) and an informational message when a conversion results in a modifiable parameter becoming a nonmodifiable parameter.

Examples

External Constants

```
100      EXTERNAL LONG CONSTANT SYS$FC
```

External Variables

```
100      EXTERNAL WORD SYNSUM
```

External Functions

```
100      EXTERNAL DOUBLE FUNCTION USR$2 (DOUBLE DIM(,),BYTE BY VALUE)
```

External Subroutines

```
100      EXTERNAL SUB CALC BY DESC (STRING DIM(,), BYTE BY REF)
```

15.0 FIELD

Function

Note

The FIELD statement is supported only for compatibility with BASIC-PLUS. Because data defined in the FIELD statement can be accessed only as string data, you must use the CVTxx functions to process numeric data. This means that you must convert string data to numeric after you move it from the I/O buffer. Then, after processing, you must convert numeric data back to string data before transferring it to the I/O buffer. DIGITAL recommends that you use BASIC's dynamic mapping feature or multiple MAPs instead of the FIELD statement and CVTxx functions.

The FIELD statement dynamically associates string variables with all or parts of an I/O buffer. FIELD statements do not move data. Instead, they permit direct access through string variables to sections of a specified I/O buffer.

Format

```
FIELD chnl-exp, int-exp AS str-vbl [ , int-exp AS str-vbl ]...
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Chnl-exp* is a numeric expression that specifies a channel number associated with a file. It must be preceded by a pound sign (#). A file must be open on the specified channel or BASIC signals an error.
2. *Int-exp* specifies the number of characters in the *str-vbl* that follows the AS keyword.

General Rules

1. A FIELD statement is executable. You can change a buffer description at any time by executing another FIELD statement. For example:

```
100      FIELD #1%, 40% AS WHOLE_FIELD$  
          FIELD #1%, 10% AS A$, 10% AS B$, 10% AS C$, 10% AS D$
```

The first FIELD statement associates the first 40 characters of a buffer with the variable WHOLE_FIELD\$. The second FIELD statement associates the first 10 characters of the same buffer with A\$, the second 10 characters with B\$, and so on. Later program statements can refer to any of the variables named in the FIELD statements to access specific portions of the buffer.

2. You cannot define virtual array strings as string variables in a FIELD statement.
3. See the *BASIC-PLUS Language Manual* for more information on the FIELD statement.

FIELD



VAX-11 BASIC

1. A variable named in a FIELD statement cannot be used in a COMMON or MAP statement, as a parameter in a CALL or SUB statement, or in a MOVE statement.
2. Using the FIELD statement on a VIRTUAL file that contains a virtual array causes BASIC to signal "Illegal or illogical access" (ERR=136).
3. If you name an array in a FIELD statement, you cannot use MAT statements of the format:

MAT arr-nam1 = arr-nam2

or

MAT arr-nam1 = NUL\$

where *arr-nam1* is named in the FIELD statement. An attempt to do so causes BASIC to signal a compile-time error.

Examples

```
100      FIELD #8%, 2% AS U$, 2% AS CL$, 4% AS X$, 4% AS Y$  
210      LSET U$ = CVT$(U%)  
          LSET CL$ = CVT$(CL%)  
          LSET X$ = CVTF$(X)  
          LSET Y$ = CVTF$(Y)  
300      U% = CVT%$(U$)  
          CL% = CVT%$(CL$)  
          X = CVT$F(X$)  
          Y = CVT$F(Y$)
```

Note

DIGITAL does not recommend the FIELD statement for new program development.

16.0 FIND

Function

The FIND statement locates a specified record in a disk file and makes it the Current Record for a GET, UPDATE, or DELETE operation. FIND statements are valid on RMS sequential, relative, indexed, and block I/O files. You should not use FIND statements on terminal-format files, virtual array files, or files opened with ORGANIZATION UNDEFINED.

Format

VAX-11 BASIC



FIND chnl-exp [, position-clause] [, lock-clause]

position-clause:	{ RFA rfa-exp RECORD num-exp KEY# key-clause }
lock-clause:	{ ALLOW allow-clause REGARDLESS }
allow-clause:	{ NONE READ MODIFY }
key-clause:	int-exp1 rel-op { str-exp int-exp2 decimal-exp }
rel-op:	{ EQ GE GT }

(continued on next page)

FIND

BP2

BASIC-PLUS-2

FIND chnl-exp [, position-clause]

position-clause: { RFA rfa-exp
RECORD num-exp
KEY# key-clause }

key-clause: int-exp1 rel-op { str-exp
int-exp2 }

rel-op: { EQ
GE
GT }

Syntax Rules

1. *Chnl-exp* is a numeric expression that specifies a channel number associated with a file. It must be immediately preceded by a pound sign (#).
2. *Position-clause* specifies the position of a record in a file. BASIC signals an error if you specify a *position-clause* and *chnl-exp* is not associated with a disk file.
 - If you do not specify a *position-clause*, FIND locates records sequentially. Sequential record access is valid on RMS sequential, relative, indexed, and block I/O files.
 - The RFA *position-clause* allows you to randomly locate records by specifying the Record File Address (RFA) of a record. That is, you specify the disk address of a record, and RMS locates the record at that address. All RMS file organizations may be accessed by RFA.
 - The RECORD *position-clause* allows you to randomly locate records in relative and block I/O files by specifying the record number.
 - The KEY *position-clause* allows you to randomly locate records in indexed files by specifying a key of reference, a relational test, and a key value.
3. *Rfa-exp* in the RFA *position-clause* is a variable of the RFA data type that specifies the record's Record File Address. Note that an RFA expression can only be a variable of the RFA data type or the GETRFA function. Use the GETRFA function to find the RFA of a record.
4. *Int-exp* in the RECORD *position-clause* specifies the number of the record you want to locate. It must be between one and the file's maximum record number.

5. In the *key-clause*:

- *Int-exp1* is the target key of reference. It must be a WORD or LONG integer between zero and the highest-numbered key for the file, inclusive. BASIC converts BYTE integers to WORD. The primary key is key number zero, the first alternate key is key number one, the second alternate key is key number two, and so on. *Int-exp1* must be preceded by a pound sign (#) or BASIC signals an error.
 - *Str-exp* and *int-exp2* specify a string or integer value to be compared with the key value of a record.
 - *Rel-op* specifies how *str-exp* or *int-exp2* is to be compared to *int-exp1*. EQ means "equal to," GE means "greater than or equal to," and GT means "greater than."
6. When you specify a RECORD clause, *chnl-exp* must be a channel associated with an open relative or block I/O file.
7. When you specify a KEY clause, *chnl-exp* must be a channel associated with an open indexed file.

VAX-11 BASIC



1. *Str-exp* in the KEY clause cannot be a null string.
2. *Decimal-exp* in the KEY clause specifies a packed decimal value to be compared with the key value of a record.
3. *Lock-clause* allows you to control how a record is locked to other access streams. The file associated with *chnl-exp* must have been opened with the UNLOCK EXPLICIT clause or BASIC signals the error "illegal record locking clause".
4. If you specify a *lock-clause*, it must follow the *position-clause*. If the *lock-clause* precedes the *position-clause*, BASIC signals an error.

General Rules

1. The file associated with *chnl-exp* must be opened with ACCESS MODIFY, READ, or SCRATCH before your program can execute a FIND.
2. FIND does not transfer any data.
3. A successful sequential FIND updates both the Current Record and Next Record Pointers.
 - For sequential files, a successful FIND locates the next sequential record (the record pointed to by the Next Record Pointer) in the file, changes the Current Record Pointer to the record just found, and sets the Next Record Pointer to the next sequential record. If the Current Record Pointer points to the last record in a file, a sequential find causes BASIC to signal "End of file on device" (ERR=11).
 - For relative files, a successful FIND locates the record with the next higher record number (or cell number), makes it the Current Record, and changes the Next Record to the Current Record plus one.

FIND

- For indexed files, a successful FIND locates the next logical record in the current key of reference, makes this the Current Record, and changes the Next Record to the Current Record plus one.
 - For block I/O files, a successful FIND locates the next disk block (for files with RECORDSIZE 512) or the next record (for files with RECORDSIZE greater than 512), makes it the Current Record, and changes the Next Record to the Current Record plus one.
4. A successful random FIND by KEY locates the first record whose key satisfies the key-clause comparison:
 - With an exact key match (EQ), a successful FIND locates the first record in the file that equals the key value given in *int-exp* or specified by *str-exp*. The characters specified by *str-exp* are matched approximately rather than exactly. That is, if you specify "ABC" and the key length is six characters, BASIC matches the first record that begins with ABC. If you specify "ABC ", BASIC matches only a record with the key "ABC ". If no match is possible, BASIC signals the error "Record not found" (ERR=155).
 - With the greater than key match (GT), a successful FIND locates the first record with a value greater than *int-exp* or *str-exp*. If no such record exists, BASIC signals the error "End of file on device" (ERR=11).
 - If you specify a greater than or equal to key match (GE), a successful FIND locates the first record that equals the key value in *int-exp* or *str-exp*. If no exact match is possible, BASIC locates the first record with a key value higher than *int-exp* or *str-exp*.
 5. A successful random access FIND by RFA or by RECORD changes the Current Record Pointer to the record specified by *rfa-exp* or *int-exp*, but leaves the Next Record Pointer unchanged.
 6. A successful random access FIND by KEY changes the Current Record Pointer to the first record whose key satisfies the key-clause comparison and the Next Record Pointer to the record with the next higher value in the current key.
 7. When a random access FIND by RFA, RECORD, or KEY is not successful, BASIC signals "Record not found" (ERR=155). The values of the Current Record Pointer and Next Record Pointer are undefined.
 8. If the RMS index lists are in memory, a FIND on an indexed file does not initiate any disk operations.



VAX-11 BASIC

1. The type of lock you impose on a record remains in effect until you explicitly unlock it with a FREE or UNLOCK statement or until you close the file.
 - ALLOW NONE specifies no access to the record. This means that other access streams cannot retrieve the record unless they bypass lock checking with GET REGARDLESS.
 - ALLOW READ specifies read access to the record. This means that other access streams can retrieve the record but cannot PUT or UPDATE the record.
 - ALLOW MODIFY specifies both read and write access to the record. This means that other access streams can GET, PUT, DELETE, or UPDATE the record.

2. When you do not specify an ALLOW clause, locking is imposed as follows:

- If the file associated with *chnl-exp* was opened with UNLOCK EXPLICIT, BASIC imposes the ALLOW NONE lock on the retrieved record and the next GET or FIND does not unlock the previously locked record.
- If the file associated with *chnl-exp* was not opened with UNLOCK EXPLICIT, BASIC locks the retrieved record and unlocks the previously locked record.

BASIC-PLUS-2

1. When you access a shared file, a successful FIND locks the record or bucket and unlocks the previously locked record or bucket.

BP2

Examples

Sequential Access

```
100      MAP (XYZ) STRING LAST_NAME = 10, FIRST_NAME = 6
150      OPEN 'EMP.DAT' AS FILE #1, &
                  ORGANIZATION SEQUENTIAL, MAP XYZ
200      FIND #1
```

Random Access

```
100      DECLARE RFA Address(99)
200      MAP (XYZ) STRING LAST_NAME = 10, FIRST_NAME = 6
300      OPEN 'EMP.DAT' AS FILE #1, &
                  ORGANIZATION SEQUENTIAL, MAP XYZ
400      FIND #1
Address(0) = GETRFA(1)
!
!
!
500      FIND #1, RFA Address(5)
!
!
!
600      OPEN 'NEWEMP.DAT' AS FILE #2, &
                  ORGANIZATION RELATIVE, MAP XYZ
700      FIND #2, RECORD A%
Address(A%) = GETRFA(2)
!
!
!
FIND #2, RFA Address(A%)
!
!
!
800      OPEN 'OLDEMP.DAT' AS FILE #3, &
                  ORGANIZATION INDEXED, MAP XYZ, &
                  PRIMARY KEY LAST_NAME
FIND #3, KEY #0 EQ "JONES"
Address(5) = GETRFA(3)
!
!
!
FIND #3, RFA Address(7)
```

FIND

VAX-11 BASIC

```
100      MAP (XYZ) STRING LAST_NAME = 10, FIRST_NAME = 6
200      OPEN 'EMP.DAT' AS FILE #1,
              ORGANIZATION INDEXED,
              MAP XYZ, PRIMARY KEY LAST_NAME,
              &
              UNLOCK EXPLICIT
400      FIND #3, KEY #0 EQ "JONES", ALLOW READ
```

17.0 FNEND

Function

The FNEND statement is a synonym for END DEF. See the END statement for syntax rules.

Format

```
{ FNEND  
END DEF }
```

FNEXIT

18.0 FNEXIT

Function

The FNEXIT statement is a synonym for the EXIT DEF statement. See the EXIT statement for syntax rules.

Format

```
{ FNEXIT  
  EXIT DEF }
```

19.0 FOR

Function

The FOR statement repeatedly executes a block of statements, while incrementing a specified control variable for each execution of the statement block. FOR loops can be conditional or unconditional, and can modify other statements.

Format

Unconditional

```
FOR num-unsubs-vbl = num-exp1 TO num-exp2 [ STEP num-exp3 ]
```

```
[ statement ]...
```

```
NEXT num-unsubs-vbl
```

Conditional

```
FOR num-unsubs-vbl = num-exp1 [ STEP num-exp3 ] { UNTIL } WHILE cond-exp
```

```
[ statement ]...
```

```
NEXT num-unsubs-vbl
```

Unconditional Statement Modifier

```
statement FOR num-unsubs-vbl = num-exp1 TO num-exp2 [ STEP num-exp3 ]
```

Conditional Statement Modifier

```
statement FOR num-unsubs-vbl = num-exp1 [ step num-exp3 ] { UNTIL } WHILE cond-exp
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Num-unsubs-vbl* is the loop variable. It is incremented each time the loop executes.
2. In unconditional FOR loops, *num-exp1* is the initial value of the loop variable, while *num-exp2* is the maximum value.
3. In conditional FOR loops, *num-exp1* is the initial value of the loop variable, while the *cond-exp* in the WHILE or UNTIL clause is the condition that controls loop iteration.
4. *Num-exp3* in the STEP clause is the value by which the loop variable is incremented after each execution of the loop.
5. In VAX-11 BASIC, you can nest FOR loops to a maximum of 12 levels, depending on the complexity of the loops.

FOR

6. In BASIC-PLUS-2, you nest FOR loops to a maximum of 8 levels, depending on the complexity of the loops.
7. An inner loop must be entirely within an outer loop; the loops cannot overlap.
8. You cannot use the same loop variable in nested FOR loops. That is, if the outer loop uses "FOR I = 1 TO 10", you cannot use the variable I as a loop variable in an inner loop.
9. The default for *num-exp3* is one if there is no STEP clause.
10. You can transfer control into a FOR loop only by returning from a function invocation, a subprogram call, or an error handler that was invoked in the loop.
11. Each FOR statement must have a corresponding NEXT statement or BASIC signals an error.

General Rules

1. The starting, incrementing, and ending values of the loop do not change during loop execution.
2. The loop variable can be modified inside the FOR loop.
3. BASIC converts *num-exp1*, *num-exp2*, and *num-exp3* to the data type of *num-unsubs-vbl* (the loop variable) before storing them.
4. When an unconditional FOR loop ends, the loop variable contains the value last used in the loop, not the value that caused loop termination.
5. During each iteration of a conditional loop, BASIC tests the value of *cond-exp* before it executes the loop.
 - If you specify a WHILE clause and *cond-exp* is false (value zero), BASIC exits from the loop. If the *cond-exp* is true (value nonzero), the loop executes again.
 - If you specify an UNTIL clause and *cond-exp* is true (value nonzero), BASIC exits from the loop. If the *exp* is false (value zero), the loop executes again.
6. When FOR is used as a statement modifier, BASIC executes the statement until *num-unsubs-vbl* equals or exceeds *num-exp2* or until the WHILE or UNLESS condition is satisfied.

Examples

Unconditional

```
350    FOR I = 3 TO 99 STEP 3
!
!
!
400    NEXT I
```

Unconditional

```
100    FOR Z = 0 STEP 2 UNTIL X
!
!
!
200    NEXT Z
```

FOR

Unconditional Statement Modifier

```
100      A = A + .0005 FOR I = 1 TO 10
```

Conditional Statement Modifier

```
100      FIND #2 FOR I = 1 UNTIL ERR=155
```

FREE

20.0 FREE (VAX-11 BASIC)

Function

The FREE statement unlocks all records and buckets associated with a specified channel.

Format

```
FREE chnl-exp
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Chnl-exp* is a numeric expression that specifies a channel number associated with a file. It must be immediately preceded by a pound sign (#).

General Rules

1. The file specified by *chnl-exp* must be open.
2. You cannot use the FREE statement with files not on disk.
3. If there are no locked records or buckets on the specified channel, the FREE statement has no effect and BASIC does not signal an error.
4. The FREE statement does not change record buffers or pointers.
5. Your program must execute a GET or FIND statement after a FREE statement executes before a PUT statement can execute.

Examples

```
450      FREE #6%
```

FUNCTION

21.0 FUNCTION

Function

The FUNCTION statement marks the beginning of a FUNCTION subprogram and defines the subprogram's parameters.

Format

VAX-11 BASIC



FUNCTION data-type func-nam [pass-mech] [([formal-param],...)]

[statement]...

{ END FUNCTION
FUNCTIONEND }

pass-mech: { BY REF
BY DESC }

formal-param:
[data-type] { unsubs-vbl-nam
array-nam ([int-const] ...)
[= int-const] [pass-mech]
[, ...] }

BASIC-PLUS-2



FUNCTION data-type func-nam [([formal-param],...)]

[statement]...

{ END FUNCTION
FUNCTIONEND }

formal-param:
[data-type] { unsubs-vbl-nam
array-nam ([int-const] ...) }

FUNCTION

Syntax Rules

1. *Func-nam* names the FUNCTION subprogram. The last character of the name cannot be a dollar sign (\$).
2. *Data-type* can be any BASIC data-type keyword or, in VAX-11 BASIC, a data type defined in the RECORD statement. Data-type keywords, size, range, and precision are listed in Table 2 in this manual.
3. The *data-type* that precedes the *func-nam* specifies the data type of the value returned by the FUNCTION subprogram.
4. *Formal-param* specifies the number and type of parameters for the arguments the FUNCTION subprogram expects to receive when invoked.
 - Empty parentheses indicate that the FUNCTION subprogram has zero parameters.
 - *Data-type* specifies the data type of a parameter. If you do not specify a data type, parameters are of the default data type and size. When you do specify a data type, all following parameters are of that data type until you specify a new data type.
 - If you specify a *data-type*, *unsubs-vbl-nam* and *array-nam* cannot end in a percent sign (%) or dollar sign (\$).
 - Parameters defined in *formal-param* must agree in number and type with the arguments specified in the function invocation.
5. The FUNCTION statement must be the first statement in the FUNCTION subprogram.
6. Compiler directives and comment fields (!), because they are not BASIC statements, may precede the FUNCTION statement. However, they cannot precede the subprogram's first numbered line. Note that REM is a BASIC statement; therefore, it cannot precede the FUNCTION statement.
7. Every FUNCTION statement must have a corresponding END FUNCTION statement or FUNCTIONEND statement.
8. Any BASIC statement except END, SUB, SUBEND, END SUB, or SUBEXIT can appear in a FUNCTION subprogram.



VAX-11 BASIC

1. *Func-nam* can consist of from 1 to 31 characters. The first character must be an alphabetic character (A through Z). The remaining characters, if present, can be any combination of letters, digits (0 through 9), dollar signs (\$), periods (.), or underscores (_).
2. If the data type is STRING, the =*int-const* clause allows you to specify the length of the string. The default string length is 16.
3. VAX-11 BASIC allows you to specify from 1 to 32 *formal-params*.

4. *Pass-mech* specifies the parameter passing mechanism by which the FUNCTION subprogram receives arguments when invoked. A *pass-mech* should be specified only when the FUNCTION subprogram is being called by a non-BASIC program.
5. A *pass-mech* clause outside the parentheses applies by default to all FUNCTION parameters. A *pass-mech* clause in the *formal-param* list overrides the specified default and applies only to the immediately preceding parameter.

BASIC-PLUS-2

1. *Func-nam* can consist of from one to six characters. The first character must be an alphabetic character (A through Z). The remaining characters, if present, can be any combination of letters, digits (0 through 9), dollar signs (\$), and periods (.).
2. BASIC-PLUS-2 allows you to specify from one to eight *formal-params*.

BP2

General Rules

1. FUNCTION subprograms must be declared with the EXTERNAL statement before your program can invoke them.
2. FUNCTION subprograms receive parameters BY REF or BY DESC.
 - BY REF specifies that the FUNCTION subprogram receives the argument's address.
 - BY DESC specifies that the FUNCTION subprogram receives the address of a VAX-11 BASIC descriptor or a BASIC-PLUS-2 descriptor. For information about the format of a VAX-11 BASIC descriptor for strings and arrays, see Appendix C in *BASIC on VAX/VMS Systems*; for information on other types of descriptors, refer to the *VAX Architecture Handbook*. BASIC-PLUS-2 creates descriptors only for strings and arrays; these descriptors are described in Appendix C in *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems* and *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems*.
3. All variables and data, except virtual arrays, COMMON areas, and MAP areas in a FUNCTION subprogram, are local to the subprogram.
4. BASIC initializes local numeric variables to zero and local string variables to the null string each time the FUNCTION subprogram is invoked.
5. ON ERROR GO BACK is the default error handler for a FUNCTION subprogram.

BASIC-PLUS-2

BP2

1. BASIC-PLUS-2 receives numeric *unsubs-vbls* BY REF and string *unsubs-vbls* and entire arrays BY DESC.

VAX-11 BASIC

VAX

1. By default, VAX-11 BASIC FUNCTION subprograms receive numeric *unsubs-vbls* BY REF, and all other parameters BY DESC. You can override these defaults with a BY clause:
 - Any parameter can be received BY DESC.
 - To receive a string parameter BY REF, you must specify the string length.
 - To receive an entire array BY REF, you must specify the array bounds.

FUNCTION

Examples

VAX-11 BASIC only

```
100      FUNCTION GFLOAT SIGMA BY DESC    &
           (GFLOAT A(20,20),          &
            B, HFLOAT C BY REF)
!
!
!
250      END FUNCTION
```

BASIC-PLUS-2 only

```
100      FUNCTION DOUBLE CALC (SINGLE A, B, DOUBLE C(10,50))
!
!
!
250      END FUNCTION
```

FUNCTIONEND

22.0 FUNCTIONEND

Function

The FUNCTIONEND statement is a synonym for the END FUNCTION statement. See the END statement for syntax rules.

Format

```
{ FUNCTIONEND  
| END FUNCTION }
```

FUNCTIONEXIT

23.0 FUNCTIONEXIT

Function

The FUNCTIONEXIT statement is a synonym for the EXIT FUNCTION statement. See the EXIT statement for syntax rules.

Format

```
{ FUNCTIONEXIT  
  EXIT FUNCTION }
```

24.0 GET

Function

The GET statement moves a record from a file to a record buffer and makes the data available for processing. GET statements are valid on RMS sequential, relative, indexed, and block I/O files, and on RSTS/E non-RMS block I/O files. You should not use GET statements on terminal-format files, virtual array files, or files opened with ORGANIZATION UNDEFINED.

Format

VAX-11 BASIC



GET chnl-exp [, position-clause] [, lock-clause]

position-clause:	{ RFA rfa-exp RECORD num-exp KEY# key-clause
lock-clause:	{ ALLOW allow-clause REGARDLESS
allow-clause:	{ NONE READ MODIFY
key-clause:	int-exp1 rel-op { str-exp int-exp2 decimal-exp
rel-op:	{ EQ GE GT

(continued on next page)

GET

BP2

BASIC-PLUS-2

GET chnl-exp [, position-clause]

position-clause: { RFA rfa-exp
RECORD num-exp
KEY# key-clause }

key-clause: int-exp1 rel-op { str-exp
int-exp2 }

rel-op: { EQ
GE
GT }

Syntax Rules

1. *Chnl-exp* is a numeric expression that specifies a channel number associated with a file. It must be immediately preceded by a pound sign (#).
2. *Position-clause* specifies the position of a record in a file. BASIC signals an error if you specify a *position-clause* and *chnl-exp* is not associated with a disk file.
 - If you do not specify a *position-clause*, GET retrieves records sequentially. Sequential record access is valid on RMS sequential, relative, indexed, and block I/O files.
 - The RFA *position-clause* allows you to randomly retrieve records by specifying the Record File Address (RFA) of a record. That is, you specify the disk address of a record, and RMS retrieves the record at that address. All RMS file organizations may be accessed by RFA.
 - The RECORD *position-clause* allows you to randomly retrieve records in relative and block I/O files by specifying the record number.
 - The KEY *position-clause* allows you to randomly retrieve records in indexed files by specifying a key of reference, a relational test, and a key value.
3. *Rfa-exp* in the RFA *position-clause* is an expression of the RFA data type that specifies the record's Record File Address. Note that an RFA expression can be only a variable of the RFA data type or the GETRFA function. Use the GETRFA function to find the RFA of a record.
4. *Int-exp* in the RECORD *position-clause* specifies the number of the record you want to retrieve. It must be between one and the file's maximum record number.

5. In the key-clause:

- *Int-exp1* is the target key of reference. It must be a WORD or LONG integer between zero and the highest-numbered key for the file, inclusive. BASIC converts BYTE integers to WORD. The primary key is key number zero, the first alternate key is key number one, the second alternate key is key number two, and so on. *Int-exp1* must be preceded by a pound sign (#) or BASIC signals an error.
 - *Str-exp* and *int-exp2* specify a string or integer value to be compared with the key value of a record. *Str-exp* can contain fewer characters than the key of the record you want to retrieve.
 - *Rel-op* specifies how *str-exp* or *int-exp2* is to be compared to *int-exp1*. EQ means "equal to," GE means "greater than or equal to," and GT means "greater than."
6. When you specify a RECORD clause, *chnl-exp* must be a channel associated with an open relative or block I/O file.
7. When you specify a KEY clause, *chnl-exp* must be a channel associated with an open indexed file.

VAX-11 BASIC



1. *Str-exp* in the KEY clause cannot be a null string.
2. *Decimal-exp* in the KEY clause specifies a packed decimal value to be compared with the key value of a record.
3. *Lock-clause* allows you to control how a record is locked to other access streams or to override lock checking when accessing shared files that may contain locked records.
4. If you specify a *lock-clause*, it must follow the *position-clause*. If the *lock-clause* precedes the *position-clause*, BASIC signals an error.
5. If you specify an *allow-clause*, the file associated with *chnl-exp* must have been opened with the UNLOCK EXPLICIT clause or BASIC signals the error "illegal record locking clause".

General Rules

1. The file specified by *chnl-exp* must be open with ACCESS READ or MODIFY before your program can execute a GET. The default ACCESS clause is MODIFY.
2. If the last I/O operation was a successful FIND, a sequential GET retrieves the Current Record located by the FIND and sets the Next Record Pointer to the Current Record plus one.
3. If the last I/O operation was not a FIND, a sequential GET retrieves the Next Record and sets the Next Record Pointer to the Current Record plus one.
 - For sequential files, a sequential GET retrieves the next record in the file.
 - For relative and block I/O files, a sequential GET retrieves the record with the next higher cell number.
 - For indexed files, a sequential GET retrieves the record with the next higher value in the current key of reference.

GET

4. A successful random GET by RFA or by RECORD retrieves the record specified by *rfa-exp* or *int-exp*.
5. A successful random GET by KEY retrieves the first record whose key satisfies the key-clause comparison:
 - With an exact key match (EQ), a successful GET retrieves the first record in the file that equals the key value given in *int-exp* or specified by *str-exp*. The characters specified by *str-exp* are matched approximately rather than exactly. That is, if you specify "ABC" and the key length is six characters, BASIC matches the first record that begins with ABC. If you specify "ABC ", BASIC matches only a record with the key "ABC ". If no match is possible, BASIC signals the error "Record not found" (ERR=155).
 - With the greater than key match (GT), a successful GET retrieves the first record with a value greater than *int-exp* or *str-exp*. If no such record exists, BASIC signals the error "End of file on device" (ERR=11).
 - If you specify a greater than or equal to key match (GE), a successful GET retrieves the first record that equals the key value in *int-exp* or *str-exp*. If no exact match is possible, BASIC retrieves the first record with a key value higher than *int-exp* or *str-exp*.
6. A successful random GET by RFA, RECORD, or KEY sets the value of the Current Record Pointer to the record just read. The Next Record Pointer is set to the Current Record plus one.
7. An unsuccessful GET leaves the record pointers and the I/O buffer in an undefined state.
8. If the retrieved record is smaller than the receiving buffer, BASIC fills the remaining buffer space with nulls.
9. If the retrieved record is larger than the receiving buffer, BASIC truncates the record and signals an error.
10. A successful GET sets the value of the RECOUNT variable to the number of bytes transferred from the file to the record buffer.
11. Because a GET statement on a block I/O file always transfers an integral number of 512-byte disk blocks, your program must perform record blocking and deblocking. See Chapter 9 in the *BASIC User's Guide* for more information.



VAX-11 BASIC

1. The type of lock you impose on a record remains in effect until you explicitly unlock it with a FREE or UNLOCK statement or until you close the file.
 - ALLOW NONE specifies no access to the record. This means that other access streams cannot retrieve the record unless they bypass lock checking with GET REGARDLESS.
 - ALLOW READ specifies read access to the record. This means that other access streams can retrieve the record, but cannot PUT or UPDATE the record.
 - ALLOW MODIFY specifies both read and write access to the record. This means that other access streams can GET, PUT, DELETE, or UPDATE the record.

2. When you do not specify an ALLOW clause, locking is imposed as follows:
 - If the file associated with *chnl-exp* was opened with UNLOCK EXPLICIT, BASIC imposes the ALLOW NONE lock on the retrieved record and the next GET or FIND does not unlock the previously locked record.
 - If the file associated with *chnl-exp* was not opened with UNLOCK EXPLICIT, BASIC locks the retrieved record and unlocks the previously locked record.
3. REGARDLESS specifies that the GET statement can override lock checking and read a record locked by another program.
4. REGARDLESS does not impose a lock on the retrieved record.

BASIC-PLUS-2

BP2

1. When you access a shared file, a successful GET locks the record or bucket and unlocks the previously locked record or bucket.

Examples*Sequential Access*

```

100  MAP (XYZ) STRING LAST_NAME = 10, FIRST_NAME = 6
150  OPEN 'EMP.DAT' AS FILE #1, &
          ORGANIZATION SEQUENTIAL, MAP XYZ
200  GET #4

```

Random Access

```

100  MAP (XYZ) STRING LAST_NAME = 10, FIRST_NAME = 6
200  DECLARE RFA Address(99)
300  OPEN 'EMP.DAT' AS FILE #1, &
          ORGANIZATION SEQUENTIAL, MAP XYZ
400  GET #1
Address(0) = GETRFA(1)
!
!
!
500  GET #1, RFA Address(5)
!
!
!
600  OPEN 'NEWEMP.DAT' AS FILE #2, &
          ORGANIZATION RELATIVE, MAP XYZ
700  GET #2, RECORD A%
Address(A%) = GETRFA(2)
!
!
!
FIND #2, RFA Address(A%)
!
!
```

(continued on next page)

GET

```
900    OPEN 'OLDEMP.DAT' AS FILE #3,          &
        ORGANIZATION INDEXED, MAP XYZ,          &
        PRIMARY KEY LAST_NAME,
        GET #3, KEY #0 EQ "JONES"
        Address(5) = GETRFA(3)
        !
        !
        !
        GET #3, RFA Address(7)
```

VAX-11 BASIC

```
100    MAP (XYZ) STRING LAST_NAME = 10, FIRST_NAME = 6
300    OPEN 'EMP.DAT' AS FILE #1,          &
        ORGANIZATION INDEXED,          &
        MAP XYZ, PRIMARY KEY LAST_NAME,          &
        UNLOCK EXPLICIT
400    GET #1, KEY #0 EQ "JONES", ALLOW READ
```

25.0 GOSUB

Function

The GOSUB statement transfers control to a specified line number or label and stores the location of the GOSUB statement for eventual return from the subroutine.

Format

```
{ GO SUB  
  GOSUB }      target
```

Syntax Rules

1. Target must refer to an existing line number or label in the same program unit as the GOSUB statement or BASIC signals an error.
2. Target cannot be inside a FOR/NEXT, WHILE, or UNTIL loop or a multi-line function definition unless the GOSUB statement is also within that loop or function definition.

General Rules

None.

Examples

```
200  GOSUB 1100
!
!
!
1100 ! Subroutine 1
!
!
2100 RETURN
```

GOTO

26.0 GOTO

Function

The GOTO statement transfers control to a specified line number or label.

Format

```
{ GO TO  
GOTO }      target
```

Syntax Rules

1. Target must refer to an existing line number or label in the same program unit as the GOTO statement or BASIC signals an error.
2. Target cannot be inside a FOR/NEXT, WHILE, or UNTIL loop or a multi-line function definition unless the GOTO statement is also inside that loop or function definition.

General Rules

None.

Examples

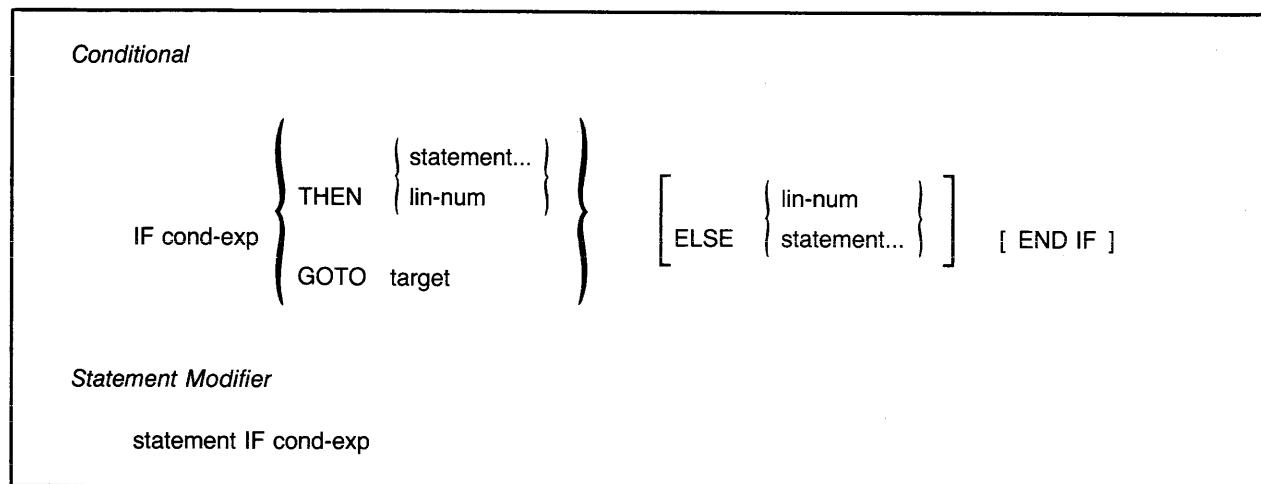
```
20      GOTO 200
```

27.0 IF

Function

The IF statement evaluates a conditional expression and transfers program control depending on the resulting value.

Format



Syntax Rules

Conditional

1. Cond-exp can be any valid conditional expression.
2. Any executable statement is valid in the THEN or ELSE clause, including another IF statement. You can include any number of statements in either clause.
3. All statements between the keyword THEN and the next ELSE, line number, or END IF are part of the THEN clause. All statements between the ELSE keyword and the next line number or END IF are part of the ELSE clause.
4. You can omit the THEN keyword when the target of a GOTO statement in the THEN is a *lin-num*. The THEN keyword is required when the target of a GOTO statement is a label.
5. BASIC assumes a GOTO statement when the ELSE keyword is followed by a *lin-num*. When the target of a GOTO statement is a label, the GOTO keyword is required.
6. If a THEN or ELSE clause contains a FOR, SELECT, UNTIL, or WHILE statement, then a corresponding NEXT or END statement must appear in the same THEN or ELSE clause.
7. IF statements can be nested to 12 levels.
8. The END IF statement terminates the most recent unterminated IF statement.
9. A new line number terminates all unterminated IF statements.

IF

Statement Modifier

1. IF can modify any executable statement except a block statement such as FOR, WHILE, UNTIL, or SELECT.
2. Cond-exp can be any valid conditional expression.

General Rules

Conditional

1. BASIC evaluates cond-exp for truth or falsity. If true (nonzero), BASIC executes the THEN clause. If false (zero), BASIC skips the THEN clause and executes the ELSE clause, if present.
2. The NEXT keyword cannot be in a THEN or ELSE clause unless the IF statement associated with the NEXT keyword is also part of the THEN or ELSE clause.
3. Execution continues at the statement following the END IF or ELSE clause. If the statement does not contain an ELSE clause, execution continues at the next statement after the THEN clause.

Statement Modifier

1. BASIC executes *statement* only if the *cond-exp* is true (nonzero).

Examples

Conditional

```
19000  IF ERR = 11
      THEN
          IF ERL = 1000
          THEN GOTO ERROR_ROUTINE
          ELSE
              IF ERL = 2000
              THEN 32700
              ELSE
                  IF ERL = 3000
                  THEN GOTO ERROR_ROUTINE
                  END IF
              END IF
          END IF
      ELSE PRINT ERT$(ERR)
  END IF
```

Statement Modifier

```
100      PRINT 'END OF PROCESSING' IF ERR = 11
```

28.0 INPUT

Function

The INPUT statement assigns values from your terminal or from a terminal-format file to program variables.

Format

```
INPUT [ chnl-exp, ] [ prompt ] vbl [ sep [ prompt ] vbl ]...
```

sep:	{ , }
------	-------

prompt:	str-const sep
---------	---------------

Syntax Rules

1. *Chnl-exp* is a numeric expression that specifies a channel number associated with a file. It must be immediately preceded by a pound sign (#).
2. *Vbl* cannot be a DEF function name unless the INPUT statement is inside the multi-line DEF that defines the function.

General Rules

1. The default *chnl-exp* is zero (the controlling terminal). If a *chnl-exp* is specified, a file must be open on that channel with ACCESS READ or MODIFY before the INPUT statement can execute.
2. You can include more than one *prompt* in an INPUT statement. The first *prompt* is issued for the first *vbl*, the second *prompt* for the second *vbl*, and so on. The *sep* that follows the *vbl* associated with the *prompt* has no formatting effect. BASIC always advances to a new line when you terminate input with a carriage return.
3. *Sep* in the *prompt* clause determines where the question mark is displayed and where the cursor is positioned for input.
 - A comma tells BASIC to skip to the next print zone and display the question mark. For example:

```
100 INPUT 'NAME',YOUR_NAME$
```

Run

```
NAME ?
```

- A semicolon tells BASIC to display the question mark next to *str-const*. For example:

```
100 INPUT 'ADDRESS';ADDR$
```

Run

```
ADDRESS?
```

INPUT

4. BASIC signals an error if the INPUT statement has no argument.
5. If input comes from a terminal, BASIC displays the contents of *str-const*, if present, and a question mark (?). If you have not specified a *str-const*, BASIC displays only the question mark. The program then waits for data.
6. If the open channel does not correspond to a terminal, BASIC displays only the question mark.
7. When BASIC receives a line terminator or a complete record, it checks each data element for correct data type and range limits, then assigns the values to the corresponding variables.
8. If you specify a string variable to receive the input text, and the user enters an unquoted string in response to the prompt, BASIC ignores the string's leading and trailing spaces and tabs. An unquoted string cannot contain any commas.
9. When you enter several data elements in response to the INPUT prompt, you must separate them with commas.
10. If there is not enough data in the current record or line to satisfy the variable list, BASIC takes one of the following actions:
 - If the input device is a terminal, BASIC repeats the question mark, but not the *str-const*, on a new line until sufficient data is entered.
 - If the input device is not a terminal, BASIC signals "Not enough data in record" (ERR=59).
11. If there are more data items than variables in the INPUT response, BASIC ignores the excess.
12. If there is an error in converting or assigning data (for example, assigning string data to a numeric variable), BASIC takes one of the following actions:
 - If the input device is a terminal, BASIC signals a warning, reexecutes the INPUT statement, and displays *str-const* and the question mark.
 - If the input device is not a terminal, BASIC signals "Illegal number" (ERR=52) or "Data format error" (ERR=50).
13. When a RESUME statement transfers control to an INPUT statement, the INPUT statement retrieves a new record regardless of any data left in the previous record.
14. After a successful INPUT statement, the RECOUNT variable contains the number of characters transferred from the file or terminal to the record buffer.

INPUT

15. If you terminate input text with CTRL/Z, BASIC assigns the value to the variable and signals "End of file on device" (ERR = 11) when the next terminal input statement executes. If there is no next INPUT, INPUT LINE, or LINPUT statement in the program, the CTRL/Z is passed to BASIC as a signal to exit the BASIC environment. BASIC signals "Unsaved changes have been made, CTRL/Z or EXIT to exit" if you have made changes to your program. If you have not made changes, BASIC exits from the BASIC environment and does not signal an error.

Examples

```
400    INPUT "TYPE IN 3 INTEGERS";A%, B%, C%
100    INPUT #3%, RECORD_STRING$
150    INPUT #1%, "PURCHASE NUMBER";PO_NUM%; "COST"; COST, "ID NUMBER";ID%
```

INPUT LINE

29.0 INPUT LINE

Function

The INPUT LINE statement assigns a string value, including the line terminator, from a terminal or terminal-format file to a string variable.

Format

```
INPUT LINE [ chnl-exp, ] [ prompt ] str-vbl [ sep [ prompt ] str-vbl ]...
```

sep: { , ; }

prompt: str-const sep

Syntax Rules

1. *Chnl-exp* is a numeric expression that specifies a channel number associated with a file. It must be immediately preceded by a pound sign (#).
2. *Vbl* cannot be a DEF function name unless the INPUT LINE statement is inside the multi-line DEF that defines the function.

General Rules

1. The default *chnl-exp* is zero (the controlling terminal). If a *chnl-exp* is specified, a file must be open on that channel with ACCESS READ before the INPUT LINE statement can execute.
2. You can include more than one *prompt* in an INPUT LINE statement. The first *prompt* is issued for the first *vbl*, the second *prompt* for the second *vbl*, and so on. The *sep* that follows the *vbl* associated with the *prompt* has no formatting effect. BASIC always advances to a new line when you terminate input with a carriage return.
3. *Sep* in the *prompt* clause determines where the question mark is displayed and where the cursor is positioned for input.
 - A comma tells BASIC to skip to the next print zone and display the question mark. For example:

```
100 INPUT LINE 'NAME',YOUR_NAME
```

Run

```
NAME ?
```

- A semicolon tells BASIC to display the question mark next to *str-const*. For example:

```
100 INPUT LINE 'ADDRESS';ADDR$
```

Run

```
ADDRESS?
```

4. BASIC signals an error if the INPUT LINE statement has no argument.
5. If input comes from a terminal, BASIC displays the contents of *str-const*, if present, and a question mark (?). If you have not specified a *str-const*, BASIC displays only the question mark. The program then waits for data.
6. If *chnl-exp* does not correspond to a terminal, BASIC displays only the question mark.
7. The INPUT LINE statement assigns all input characters including the line terminator(s) to *str-vbl*. Single and double quotation marks, commas, tabs, leading and trailing spaces, or other special characters in the string are part of the data.
8. When a RESUME statement transfers control to an INPUT LINE statement, the INPUT LINE statement retrieves a new record regardless of any data left in the previous record.
9. After a successful INPUT LINE statement, the RECOUNT variable contains the number of characters transferred from the file or terminal to the record buffer.
10. If you terminate input text with CTRL/Z, BASIC assigns the value to the variable and signals "End of file on device" (ERR = 11) when the next terminal input statement executes. If there is no next INPUT, INPUT LINE, or LINPUT statement in the program, the CTRL/Z is passed to BASIC as a signal to exit the BASIC environment. BASIC signals "Unsaved changes have been made, CTRL/Z or EXIT to exit" if you have made changes to your program. If you have not made changes, BASIC exits from the BASIC environment and does not signal an error.

Examples

```
650 INPUT LINE "Type two words", Z$,"Type your name";N$  
390 INPUT LINE #4%, RECORD_STRING$
```

ITERATE

30.0 ITERATE

Function

The ITERATE statement allows you to explicitly reexecute a loop.

Format

```
ITERATE [ label ]
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Label* is the label of the first statement of a FOR–NEXT, WHILE, or UNTIL loop
2. The ITERATE statement can be used only within a FOR–NEXT, WHILE, or UNTIL loop.

General Rules

1. ITERATE is equivalent to an unconditional branch to the current loop's NEXT statement. If you supply a *label*, ITERATE transfers control to the NEXT statement in the specified loop. If you do not supply a *label*, ITERATE transfers control to the current loop's NEXT statement.
2. *Label* must conform to the rules for naming variables.

Examples

```
1000 Date_loop: WHILE 1% = 1%
    GET #1
    ITERATE Date_loop IF Day$ <> Today$
    ITERATE Date_loop IF Month$ <> This_month$
    ITERATE Date_loop IF Year$ <> This_year$
    PRINT Item$
NEXT
```

31.0 KILL

Function

The KILL statement deletes a disk file, removes the file's directory entry, and releases the file's storage space.

Format

```
KILL file-spec
```

Syntax Rules

1. *File-spec* can be a quoted string constant, a string variable, or a string expression. It cannot be an unquoted string constant.

General Rules

1. The KILL statement marks a file for deletion but does not delete the file until all users have closed it.
2. If you do not specify a complete *file-spec*, BASIC uses the default device and directory. If you do not specify a file version, VAX-11 BASIC and BASIC-PLUS-2 on RSX-11M/M-PLUS systems delete the highest version of the file.
3. The *file-spec* must exist or BASIC signals an error.
4. You can delete a file in another directory if you have access to that directory and privilege to delete the file.

Examples

```
200      KILL "TEMP.DAT"
```

LET

32.0 LET

Function

The LET statement assigns a value to one or more variables.

Format

```
[LET] vbl,... = exp
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Vbl* cannot be a DEF or FUNCTION name unless the LET statement occurs inside that DEF block or in that FUNCTION subprogram.
2. You cannot assign string data to a numeric variable or numeric data to a string variable.
3. The keyword LET is optional.

General Rules

1. When you assign a value to a subscripted variable, BASIC evaluates the subscripts from left to right before evaluating *exp* and assigning the value. In the following example, line 10 assigns the value 5 to I, then line 20 assigns the value 2 to A(5) and to I:

```
10      LET I = 5
20      LET A(I),I = 2
```

2. The value assigned to a numeric variable is converted to the variable's data type. For example, if you assign a floating-point value to an integer variable, BASIC truncates the value to an integer.
3. For dynamic strings, the destination string's length equals the source string's length.
4. When you assign a value to a fixed-length string variable, the value is left-justified and padded with spaces or truncated to match the length of the string variable.

Examples

```
10      LET A = 3,141
20      A$ = "ABCDEFG"
```

33.0 LINPUT

Function

The LINPUT statement assigns a string value, without line terminators, from a terminal or terminal-format file to a string variable.

Format

```
LINPUT [ chnl-exp, ] [ prompt ] str-vbl [ sep [ prompt ] str-vbl ]...

sep:      { , }
          ; }

prompt:   str-const sep
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Chnl-exp* is a numeric expression that specifies a channel number associated with a file. It must be immediately preceded by a pound sign (#).
2. *Vbl* cannot be a DEF function name unless the LINPUT statement is inside the multi-line DEF that defines the function.

General Rules

1. The default *chnl-exp* is zero (the controlling terminal). If you specify a *chnl-exp*, the file associated with that channel must have been opened with ACCESS READ or MODIFY.
2. You can include more than one *prompt* in an INPUT LINE statement. The first *prompt* is issued for the first *vbl*, the second *prompt* for the second *vbl*, and so on. The *sep* that follows the *vbl* associated with the *prompt* has no formatting effect. BASIC always advances to a new line when you terminate input with a carriage return.
3. *Sep* in the *prompt* clause determines where the question mark is displayed and where the cursor is positioned for input.
 - A comma tells BASIC to skip to the next print zone and display the question mark. For example:

```
100      LINPUT "NAME",YOUR_NAME
Run
NAME    ?
```

(continued on next page)

LINPUT

- A semicolon tells BASIC to display the question mark next to *str-const*. For example:

```
100 LINPUT "ADDRESS";ADDR$
```

Run

ADDRESS?

4. BASIC signals an error if the LINPUT statement has no argument.
5. If input comes from a terminal, BASIC displays the contents of *str-const*, if present, and a question mark (?). If you have not specified a *str-const*, BASIC displays only the question mark. The program then waits for data.
6. If *chnl-exp* does not correspond to a terminal, BASIC displays only the question mark.
7. The LINPUT assigns all characters except the line terminator(s) to *str-vbl*. Single and double quotation marks, commas, tabs, leading and trailing spaces, or other special characters in the string are part of the data.
8. If the RESUME statement transfers control to a LINPUT statement, the LINPUT statement retrieves a new record regardless of any data left in the previous record.
9. After a successful LINPUT statement, the RECOUNT variable contains the number of bytes transferred from the file or terminal to the record buffer.
10. If you terminate input text with CTRL/Z, BASIC assigns the value to the variable and signals “End of file on device” (ERR=11) when the next terminal input statement executes. If there is no next INPUT, INPUT LINE, or LINPUT statement in the program, the CTRL/Z is passed to BASIC as a signal to exit the BASIC environment.

Examples

```
100 LINPUT "ENTER YOUR LAST NAME";Last_name$
```

```
200 LINPUT #2%, Last_name$
```

34.0 LSET

Function

The LSET statement assigns left-justified data to a string variable. LSET does not change the length of the destination string variable.

Format

```
LSET str-vbl,... = str-exp
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Str-vbl* is the destination string. *Str-exp* is the string value assigned to *str-vbl*.
2. BASIC evaluates *str-vbl*'s subscripts (if present) before evaluating *str-exp*.
3. *Str-vbl* cannot be a DEF function name unless the LSET statement is inside the multi-line DEF that defines the function.

General Rules

1. The LSET statement treats all strings as fixed-length. LSET neither changes the length of the destination string nor creates new storage. Rather, it overwrites the *str-vbl*'s current storage.
2. If the destination string is longer than *str-exp*, LSET left-justifies *str-exp* and pads it with spaces on the right. If smaller, LSET truncates characters from the right of *str-exp* to match the length of *str-vbl*.

Examples

```
10      LSET ALPHA$='XYZ'  
20      LSET A$, B$ = CODE$ + NA_ME$
```

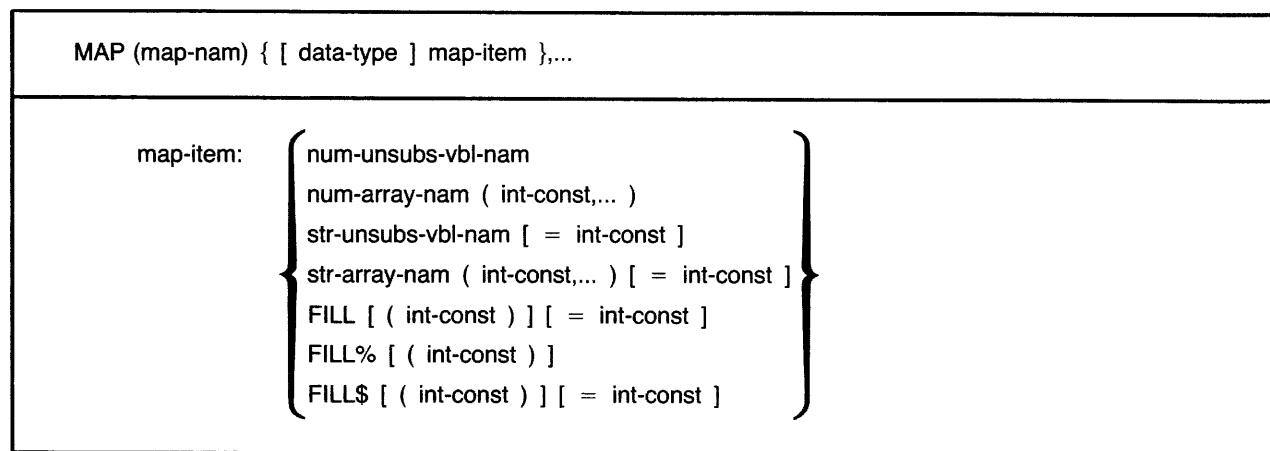
MAP

35.0 MAP

Function

The MAP statement defines a named area of statically allocated storage called a PSECT, declares data fields in the record, and associates them with program variables.

Format



Syntax Rules

1. *Map-nam* is global to the program and task. It cannot appear elsewhere in the program unit as a variable name.

2. In VAX-11 BASIC, *map-nam* can consist of from 1 to 31 characters. The first character of the name must be an alphabetic character (A through Z). The remaining characters, if present, can be any combination of letters, digits (0 through 9), dollar signs (\$), periods (.), or underscores (_).

3. In BASIC-PLUS-2, *map-nam* can consist of from one to six characters. The first character must be an alphabetic character (A through Z). The remaining characters, if present, can be any combination of letters, digits (0 through 9), dollar signs (\$), or periods (.).
4. *Map-item* declares the name and format of the data to be stored.
 - *Num-unsubs-vbl-nam* and *num-arr-nam* specify a numeric variable or a numeric array.
 - *Str-unsubs-vbl-nam* and *str-arr-nam* specify a fixed-length string variable or array. You can specify the number of bytes to be reserved for the variable with the *=int-const* clause. The default string length is 16.
 - The FILL, FILL%, and FILL\$ keywords allow you to reserve parts of the record buffer within or between data elements and to define the format of the storage. *Int-const* specifies the number of FILL items to be reserved. The *=int-const* clause allows you to specify the number of bytes to be reserved for string FILL items. Table 21 describes FILL item format and storage allocation.

Note

In the applicable formats of FILL, (*int-const*) represents a repeat count, not an array subscript. FILL (n), for example, represents n elements, not n + 1.

5. Data-type can be any BASIC data-type keyword or, in VAX-11 BASIC, a data type defined by a RECORD statement. Data-type keywords, size, range, and precision are listed in Table 2.
6. When you specify a *data-type*, all following *map-items*, including FILL items, are of that data type until you specify a new data type.
7. If you do not specify any *data-type*, *map-items* without a data-typing suffix character (%) or (\$) take the current default data type and size.
8. Variable names, array names, and FILL items following a *data-type* cannot end in a dollar sign or percent sign.
9. Variables and arrays declared in a MAP statement cannot be declared elsewhere in the program by any other declarative statements.

General Rules

1. BASIC does not execute MAP statements. The MAP statement allocates static storage and defines data at compile time.
2. A program can have multiple MAPs with the same name. The allocation for each MAP overlays the others. Thus, data is accessible in many ways. The actual size of the data area is the size of the largest MAP. When you link or task-build your program, the size of the MAP area is the size of the largest MAP with that name.
3. *Map-items* with the same name can appear in different MAP statements with the same *map-nam* only if they match exactly in attributes such as data type, position, and so forth. If the attributes are not the same, BASIC signals an error. For example:

```

100      MAP (ABC) LONG A, B
200      MAP (ABC) LONG A, C ! This MAP statement is valid
300      MAP (ABC) LONG B, A ! This MAP statement produces an error
400      MAP (ABC) WORD A, B ! This MAP statement produces an error

```

Line 300 causes BASIC to signal the error “variable <name> not aligned in multiple references in MAP <name>”, while line 400 generates the error “attributes of overlaid variable <name> don’t match”.

4. The MAP statement should precede any reference to variables declared in it.
5. Storage space for *map-items* is allocated in order of occurrence in the MAP statement.
6. A MAP area can be accessed by more than one program module, as long as you define the *map-nam* in each module that references the MAP.
7. A COMMON area and a MAP area with the same name specify the same storage area and are not allowed in the same program module.

MAP

8. A MAP named in an OPEN statement's MAP clause is associated with that file. The file's records and record fields are defined by that MAP. The size of the MAP determines the record size for file I/O, unless the OPEN statement includes a RECORDSIZE clause.
9. VAX-11 BASIC does not initialize variables in the MAP statement.
10. *BASIC-PLUS-2* initializes MAP variables to zero or a null string.

Examples

```
200      MAP (BUF1) BYTE AGE, STRING EMP_NAME = 20, SINGLE EMP_NUM  
400      MAP (BUF1) BYTE FILL, STRING LAST_NAME = 12, FILL = 8, SINGLE FILL
```

36.0 MAP DYNAMIC

Function

The MAP DYNAMIC statement names the variables and arrays whose size and position in a MAP buffer can change at run time. BASIC sets all variable and array element pointers to the beginning of the MAP buffer when the MAP DYNAMIC statement is processed.

Format

MAP DYNAMIC (map-nam) { [data-type] map-item },...
map-item: $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{num-unsubs-vbl-nam} \\ \text{num-array-nam (int-const,...)} \\ \text{str-unsubs-vbl-nam} \\ \text{str-array-nam (int-const,...)} \end{array} \right\}$

Syntax Rules

1. *Map-nam* is the storage area named in a MAP statement.
2. *Map-item* declares the name and data type of the items to be stored in the map buffer. All variable pointers point to the beginning of the map buffer until the program executes a REMAP statement.
 - *Num-unsubs-vbl-nam* and *num-arr-nam* specify a numeric variable or a numeric array.
 - *Str-unsubs-vbl-nam* and *str-arr-nam* specify a string variable or array. You cannot specify the number of bytes to be reserved for the variable in the MAP DYNAMIC statement. All string items have a fixed-length of zero until the program executes a REMAP statement.
3. *Data-type* can be any BASIC data-type keyword or, in VAX-11 BASIC, a data type defined in the RECORD statement. Data-type keywords, size, range, and precision are listed in Table 2 in this manual.
4. When you specify a *data-type*, all following *map-items* are of that data type until you specify a new data type.
5. If you do not specify any *data-type*, *map-items* take the current default data type and size.
6. Variable names and array names following a *data-type* cannot end in a dollar sign or percent sign suffix character.
7. Variables and arrays declared in a MAP DYNAMIC statement cannot be declared elsewhere in the program by any other declarative statements.
8. *Map-items* must be separated with commas.

MAP DYNAMIC

General Rules

1. The MAP DYNAMIC statement does not affect the amount of storage allocated to the map buffer declared in a previous MAP statement. Until your program executes a REMAP statement, all variable and array element pointers point to the beginning of the MAP buffer.
2. BASIC does not execute MAP DYNAMIC statements. The MAP DYNAMIC statement names the variables whose size and position in the MAP buffer can change and defines their data type.
3. If there is no MAP statement in the program unit with the same *map-nam* specified in the MAP DYNAMIC statement, BASIC signals the error "Insufficient space for MAP DYNAMIC variables in MAP <name>".
4. The MAP DYNAMIC statement must lexically precede the REMAP statement or BASIC signals the error "MAP variable <name> referenced before declaration".

Examples

```
100      MAP (MY.BUF) STRING DUMMY = 512
          MAP DYNAMIC (MY.BUF) STRING LAST, FIRST, MIDDLE,
                                BYTE AGE, STRING EMPLOYER,
                                STRING CHARACTERISTICS &
                                &
```

37.0 MARGIN (VAX-11 BASIC)

Function

The MARGIN statement specifies the margin width for a terminal or for records in a terminal-format file.

Format

```
MARGIN [ chnl-exp, ] int-exp
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Chnl-exp* is a numeric expression that specifies a channel number associated with a file. It must be immediately preceded by a pound sign (#).
2. *Int-exp* specifies the margin width.

General Rules

1. If you do not specify a *chnl-exp*, BASIC sets the margin on the controlling terminal.
2. The file associated with *chnl-exp* must be an open terminal-format file.
3. BASIC signals the error "Illegal operation" (ERR = 141) if the file associated with *chnl-exp* is not a terminal-format file.
4. If *chnl-exp* does not correspond to a terminal, and if *int-exp* is zero, BASIC sets the right margin to the size specified by the RECORDSIZE clause in the OPEN statement, if present. If no RECORDSIZE clause is present, BASIC sets the margin to the RMS blocksize.
5. If *chnl-exp* is not present or if it corresponds to a terminal, and if *int-exp* is zero, BASIC sets the right margin to the size specified by the RECORDSIZE clause in the OPEN statement, if present. If no RECORDSIZE clause is present, BASIC sets the margin to the default terminal width.
6. BASIC prints as much of a specified record as the margin setting allows on one line before going to a new line. Numeric fields are never split across lines.
7. If you specify a margin larger than the channel's recordsize, BASIC signals an error.
8. The MARGIN statement is in effect only while *chnl-exp* is open. When you close *chnl-exp*, BASIC returns to the default margin when you reopen the channel.

Examples

```
30      MARGIN #4, 132%
```

MAT

38.0 MAT

Function

The MAT statement lets you implicitly create and manipulate one- and two-dimensional arrays. You can use the MAT statement to assign values to array elements or to redimension a previously dimensioned array. You can also perform matrix arithmetic operations such as multiplication, addition, and subtraction, and other matrix operations such as transposing and inverting matrices.

Format

Initialization (Numeric)

```
MAT num-array = { CON  
                  IDN  
                  ZER } [ ( int-exp1 [, int-exp2 ] ) ]
```

Initialization (String)

```
MAT str-array = NUL$ [ ( int-exp1 [, int-exp2 ] ) ]
```

Array Arithmetic

```
MAT num-array1 = num-array2 [ { +  
                               -  
                               * } num-array3 ]
```

Scalar Multiplication

```
MAT num-array4 = ( num-exp ) * num-array5
```

Inversion and Transposition

```
MAT num-array6 = { TRN  
                  INV } ( num-array7 )
```

Syntax Rules

1. You cannot use the MAT statement on arrays of more than two dimensions.
2. In VAX-11 BASIC, you cannot use the MAT statement on arrays of data-type DECIMAL or on arrays named in a RECORD statement.
3. When initializing arrays, you can specify the array bounds. *Int-exp1* and *int-exp2* define the upper bounds of the array being implicitly created or the new dimensions of an existing array.

4. If you are creating an array, *int-exp1* and *int-exp2* cannot exceed 10.
 - If you do not specify bounds, BASIC creates the array and dimensions it to (10) or (10,10).
 - If you do specify bounds, BASIC creates the array with the specified bounds. If the bounds exceed (10) or (10,10), BASIC signals "Redimensioned array" (ERR=105).
5. To perform MAT operations on arrays larger than (10,10), create the input and output arrays with the DIM statement.
6. When the array exists, the following rules apply:
 - If you specify bounds, BASIC redimensions the array to the specified size. However, MAT operations cannot increase the total number of array elements.
 - If you do not specify bounds, BASIC does not redimension the array.
7. An array passed to a subprogram and redimensioned there by a MAT statement remains redimensioned when control returns to the calling program, with two exceptions:
 - When the array is within a RECORD and is passed BY DESC.
 - When the array is passed BY REF.

Initialization

1. CON sets all elements of *num-array* to one, except those in row and column zero.
2. IDN creates an identity matrix from *num-array*. The number of rows and columns in *num-array* must be identical. IDN sets all elements to zero except those on the diagonal from *num-array*(1,1) to *num-array*(n,n), which are set to one.
3. ZER sets all array elements to zero, except those in row and column zero.
4. NUL\$ sets all elements of a string array to the null string, except those in row and column zero.

Array Arithmetic

1. The equals sign (=) assigns the results of the specified operation to the elements in *num-array1*.
2. If *num-array3* is not specified, BASIC assigns the values of *num-array2*'s elements to the corresponding elements of *num-array1*. *Num-array1* must have at least as many rows and columns as *num-array2*.
3. Use the plus sign (+) to add the elements of two arrays. *Num-array2* and *num-array3* must have identical bounds.
4. Use the minus sign (-) to subtract the elements of two arrays. *Num-array2* and *num-array3* must have identical bounds.
5. Use the asterisk (*) to perform matrix multiplication on the elements of *num-array2* and *num-array3* and to assign the results to *num-array1*. This operation gives the dot product of *num-array2* and *num-array3*. All three arrays must be two-dimensional, and the number of columns in *num-array2* must equal the number of rows in *num-array3*. BASIC redimensions *num-array1* to have the same number of rows as *num-array2* and the same number of columns as *num-array3*.

MAT

Scalar Multiplication

1. BASIC multiplies each element of *num-array5* by *num-exp* and stores the results in the corresponding elements of *num-array4*.

Inversion and Transposition

1. TRN transposes *num-array7* and assigns the results to *num-array6*. If *num-array7* has m rows and n columns, *num-array6* will have n rows and m columns. Both arrays must be two-dimensional.
2. You cannot transpose a matrix to itself: MAT A = TRN(A) is invalid.
3. INV inverts *num-array7* and assigns the results to *num-array6*. *Num-array7* must be a two-dimensional array that can be reduced to the identity matrix using elementary row operations. The row and column dimensions must be identical.

General Rules

1. You cannot increase the number of array elements or change the number of dimensions in an array when you redimension with the MAT statement. That is, you can redimension an array with dimensions (5,4) to (4,5) or (3,2), but you cannot redimension that array to (5,5) or to (10). The total number of array elements includes those in row and column zero.
2. If an array is named in both a DIM statement and a MAT statement, the DIM statement must lexically precede the MAT statement.
3. MAT statements do not operate on elements in: 1) the zero element (one-dimensional arrays) or 2) the zero row or column (two-dimensional arrays). MAT statements use these elements to store results of intermediate calculations. Therefore, you should not depend on values in row and column zero if your program uses MAT statements.

Examples

Initialization (Numeric)

```
100      MAT CONVERT = ZER(10,10)
```

Initialization (String)

```
1000     MAT NA_ME$ = NUL$(5,5)
```

Array Arithmetic

```
2000     MAT NEW_INT = OLD_INT - RSLT_INT
```

Scalar Multiplication

```
3000     MAT Z40 = (4,24) * Z
```

Inversion and Transposition

```
4000     MAT Q% = INV (Z%)
```

39.0 MAT INPUT

Function

The MAT INPUT statement assigns values from a terminal or terminal-format file to array elements.

Format

```
MAT INPUT [ chnl-exp, ] { array [ ( int-exp1 [, int-exp2 ] ) ] },...
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Chnl-exp* is a numeric expression that specifies a channel number associated with a file. It must be immediately preceded by a pound sign (#).
2. The file associated with *chnl-exp* must be an open terminal-format file. If *chnl-exp* is not specified, BASIC takes data from the controlling terminal.
3. You cannot use the MAT INPUT statement on arrays of more than two dimensions.
4. In VAX-11 BASIC, you cannot use the MAT INPUT statement on arrays of data-type DECIMAL or on arrays named in a RECORD statement.
5. *Int-exp1* and *int-exp2* define the upper bounds of the array being implicitly created or the dimensions of an existing array.
6. If you are creating an array, *int-exp1* and *int-exp2* cannot exceed 10.
 - If you do not specify bounds, BASIC creates the array, dimensions it to (10,10), and prompts only for the first array element.
 - If you do specify bounds, BASIC creates the array with the specified bounds. If the bounds exceed (10) or (10,10), BASIC signals “Redimensioned array” (ERR=105).
7. To MAT INPUT to arrays larger than (10,10), create the input and output arrays with the DIM statement. When the array exists, the following rules apply:
 - If you specify bounds, BASIC redimensions the array to the specified size. However, MAT INPUT cannot increase the total number of array elements.
 - If you do not specify bounds, BASIC does not redimension the array.

General Rules

1. The MAT INPUT statement prompts with a question mark on terminals open on channel zero only.
2. Use commas to separate data elements and a line terminator to end the input of data. Use an ampersand before the line terminator to input data on more than one line.
3. The MAT INPUT statement assigns values by row. That is, it assigns values to all elements in row one before beginning row two.

MAT INPUT

4. The MAT INPUT statement assigns the row number of the last data element transferred into the array to the system variable, NUM.
5. The MAT INPUT statement assigns the column number of the last data element transferred into the array to the system variable, NUM2.
6. If there are fewer elements in the input data than there are array elements, BASIC does not change the remaining array elements.
7. If there are more data elements in the input stream than there are array elements, BASIC ignores the excess.
8. Row zero and column zero are not changed.

Examples

```
1000 MAT INPUT EMP_NAME$(10,10)
```

40.0 MAT LINPUT

Function

The MAT LINPUT statement receives string data from a terminal or terminal-format file and assigns it to string array elements.

Format

```
MAT LINPUT [ chnl-exp, ] { str-array [ ( int-exp1 [, int-exp2 ] ) ] },...
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Chnl-exp* is a numeric expression that specifies a channel number associated with a file. It must be immediately preceded by a pound sign (#).
2. You cannot use the MAT LINPUT statement on arrays of more than two dimensions.
3. In VAX-11 BASIC, you cannot use the MAT LINPUT statement on arrays of data-type DECIMAL or on arrays named in a RECORD statement.
4. The file associated with *chnl-exp* must be an open terminal-format file. If *chnl-exp* is not specified, BASIC takes data from the controlling terminal.
5. *Int-exp1* and *int-exp2* define the upper bounds of the array being implicitly created or the dimensions of an existing array.
6. If you are creating an array, *int-exp1* and *int-exp2* cannot exceed 10.
 - If you do not specify bounds, BASIC creates the array, dimensions it to (10,10), and prompts only for the first array element.
 - If you do specify bounds, BASIC creates the array with the specified bounds. If the bounds exceed (10) or (10,10), BASIC signals "Redimensioned array" (ERR=105).
7. To MAT LINPUT to arrays larger than (10,10), create the input and output arrays with the DIM statement.
8. When the array exists, the following rules apply:
 - If you specify bounds, BASIC redimensions the array to the specified size. However, MAT LINPUT cannot increase the total number of array elements.
 - If you do not specify bounds, BASIC does not redimension the array.

General Rules

1. For terminals open on channel zero only, the MAT LINPUT statement prompts with a question mark for each string array element, starting with element (1,1). BASIC assigns values to all elements of row one before beginning row two.
2. The MAT LINPUT statement assigns the row number of the last data element transferred into the array to the system variable, NUM.

MAT LINPUT

3. The MAT LINPUT statement assigns the column number of the last data element transferred into the array to the system variable, NUM2.
4. Typing only a line terminator in response to the question mark prompt causes BASIC to assign a null string to that string array element.
5. MAT LINPUT does not change row and column zero.

Examples

```
400  MAT LINPUT TIME_CARD$(10%)
```

41.0 MAT PRINT

Function

The MAT PRINT statement prints the contents of a one- or two-dimensional array on your terminal or assigns the value of each array element to a record in a terminal-format file.

Format

```
MAT PRINT [ chnl-exp, ] { array [ ( int-exp1 [, int-exp2 ] ) ] [ sep ] }...
```

sep:	<code>{ , }</code>
------	--------------------

Syntax Rules

1. *Chnl-exp* is a numeric expression that specifies a channel number associated with a file. It must be immediately preceded by a pound sign (#).
2. You cannot use the MAT PRINT statement on arrays of more than two dimensions.
3. In VAX-11 BASIC, you cannot use the MAT PRINT statement on arrays of data-type DECIMAL or on arrays named in a RECORD statement.
4. The file associated with *chnl-exp* must be an open terminal-format file. If you do not specify a *chnl-exp*, BASIC takes data from the controlling terminal.
5. *Int-exp1* and *int-exp2* define the upper bounds of the array being implicitly created or the dimensions of an existing array.
6. If the array does not exist, the following rules apply:
 - If you do not specify bounds, BASIC creates the array and dimensions it to (10,10).
 - If you do specify bounds, BASIC creates the array with the specified bounds. If the bounds exceed (10) or (10,10), BASIC prints (10) or (10,10) elements and signals "Subscript out of range" (ERR = 55).
7. When the array exists, the following rules apply:
 - If the specified bounds are smaller than the maximum bounds of a dimensioned array, BASIC prints a subset of the array, but does not redimension the array. For example, if you use the DIM statement to dimension A(20,20), and then MAT PRINT A(2,2), BASIC prints elements (1,1), (1,2), (2,1), and (2,2) only; array A(20,20) does not change.
 - If you do not specify bounds, BASIC prints the entire array.

MAT PRINT

8. Sep determines the output format for the array:
 - If you use a comma, BASIC prints each array element in a new print zone and starts each row on a new line.
 - If you use a semicolon, BASIC separates each array element with a space and starts each row on a new line.
 - If you do not use a sep character, BASIC prints each array element on its own line.
9. When you use the MAT PRINT statement to print more than one array, each array name except the last must be followed with either a comma or a semicolon. BASIC prints a blank line between arrays.

General Rules

1. The MAT PRINT statement does not print elements in row or column zero.
2. The MAT PRINT statement cannot redimension an array.

Examples

```
500 MAT PRINT #1, TIME_CARD$(25);
```

42.0 MAT READ

Function

The MAT READ statement assigns values from DATA statements to array elements.

Format

```
MAT READ { array [ ( int-exp1 [, int-exp2 ] ) ] },...
```

Syntax Rules

1. You cannot use the MAT READ statement on arrays of more than two dimensions.
2. In VAX-11 BASIC, you cannot use the MAT READ statement on arrays of data-type DECIMAL or on arrays named in a RECORD statement.
3. *Int-exp1* and *int-exp2* define the upper bounds of the array being implicitly created or the dimensions of an existing array.
4. If you are creating an array, *int-exp1* and *int-exp2* cannot exceed 10.
 - If you do not specify bounds, BASIC creates the array and dimensions it to (10,10).
 - If you do specify bounds, BASIC creates the array with the specified bounds. If the bounds exceed (10) or (10,10), BASIC signals “Redimensioned array” (ERR=105).
5. To MAT READ arrays larger than (10,10), create the array with the DIM statement.
6. When the array exists, the following rules apply:
 - If you specify bounds, BASIC redimensions the array to the specified size. However, MAT READ cannot increase the total number of array elements.
 - If you do not specify bounds, BASIC does not redimension the array.

General Rules

1. The DATA statement(s) must be in the same program unit as the MAT READ statement.
2. The MAT READ statement assigns data items by row. That is, it assigns data items to all elements in row one before beginning row two.
3. The MAT READ statement does not read elements into row or column zero.
4. The MAT READ statement assigns the row number of the last data element transferred into the array to the system variable, NUM.

MAT READ

5. The MAT READ statement assigns the column number of the last data element transferred into the array to the system variable, NUM2.
6. If you MAT READ an existing array without specifying bounds, BASIC does not redimension the array. If you MAT READ an existing array and specify bounds, BASIC redimensions the array.

Examples

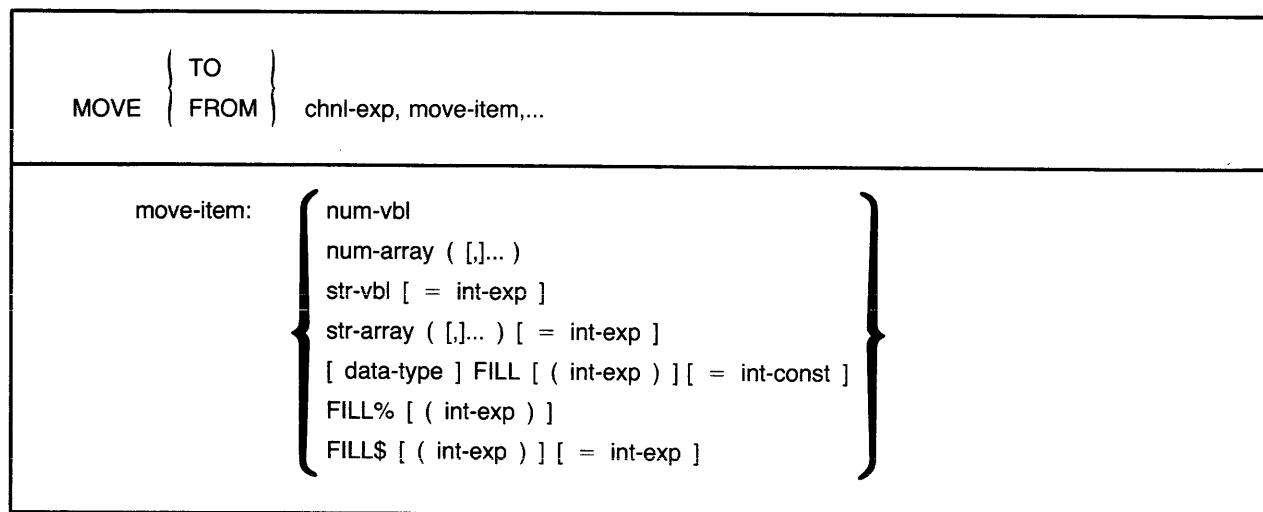
```
100 MAT READ Z%
```

43.0 MOVE

Function

The MOVE statement transfers data between a record buffer and a list of variables.

Format



Syntax Rules

1. *Chnl-exp* is a numeric expression that specifies a channel number associated with a file. It must be immediately preceded by a pound sign (#).
2. *Move-item* specifies the variable or array to which or from which data is to be moved.
3. *Num-vbl* and *num-array* specify a numeric variable or a numeric array. Parentheses indicate the number of dimensions in a numeric array. The number of dimensions is equal to the number of commas plus one. That is, empty parentheses indicate a one-dimensional array, one comma indicates a two-dimensional array, and so on.
4. *Str-vbl* and *str-array* specify a fixed length string variable or array. Parentheses indicate the number of dimensions in a string array. The number of dimensions is equal to the number of commas plus one. You can specify the number of bytes to be reserved for the variable or array elements with the *=int-exp* clause. The default string length for a MOVE FROM statement is 16. For a MOVE TO statement, the default is the string's length.
5. The FILL, FILL%, and FILL\$ keywords allow you to transfer fill items of a specific data type. Table 21 shows FILL item formats, representations, and storage requirements.
 - If you specify a *data-type* before the FILL keyword, the fill is of that data type. If you do not specify a *data-type*, the fill is of the default data type. *Data-type* can be any BASIC data-type keyword or, in VAX-11 BASIC, a data type defined by a RECORD statement. Data-type keywords, size, range, and precision are listed in Table 2 in this manual. FILL items following a *data-type* cannot end in a dollar sign or percent sign.
 - *Int-exp* specifies the number of FILL items to be moved.
 - FILL% indicates integer fill. FILL\$ indicates string fill. The *=int-exp* clause specifies the number of bytes to be moved for string FILL items.

MOVE

Note

In the applicable formats of FILL, (*int-exp*) represents a repeat count, not an array subscript. FILL (n), for example, represents n elements, not n + 1.

6. You cannot use an expression or function reference as a *move-item*.

General Rules

1. Before a MOVE FROM statement can execute, the file associated with *chnl-exp* must be open and there must be a record in the record buffer.
2. A MOVE statement neither transfers data to or from external devices, nor invokes the system Record Management Services. Instead, it transfers data between user areas. Thus, a record should first be fetched with the GET statement before using a MOVE FROM, and a MOVE TO should be followed by a PUT or UPDATE statement that writes the record to a file.
3. MOVE FROM transfers data from the record buffer to the *move-item*.
4. MOVE TO transfers data from the *move-item* to the record buffer.
5. The MOVE statement does not affect the record buffer's size. If a MOVE statement partially fills a buffer, the rest of the buffer is unchanged. If there is more data in the variable list than in the buffer, BASIC signals "MOVE overflows buffer" (ERR=161).
6. Each MOVE statement to or from a channel transfers data starting at the beginning of the buffer. For example:

```
200      MOVE FROM #1%, I%, A$ = I%
```

In this example, BASIC assigns the first value in the record buffer to I%; the value of I% is then used to determine the length of A\$.

7. If a MOVE statement operates on an entire array:
 - BASIC transfers elements of row and column zero (contrast this with the MAT statements).
 - The storage size of the array elements and the size of the array determine the amount of data moved. A MOVE statement that transfers data from the buffer to a longword integer array transfers the first four bytes of data into element (0,0), the next four bytes of data into element (0,1), and so on.
8. If the MOVE TO statement specifies an explicit string length, the following restrictions apply:
 - If the string is equal to or longer than the explicit string length, BASIC moves only the specified number of characters into the buffer.
 - If the string is shorter than the explicit string length, BASIC moves the entire string and pads it with spaces to the specified length.
9. BASIC does not check the validity of data during the MOVE operation.

MOVE

Examples

```
990 MOVE FROM *4%, RUNS%, HITS%, ERRORS%, RBI%, BAT_AVERAGE  
100 MOVE TO *9%, FILL$ = 10%, A$ = 10%, B$ = 30%, C$ = 2%
```

NAME AS

44.0 NAME AS

Function

The NAME AS statement changes the name of a specified file.

Format

```
NAME file-spec1 AS file-spec2
```

Syntax Rules

1. *File-spec1* and *file-spec2* must be string expressions.
2. There is no default for file type in *file-spec1* or *file-spec2*. If the file to be renamed has a file type, *file-spec1* must include both the file name and the file type. If you specify only a file name, BASIC searches for a file with no file type. If you do not specify a file type for *file-spec2*, BASIC names the file, but does not assign a file type.

General Rules

1. If the file specified by *file-spec1* does not exist, BASIC signals "Can't find file or account" (ERR=5).
2. In VAX-11 BASIC and BASIC-PLUS-2 on RSX-11M/M-PLUS systems, file version numbers are optional. BASIC renames the highest version of *file-spec1* if you do not specify a version number.
3. In VAX-11 BASIC and BASIC-PLUS-2 on RSX-11M/M-PLUS systems, if you use the NAME AS statement on an open file, BASIC does not rename the file until you close it.

Examples

```
400  NAME "OUT.DAT" AS "RERUN.DAT"  
500  NAME OLD_FILE$ AS NEW_FILE$
```

45.0 NEXT

Function

The NEXT statement marks the end of a FOR, UNTIL, or WHILE loop.

Format

```
NEXT [ num-unsubs-vbl ]
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Num-unsubs-vbl* is required in a FOR loop and must correspond to the *num-unsubs-vbl* specified in the FOR statement.
2. *Num-unsubs-vbl* is not allowed in an UNTIL or WHILE loop.

General Rules

1. Each NEXT statement must have a corresponding FOR, UNTIL, or WHILE statement or BASIC signals an error.

Examples

```
100    NEXT I%
```

NOMARGIN

46.0 NOMARGIN (VAX-11 BASIC)

Function

The NOMARGIN statement removes the right margin limit set with the MARGIN statement for a terminal or a terminal-format file.

Format

```
NOMARGIN [ chnl-exp ]
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Chnl-exp* is a numeric expression that specifies a channel number associated with a file. It must be immediately preceded by a pound sign (#).

General Rules

1. When you specify NOMARGIN, the right margin is set to 132.
2. *Chnl-exp*, if specified, must be an open terminal-format file or a terminal.
3. If you do not specify a *chnl-exp*, BASIC sets the margin on the controlling terminal to 132.
4. The NOMARGIN statement applies to the specified channel only while the channel is open. If you close the channel and then reopen it, BASIC uses the default margin of 72.

Examples

```
1000 NOMARGIN #2%
```

ON ERROR GO BACK

47.0 ON ERROR GO BACK

Function

After BASIC executes an ON ERROR GO BACK in a subprogram or DEF, control transfers to the calling program when an error occurs.

Format

```
{ ONERROR  
|  
ON ERROR }      GO BACK
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The ON ERROR GO BACK statement is the default error handler for DEF functions.
2. An ON ERROR GO BACK statement executed in the main program is equivalent to an ON ERROR GOTO 0 statement.
3. If a main program calls a subprogram named SUB1, and SUB1 calls the subprogram named SUB2, an ON ERROR GO BACK statement executed in SUB2 transfers control to SUB1 when an error occurs in SUB2. If SUB1 also has executed an ON ERROR GO BACK statement, BASIC transfers control to the main program's error handling routine.
4. If there is no error outstanding, execution of an ON ERROR GO BACK statement causes subsequent errors to return control to the calling program's error handler.
5. If there is an error outstanding, execution of an ON ERROR GO BACK statement immediately transfers control to the calling program's error handler.
6. The ON ERROR GO BACK statement remains in effect until the program unit completes execution or until BASIC executes another ON ERROR statement.

Examples

```
100  SUB LIST (A$)  
    ON ERROR GOTO 19000  
    OPEN A$ FOR INPUT AS FILE #1  
400  LINPUT #1, B$  
    PRINT B$  
600  GOTO 400  
    !  
    !  
    !  
19000 IF (ERR = 11%) AND (ERL = 400%)  
        THEN CLOSE #1%  
        RESUME 32767  
        ELSE ON ERROR GO BACK  
32767 SUBEND
```

ON ERROR GOTO

48.0 ON ERROR GOTO

Function

The ON ERROR GOTO statement transfers program control to a specified line or label in the current program unit when an error occurs.

Format

```
{ ONERROR } { GO TO }  
ON ERROR    GOTO      target
```

Syntax Rules

1. Target must exist in the same program unit as the ON ERROR GOTO statement.
2. If an ON ERROR GOTO is in a DEF, target must also be in that function definition.

General Rules

1. Execution of an ON ERROR GOTO statement causes subsequent errors to transfer control to the specified target.
2. The ON ERROR GOTO statement remains in effect until the program unit completes execution or until BASIC executes another ON ERROR statement.
3. BASIC does not allow recursive error handling. If a second error occurs during execution of an error-handling routine, control passes to the BASIC error handler and the program stops executing.

Examples

```
500    ON ERROR GOTO 9999  
600    ON ERROR GOTO YES_ROUTINE
```

ON ERROR GOTO 0

49.0 ON ERROR GOTO 0

Function

The ON ERROR GOTO 0 statement disables user error handling and passes control to the BASIC error handler when an error occurs.

Format

```
ON ERROR { GO TO  
          { GOTO }   0
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. If an error is outstanding, execution of an ON ERROR GOTO 0 statement immediately transfers control to the BASIC error handler.
2. If there is no error outstanding, execution of an ON ERROR GOTO 0 statement causes subsequent errors to transfer control to the BASIC error handler.

Examples

```
19000  ON ERROR GOTO 0
```

ON GOSUB

50.0 ON GOSUB

Function

The ON GOSUB statement transfers program control to one of several subroutines, depending on the value of a control expression.

Format

```
ON int-exp GOSUB target,... [ OTHERWISE target ]
```

Syntax Rules

1. Target must exist in the current program unit.
2. Control cannot be transferred into a statement block (such as FOR/NEXT, UNTIL/NEXT, WHILE/NEXT, DEF/END DEF, or SELECT/END SELECT).
3. You can use the ON GOSUB statement in a statement block if ON GOSUB and all its targets are inside that statement block.

General Rules

1. *Int-exp* determines which *target* BASIC selects as the GOSUB argument. If *int-exp* equals one, BASIC selects the first target. If *int-exp* equals two, BASIC selects the second target, and so on.
2. If there is an OTHERWISE clause, and if *int-exp* is less than one or greater than the number of targets in the list, BASIC selects the target of the OTHERWISE clause.
3. If there is no OTHERWISE clause, and if *int-exp* is less than one or greater than the number of targets in the list, BASIC signals "ON statement out of range" (ERR = 58).
4. If a target specifies a nonexecutable statement, BASIC transfers control to the first executable statement that lexically follows the target.

Examples

```
150      ON CONTROL% GOSUB 100,200,300,400
200      ON A% GOSUB 10000,12000,14000 OTHERWISE 21000
```

51.0 ON GOTO

Function

The ON GOTO statement transfers program control to one of several lines, depending on the value of a control expression.

Format

```
ON int-exp { GO TO  
           | GOTO } target .... [ OTHERWISE target ]
```

Syntax Rules

1. Target must exist in the current program unit.
2. Control cannot be transferred into a statement block (such as FOR/NEXT, UNTIL/NEXT, WHILE/NEXT, DEF/END DEF, SELECT/END SELECT).
3. You can use the ON GOTO statement in a statement block if ON GOTO and all its targets are inside that statement block.

General Rules

1. *Int-exp* determines which line number BASIC selects as the GOTO argument. If *int-exp* equals one, BASIC selects the first target. If *int-exp* equals two, BASIC selects the second target, and so on.
2. If there is an OTHERWISE clause, and if *int-exp* is less than one or greater than the number of targets in the list, BASIC transfers control to the target of the OTHERWISE clause.
3. If there is no OTHERWISE clause, and if *int-exp* is less than one or greater than the number of line numbers in the list, BASIC signals "ON statement out of range" (ERR=58).
4. If a target specifies a nonexecutable statement, BASIC transfers control to the first executable statement that lexically follows the target.

Examples

```
330      ON INDEX% GOTO 700,800,900 OTHERWISE 1000
```

OPEN

52.0 OPEN

Function

The OPEN statement opens a file for processing. It transfers user-specified file characteristics to Record Management Services and verifies the results.

Format

OPEN file-spec1	[FOR INPUT]	[FOR OUTPUT]	AS [FILE] chnl-exp1 [, open-clause]...
open-clause:			
	[ORGANIZATION]	{ VIRTUAL UNDEFINED INDEXED SEQUENTIAL RELATIVE }	{ STREAM VARIABLE FIXED }
	{ ALLOW NONE READ WRITE MODIFY }		
	{ ACCESS APPEND READ WRITE MODIFY SCRATCH }		
	{ RECORDTYPE LIST FORTRAN NONE ANY }		

(continued on next page)

{ RECORDSIZE int-exp1	}
{ FILESIZE int-exp2	}
{ WINDOWSIZE int-exp3	} (Except on RSTS/E)
{ TEMPORARY	}
{ CONTIGUOUS	}
{ MAP map-nam	}
{ CONNECT chnl-exp2	}
{ BUFFER int-exp4	}
{ USEROPEN Func-nam	}
{ DEFAULTNAME file-spec2	}
{ EXTENDSIZE int-exp5	} (Except on RSTS/E)
{ MODE int-exp6	} (BASIC-PLUS-2 only)
{ CLUSTERSIZE int-exp7	} (BASIC-PLUS-2 on RSTS/E only)
{ BLOCKSIZE int-exp8	} (Sequential files)
{ NOREWIND	} (Sequential files)
{ NOSPACE	} (Sequential files)
{ SPAN	} (Sequential files)
{ BUCKETSIZE int-exp9	} (Relative and Indexed files)
{ PRIMARY [KEY] key [DUPLICATES]	} (Indexed files)
{ ALTERNATE [KEY] key [DUPLICATES] [CHANGES]	} (Indexed files)
{ UNLOCK EXPLICIT	} (VAX-11 BASIC only)

Key: { str-unsubs-vbl
 int-unsubs-vbl
 decimal-unsubs-vbl
 (str-unsubs-vbl1 ,... str-unsubs-vbl8) }

OPEN

Syntax Rules

1. *File-spec1* specifies the file to be opened and associated with *chnl-exp1*. It can be any valid string expression and must conform to your system's rules for file specifications. BASIC passes these values to RMS without editing, alteration, or validity checks.
 - VAX-11 BASIC does not supply any default file specifications unless you include the DEFAULTNAME clause in the OPEN statement.
 - BASIC-PLUS-2 supplies the device as a default. If a device has been supplied in a previous OPEN statement, that device is used as the default. If there is no previous device, SY: is supplied as the default device. There is no default for the file type unless you include the DEFAULTNAME clause in the OPEN statement.
2. The FOR clause determines how BASIC opens a file.
 - If you open a file FOR INPUT, the file must exist or BASIC signals an error.
 - If you open a file FOR OUTPUT, BASIC creates the file if it does not exist. If the file does exist, VAX-11 BASIC and BASIC-PLUS-2 on RSX-11M/M-PLUS systems create a new version of the file. BASIC-PLUS-2 on RSTS/E systems overwrites the existing file.
 - If you do not specify either FOR INPUT or FOR OUTPUT, BASIC tries to open an existing file. If there is no such file, BASIC creates one.
3. *Chnl-exp* is a numeric expression that specifies a channel number to be associated with *file-spec*. It can be preceded by an optional pound sign (#).
 - In VAX-11 BASIC, *chnl-exp* must be in the range 1 to 99.
 - In BASIC-PLUS-2, *chnl-exp* must be in the range 1 to 12.
4. The ORGANIZATION clause specifies the file organization. When present, it must precede all other clauses. When your OPEN statement has ORGANIZATION SEQUENTIAL, RELATIVE, or INDEXED, you get an RMS file.
 - On VAX/VMS and RSX-11M/M-PLUS systems, you get a terminal-format file when you omit the ORGANIZATION clause entirely. Terminal-format files are implemented as RMS sequential variable files and store ASCII characters in variable-length records. Carriage control is performed by the operating system; the record does not contain carriage returns or line feeds. You use essentially the same syntax to access terminal-format files as when reading from or writing to the terminal (INPUT and PRINT).
 - On RSTS/E systems, when you omit the ORGANIZATION clause, you get a terminal-format file that is a native mode RSTS/E ASCII stream file. RSTS/E ASCII stream files contain embedded carriage control characters. That is, carriage return and line feed characters are part of the record. See BASIC on RSTS/E Systems for more information on RSTS/E native mode files.
5. In the USEROPEN clause, *func-nam* must be a separately compiled FUNCTION subprogram and must conform to FUNCTION statement rules for naming subprograms.
6. The key specified in the PRIMARY KEY or ALTERNATE KEY clause must be declared in the MAP statement referenced by the OPEN statement.

General Rules

1. The OPEN statement does not retrieve records.
2. Channel zero, the terminal, is always open. If you try to open channel zero, VAX-11 BASIC signals the error "Illegal I/O channel" (ERR=46) and BASIC-PLUS-2 signals "I/O channel already open at line <number>".
3. A statement that accesses a file cannot execute until you open that file and associate it with a *chnl-exp*.
4. If a program opens a file on a channel already associated with an open file, BASIC closes the previously opened file and opens the new one.
5. The FOR clause does not specify how your program can use the file or how others can share it. The ACCESS clause specifies how you use the file and the ALLOW clause specifies how the file is shared.
6. The ALLOW clause determines how other users can access the file:
 - ALLOW NONE lets no other users access the file. This is the default if any ACCESS other than READ is specified.
 - ALLOW READ lets other users have READ access to the file. This is the default for ACCESS READ.
 - ALLOW WRITE lets other users have WRITE access to the file.
 - ALLOW MODIFY lets other users have unlimited access to the file.
7. The ACCESS clause determines how the program can use the file:
 - ACCESS READ allows only FIND, GET, or other input statements on the file. The OPEN statement cannot create a file if the ACCESS READ clause is specified.
 - ACCESS WRITE allows only PUT, UPDATE, or other output statements on the file.
 - ACCESS MODIFY allows any I/O statement except SCRATCH on the file. ACCESS MODIFY is the default.
 - ACCESS SCRATCH allows any I/O statement valid for a sequential or terminal-format file.
 - ACCESS APPEND is the same as ACCESS WRITE for sequential files, except that BASIC positions the file pointer after the last record when it opens the file. You cannot use ACCESS APPEND on relative or indexed files.
8. The RECORDTYPE clause can be used only with RMS files. It specifies the file's record attributes:
 - LIST specifies implied carriage control, <CR> <LF> in BASIC-PLUS-2, and <CR> in VAX-11 BASIC. This is the default for all file organizations except VIRTUAL.
 - FORTRAN specifies a control character in the record's first byte.
 - NONE specifies no attributes. This is the default for VIRTUAL files.
 - ANY specifies a match with any file attributes when opening an existing file. If you create a new file, ANY is treated as LIST for all organizations except VIRTUAL. For VIRTUAL, it is treated as NONE.

OPEN

9. The RECORDSIZE clause specifies the file's record size:
 - For ORGANIZATION FIXED, *int-exp1* specifies the size of all records.
 - For ORGANIZATION VARIABLE, *int-exp1* specifies the size of the largest record.
 - If you specify both a RECORDSIZE and a MAP clause, the RECORDSIZE clause overrides the record size set by the MAP clause. If you specify a MAP but no RECORDSIZE, the record size is equal to the MAP size. If there is no MAP, the RECORDSIZE clause determines the record size. If there is no MAP or RECORDSIZE specified, BASIC uses the default record size for the file organization when creating the file. When a program opens an existing file, BASIC uses the file's record size.
 - When creating SEQUENTIAL files, BASIC supplies a default record size of 132.
 - The record size is always 512 for VIRTUAL files unless you specify a RECORDSIZE.
 - If you do not specify a RECORDSIZE clause when opening an existing file, BASIC retrieves the record size value from the file. If you open a new file of ORGANIZATION RELATIVE and do not specify a RECORDSIZE clause, BASIC signals "Bad recordsize value on OPEN" (ERR=148).
10. The FILESIZE clause lets you pre-extend a new file to a specified size. The value of *int-exp2* is the initial allocation of disk blocks. The FILESIZE clause has no effect on an existing file.
11. *Int-exp3* in the WINDOWSIZE clause lets you specify the number of block retrieval pointers you want to maintain in memory for the file. Retrieval pointers are associated with the file header and point to contiguous blocks on disk. By keeping retrieval pointers in memory, you can reduce the I/O associated with locating a record, as the operating system does not have to access the file header for pointers as frequently. The number of retrieval pointers in memory at any one time is determined by the system default or by the WINDOWSIZE clause. The usual default number of retrieval pointers on RSX-11M/M-PLUS and VAX/VMS systems is seven.
 - On VAX/VMS systems, a value of 0 specifies the default number of retrieval pointers. A value of 255 means to map the entire file, if possible. Values between 128 and 254, inclusive, are reserved.
 - On RSX-11M/M-PLUS systems, you can specify up to 127 retrieval pointers.
 - On RSTS/E systems the number of pointers in a window block is fixed at seven. Thus, you cannot use the WINDOWSIZE clause. You can, however, use the CLUSTERSIZE clause to increase the number of contiguous blocks mapped by one retrieval pointer.
12. The TEMPORARY clause causes BASIC to delete the output file as soon as the program closes it.
13. The CONTIGUOUS clause causes RMS to try to create the file as a contiguous sequence of disk blocks in BASIC-PLUS-2 and as a contiguous-best-try sequence of disk blocks in VAX-11 BASIC. The CONTIGUOUS clause does not affect existing files or nondisk files.

14. The MAP clause specifies that a previously declared *map-nam* is associated with the file's record buffer. The MAP clause determines the record buffer's address and length unless overridden by the RECORDSIZE clause.
 - The size of the largest MAP with the same *map-nam* in the current program unit becomes the file's record size if the OPEN statement does not include a RECORDSIZE clause.
 - If there is no MAP clause, the record buffer space that BASIC allocates is not directly accessible. Thus, MOVE statements are needed to access data in the record buffer.
 - You must have a MAP clause when creating an indexed file; you cannot use KEY clauses without MAP statements since keys serve as offsets into the buffer.
15. The BUFFER clause can be used with all file organizations except UNDEFINED. For RELATIVE and INDEXED files, *int-exp4* specifies the number of device or file buffers Record Management Services uses for file processing. For SEQUENTIAL files, *int-exp4* specifies the size of the buffer; for example, BUFFER 8 for a SEQUENTIAL file sets the buffer size to eight 512-byte blocks.
16. The USEROPEN clause lets you open a file with your own FUNCTION subprogram. *Func-nam* must conform to the FUNCTION statement rules for naming subprograms. BASIC calls the user program after it fills the FAB (File Access Block), the RAB (Record Access Block), and the XABs (Extended Attribute Blocks). The subprogram must issue the appropriate RMS calls, including \$OPEN and \$CONNECT, and return the RMS status as the value of the function. See the *BASIC User's Guide* for more information on the USEROPEN routine.
17. The DEFAULTNAME clause lets you supply a default file specification. If *file-spec1* is not a complete file spec, *file-spec2* in the DEFAULTNAME clause supplies the missing parts. For example:

```

10      INPUT "FILE NAME";FNAM$
20      OPEN FNAM$ FOR INPUT AS FILE #1%, &
          DEFAULTNAME "DB2:,DAT"

```

If you type "ABC" for the file name, BASIC tries to open DB2:ABC.DAT. BASIC-PLUS-2 allows DEFAULTNAME for RMS files only.

18. The EXTENDSIZE clause lets you specify the increment by which Record Management Services extends a file after its initial allocation is filled. The value of *int-exp5* is in 512-byte disk blocks.
19. The BLOCKSIZE clause specifies the physical blocksize of magnetic tape files. The value of *int-exp8* is the number of records in a block. Thus, the block size in bytes is the product of the RECORDSIZE and the BLOCKSIZE value. The default BLOCKSIZE is one record.
20. The NOREWIND clause controls tape positioning on magnetic tape files. If you specify neither ACCESS APPEND nor NOREWIND, the OPEN statement positions the tape at its beginning and then searches for the file.
21. The NOSPAN clause specifies that sequential records do not cross block boundaries. SPAN specifies that records can cross block boundaries. SPAN is the default. This clause does not affect nondisk files.

OPEN

22. The BUCKETSIZE clause applies only to relative and indexed files. It specifies the size of an RMS bucket. The value of *int-exp9* is the number of records in a bucket. The default is one record.
23. The PRIMARY KEY clause lets you specify an indexed file's key. You must specify a PRIMARY KEY when opening an indexed file. The ALTERNATE KEY clause lets you specify up to 254 alternate keys. The ALTERNATE key clause is optional.
 - RMS creates one index list for each PRIMARY and ALTERNATE key you specify. These indexes are part of the file and contain pointers to the records. Each key you specify corresponds to a sorted list of record pointers.
 - The keys you specify determine the order in which records in the file are stored. All keys must be variables declared in the file's corresponding MAP statement. The position of the key in the MAP statement determines its position in the record. The data type and size of the key are as declared in the MAP statement.
 - A key can be an unsubscripted string or WORD variable in BASIC-PLUS-2 and an unsubscripted string, WORD, LONG, or packed decimal variable in VAX-11 BASIC.
 - You can also create a segmented index key for string keys by separating the string variable names with commas and enclosing them in parentheses. You can then reference a segment of the specified key by referencing one of the string variables instead of the entire key. A string key can have up to eight segments.
 - The order of appearance of keys determines key numbers. The PRIMARY KEY, which must appear first, is key zero. The first ALTERNATE KEY is one, and so on.
 - DUPLICATES in the PRIMARY and ALTERNATE key clauses specifies that two records can have the same key value. If you do not specify DUPLICATES, the key value must be unique in all records.
 - CHANGES in the ALTERNATE key clause specifies that you can change the value of an alternate key when updating records. If you do not specify CHANGES when creating the file, you cannot change the value of a key. You cannot specify CHANGES with the PRIMARY KEY clause.



VAX-11 BASIC

1. If you open a terminal-format file with RECORDTYPE NONE, you must explicitly insert carriage control characters into the records your program writes to the file.
2. When you PRINT to a terminal-format file, you must supply a RECORDSIZE if the margin is to exceed 72 characters. For example, if you want to PRINT a 132-character line, specify RECORDSIZE 132 or use the MARGIN and NOMARGIN statements.
3. The CONTIGUOUS clause does not guarantee that the file will occupy a contiguous disk area. If RMS can locate the file in a contiguous area, it will do so. However, if there is not enough free contiguous space for a file, RMS allocates the largest possible contiguous areas and does not signal an error. See the VAX-11 RMS User's Guide for more information on contiguous disk allocation.

4. The CONNECT clause permits multiple record streams to be connected to the file.
 - The CONNECT clause must specify an INDEXED file already opened on *chnl-exp2* with the primary OPEN statement. You cannot connect to a connected channel, only to the initially opened channel. You can connect more than one stream to an open channel.
 - All clauses of the two files to be connected must be identical except MAP, CONNECT, and USEROPEN.
5. VAX-11 RMS does not allow the EXTENDSIZE clause for relative and indexed files.
6. If you specify NOREWIND, the OPEN statement does not position the tape. Your program can search for records from the current position.
7. The ALLOW clause can be used in the OPEN statement to specify file sharing of relative, indexed, sequential, and virtual files. But for sequential and virtual files, VAX-11 RMS restricts file sharing to files with fixed-length, 512-byte records. It does not allow the sharing of sequential files with variable-length records (the default), or of virtual files with recordsizes other than 512.
8. The UNLOCK EXPLICIT clause allows you to explicitly lock records with GET and FIND statements.
 - The type of lock you impose on a record with GET or FIND remains in effect until you explicitly unlock the record or file with a FREE or UNLOCK statement or until you close the file.
 - If you specify UNLOCK EXPLICIT, and do not impose a lock on a record with GET or FIND, BASIC imposes the ALLOW NONE lock by default and the next GET or FIND does not unlock the previously locked record.
 - You must open a file with UNLOCK EXPLICIT before you can lock records with GET and FIND statements. See the sections on GET and FIND in this manual and Chapter 8 in *BASIC on VAX/VMS Systems* for more information on explicit record locking and unlocking.
9. KEY clauses are optional for existing files if the keys in the file match BASIC defaults. If you do specify a key, it must match a key in the file.

BASIC-PLUS-2

1. The ORGANIZATION SEQUENTIAL STREAM clause specifies an RMS sequential stream file.
2. On RSTS/E systems, you can create both RMS sequential stream and RSTS/E ASCII stream files:
 - If you specify ORGANIZATION SEQUENTIAL STREAM, the file is RMS sequential stream.
 - If you omit the ORGANIZATION clause entirely, the file is RSTS/E ASCII (that is, a RSTS/E terminal-format file).
3. If you specify a CONTIGUOUS clause and there is not enough free contiguous space, RMS signals an error.

BP2

RSTS

OPEN

4. The CONNECT clause in *BASIC-PLUS-2* establishes additional record access streams for RMS files that allow your program to process more than one record of a file at the same time. Each stream represents an independent and concurrently active sequence of record operations.
 - The CONNECT clause must specify a RELATIVE or INDEXED file already open on *chnl-exp2*.
 - Each CONNECT established in a secondary OPEN statement uses another I/O channel. Because there are 12 I/O channels available, you can have a maximum of 12 connects to a file.
 - All clauses in the secondary OPEN statements must be identical except MAP, CONNECT, and USEROPEN.
 - *BASIC-PLUS-2* signals the error "Invalid file option" (ERR=139) if your program attempts to connect to a record stream that is already connected to another stream.
5. *BASIC-PLUS-2* provides the MODE clause for non-RMS file operations. *Int-exp6* specifies a MODE value.
 - On *RSX-11M/M-PLUS* systems, MODE is ignored except when your program is doing device-specific I/O to a magnetic tape. In this case, you can use MODE to set the tape density. In all other cases, *RSX-11M/M-PLUS* systems ignore the MODE value. See *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems* for information on MODE values.
 - On *RSTS/E* systems, MODE values affect only native-mode files, not RMS files. Further, MODE values have different meanings depending on the context in which you use them. This is because other pieces of software scan the MODE value to see which bits are set. For example, bit 14 may have one meaning to the *RSTS/E* terminal driver, another meaning to the file processor, and a third meaning to the diskette device driver. See *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems* for information on MODE values.
6. *BASIC-PLUS-2* on *RSTS/E* systems does not support the EXTENDSIZE clause.
7. On *RSTS/E* systems, you can specify the smallest amount of contiguous disk space to be allocated when an RMS or *RSTS/E* native-mode file's present allocation is exhausted. You do this with the CLUSTERSIZE clause. *Int-exp7* must be a power of two. For example, a CLUSTERSIZE of eight means that each time the file requires more disk space, the *RSTS/E* operating system must have at least eight contiguous disk blocks to allocate. If the disk is fragmented, there may be no eight-block clusters, and *BASIC-PLUS-2* signals the error "No room for user on device".
 - The default size of the clusters is a disk pack parameter set when the disk pack is initialized or mounted. This parameter, called a CLUSTER (of 512-byte blocks), becomes the default CLUSTERSIZE (the smallest amount of disk space that can be allocated for any file operations on that disk pack).
 - The CLUSTERSIZE clause does not affect the number of blocks read or written. It specifies only the smallest amount of disk space that can be allocated to a file.
 - VAX-11 *BASIC* and *BASIC-PLUS-2* on *RSX-11M/M-PLUS* systems do not support the CLUSTERSIZE clause; however, the EXTENDSIZE clause serves a similar function.

RSX

RSTS

OPEN

8. If you specify NOREWIND, the OPEN FOR OUTPUT statement positions the tape at the logical end of the tape. The program can then write records. The OPEN FOR INPUT statement searches for the specified file without rewinding. If the file is not found, BASIC rewinds the tape and searches for the file from the start of the tape. If the file is still not found, BASIC signals the error "File not found".

Examples

```
100      OPEN "INPUT.DAT" FOR INPUT AS FILE #4,          &
           ORGANIZATION SEQUENTIAL FIXED,          &
           RECORDSIZE 200,                      &
           MAP ABC,                          &
           ALLOW MODIFY, ACCESS MODIFY

200      OPEN Newfile$ FOR OUTPUT AS FILE #3,          &
           ORGANIZATION INDEXED,          &
           MAP Emp_name,              &
           DEFAULTNAME "DB2:.DAT",       &
           PRIMARY KEY Last$, DUPLICATES, &
           ALTERNATE KEY First$ CHANGES

100      MAP (SEGKEY) STRING LAST_NAME = 15,          &
           FIRST_NAME = 15, MI = 1
200      OPEN "NAMES.IND" FOR OUTPUT AS FILE #1,          &
           ORGANIZATION INDEXED,          &
           PRIMARY KEY (LAST_NAME, FIRST_NAME, MI), &
           MAP SEGKEY
```

OPTION

53.0 OPTION

Function

The OPTION statement allows you to set compilation qualifiers such as default data type, size, and scale factor. In VAX-11 BASIC, you can also set compilation conditions such as subscript checking, overflow checking, decimal rounding, and setup in a source program. The defaults affect only the program module in which the OPTION statement occurs.

Format

OPTION option-clause,...	
option-clause:	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{TYPE} = \text{type-clause} \\ \text{SIZE} = \text{size-clause} \\ \text{SCALE} = \text{int-const} \\ \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ACTIVE} \\ \text{INACTIVE} \end{array} \right\} = \text{active-clause} \end{array} \right\}$ <p>(VAX-11 BASIC only) (VAX-11 BASIC only)</p>
type-clause:	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{INTEGER} \\ \text{REAL} \\ \text{EXPLICIT} \\ \text{DECIMAL} \end{array} \right\}$ <p>(VAX-11 BASIC only)</p>
size-clause:	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{size-item} \\ (\text{size-item}, \dots) \end{array} \right\}$
size-item:	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{INTEGER int-clause} \\ \text{REAL real-clause} \\ \text{DECIMAL (d,s)} \end{array} \right\}$ <p>(VAX-11 BASIC only)</p>
int-clause:	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{BYTE} \\ \text{WORD} \\ \text{LONG} \end{array} \right\}$
real-clause:	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{SINGLE} \\ \text{DOUBLE} \\ \text{GFLOAT} \\ \text{HFLOAT} \end{array} \right\}$ <p>(VAX-11 BASIC only) (VAX-11 BASIC only)</p>
active-clause:	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{active-item} \\ (\text{active-item}, \dots) \end{array} \right\}$

active-item:	{ INTEGER OVERFLOW DECIMAL OVERFLOW SETUP DECIMAL ROUNDING SUBSCRIPT CHECKING }	(all VAX-11 BASIC only)
--------------	---	-------------------------

Syntax Rules

1. Option-clause specifies the compilation qualifiers to be in effect for the program module.
 - Type-clause sets the default data type for variables not explicitly declared in the program module. You can specify only one type-clause in a program module.
 - Size-clause sets the default data subtypes for floating-point, integer, and (VAX-11 BASIC only) packed decimal data. Size-item specifies the data subtype you want to set. You can specify an INTEGER and/or REAL size-item in BASIC-PLUS-2 and an INTEGER, REAL, and/or DECIMAL size-item in VAX-11 BASIC. Multiple size-items in an OPTION statement must be enclosed in parentheses and separated by commas.
 - SCALE controls the scaling of double precision floating-point variables. Int-const specifies the power of 10 you want as the scaling factor. It must be an integer from 0 to 6, inclusive, or BASIC signals an error. See the SCALE command in Section II of this manual for more information on scaling.
 - In VAX-11 BASIC, active-clause specifies the decimal rounding, integer and decimal overflow checking, setup, and subscript checking conditions you want in effect for the program module. Active-item specifies the conditions you want to set. Multiple active-items in an OPTION statement must be enclosed in parentheses and separated by commas.
2. You can have more than one option in an OPTION statement, or you can use multiple OPTION statements in a program module. However, each OPTION statement must lexically precede all other source code in the program module, with the exception of comment fields, REM, SUB, FUNCTION, and OPTION statements.

General Rules

1. OPTION statement specifications apply only to the program module in which the statement appears and affect all variables in the module, including SUB and FUNCTION parameters.
2. BASIC signals an error in the case of conflicting options. For example, you cannot specify more than one type-clause or SCALE factor in the same program unit.
3. If you do not specify a type-clause or a subtype-clause, BASIC uses the current environment default data types.
4. If you do not specify a scale factor, BASIC uses the current environment default scale factor.



OPTION



5. In VAX-11 BASIC, ACTIVE specifies the conditions that are to be in effect for a particular program module. INACTIVE specifies the conditions that are not to be in effect for a particular program module. If a condition does not appear in an active-clause, VAX-11 BASIC uses the current environment default for the condition. See Table 16 in this manual for information on the INTEGER_OVERFLOW, DECIMAL_OVERFLOW, SETUP, DECIMAL_ROUNDING, and SUBSCRIPT_CHECKING compilation qualifiers. These qualifiers correspond to active-clause conditions (INTEGER_OVERFLOW, DECIMAL_OVERFLOW, SETUP, DECIMAL ROUNDING, and SUBSCRIPT CHECKING).

Examples

```
10      FUNCTION REAL DOUBLE MONTHLY_PAYMENT,
          (DOUBLE INTEREST_RATE,
           LONG   NO_OF_PAYMENTS,
           DOUBLE PRINCIPLE)
&
20      OPTION TYPE = REAL,
          SIZE = (REAL DOUBLE, INTEGER LONG),
          SCALE = 4
&
&
```

54.0 PRINT

Function

The PRINT statement transfers program data to a terminal or a terminal-format file.

Format

To the Controlling Terminal

PRINT [output-list]

To a Channel

PRINT chnl-exp [, output-list]

output-list: [exp] [sep [exp]]... [sep]

sep:

{ ; }

Syntax Rules

1. *Chnl-exp* is a numeric expression that specifies a channel number associated with a file. It must be immediately preceded by a pound sign (#). If you do not specify a *chnl-exp*, BASIC prints to the controlling terminal.
2. *Output-list* specifies the expressions to be printed and the print format to be used.
3. *Exp* can be any valid expression.
4. A *sep* character must separate each *exp*. The *sep* characters control the print format:
 - A comma tells BASIC to skip to the next print zone before printing the expression.
 - A semicolon tells BASIC to print the expression immediately after the previous expression.

General Rules

1. A terminal-format file must be open on the specified *chnl-exp*.
2. A PRINT line has an integral number of print zones. Note, though, that the number of print zones in a line differs from terminal to terminal.
3. The right margin setting, if set by the MARGIN statement, controls the width of the PRINT line.
4. The PRINT statement prints string constants and variables exactly as they appear, with no leading or trailing spaces.

PRINT

5. BASIC prints quoted string literals exactly as they appear. Thus, you can print quotation marks, commas, and other characters by enclosing them in quotation marks.
6. A PRINT statement with no *output-list* prints a blank line.
7. An *exp* in the *output-list* can be followed by more than one *sep* character. That is, you can omit an *exp* and specify where the next *exp* is to be printed by the use of multiple *sep* characters. For example:

```
100      PRINT "Name",,"Address and ";"City"
Run
PROGA      16-MAR-83 16:16
```

Name	Address and City
------	------------------

In this example, the double commas after "Name" cause BASIC to skip two print zones before printing "Address and ". The semicolon causes the next expression, "City", to be printed immediately after the preceding expression.

8. When printing numeric fields, BASIC precedes each number with a space or minus sign and follows it with a space. If a number can be represented exactly by six decimal digits or less, and, optionally, a decimal point, BASIC prints it that way.
9. BASIC rounds a number with an integer portion of six decimal digits or less (for example, 1234.567) to six digits (1234.57). If a number has more than six decimal digits, BASIC rounds the number to six digits and prints it in E format.
10. BASIC does not print trailing zeros to the right of the decimal point. If all digits to the right of the decimal point are zeros, BASIC omits the decimal point as well.
11. BASIC does not print more than six digits in explicit notation. If a number requires more than six digits, BASIC uses E format and precedes positive exponents with a plus sign (+).
12. The PRINT statement can print up to:
 - Three digits of precision for BYTE integers
 - Five digits of precision for WORD integers
 - Six digits of precision for SINGLE floating-point numbers
 - Ten digits of precision for LONG integers
 - Sixteen digits of precision for DOUBLE floating-point numbers
 - Fifteen digits of precision for GFLOAT floating-point numbers (VAX-11 BASIC only)
 - Thirty-three digits of precision for HFLOAT floating-point numbers (VAX-11 BASIC only)
 - Thirty-one digits of precision for DECIMAL numbers (VAX-11 BASIC only)
 - The string length for STRING values

PRINT

13. A comma or semicolon can also follow the last item in *output-list*:
 - When printing to a terminal, BASIC does not generate a line terminator after printing the last item. The next item printed with a PRINT statement is printed at the position specified by the *sep* character following the last item in the first PRINT statement.
 - When printing to a terminal-format file, BASIC does not write out the record until a PRINT statement without trailing punctuation executes.
14. If no punctuation follows the last item in the *output-list*:
 - When printing to a terminal, BASIC generates a line terminator after printing the last item.
 - When printing to a terminal-format file, BASIC writes out the record after printing the last item.
15. If a string field does not fit on the current line:
 - When printing string elements to a terminal, BASIC prints as much as will fit on the current line and prints the remainder on the next line.
 - When printing string elements to a terminal-format file, BASIC prints the entire element on the next line.
16. If a numeric field is the first field in a line, and the numeric field spans more than one line, BASIC prints part of the number on one line and the remainder on the next. Otherwise, numeric fields are never split across lines. If the entire field cannot be printed at the end of one line, the number is printed on the next line.
17. When a number's trailing space does not fit in the last print zone, the number is printed without the trailing space.
18. VAX-11 BASIC rounds a floating point number with a magnitude between 0.1 and 1.0 to six digits. For magnitudes smaller than 0.1, BASIC rounds the number to six digits and prints it in E format.
19. For magnitudes smaller than 1, BASIC-PLUS-2 prints up to five leading zeros and six significant digits in explicit point unscaled notation.

Examples

```
100 PRINT "THE ANSWER IS ";SUM%
200 PRINT #1, EMP_NUM, EMP_NAME$; EMP_AGE%
```

PRINT USING

55.0 PRINT USING

Function

The PRINT USING statement generates output formatted according to a format string (either numeric or string) to a terminal or a terminal-format file.

Format

PRINT [chnl-exp] USING str-exp sep output-list
sep: { ; }
output-list: [exp] [sep [exp]]... [sep]

Syntax Rules

1. *Chnl-exp* is a numeric expression that specifies a channel number associated with a file. It must be immediately preceded by a pound sign (#). If you do not specify a *chnl-exp*, BASIC prints to the controlling terminal.
2. *Str-exp* is the format string. It must contain at least one valid format field and must be followed by a *sep* character and at least one *exp*.
3. *Output-list* specifies the expressions to be printed.
 - *Exp* can be any valid expression.
 - A *sep* character must separate each *exp*.
4. The *sep* characters in the PRINT USING statement do not control the print format as in the PRINT statement.

General Rules

1. The PRINT USING statement can print up to:
 - Three digits of precision for BYTE integers
 - Five digits of precision for WORD integers
 - Six digits of precision for SINGLE floating-point numbers
 - Ten digits of precision for LONG integers
 - Sixteen digits of precision for DOUBLE floating-point numbers
 - Fifteen digits of precision for GFLOAT floating-point numbers (VAX-11 BASIC only)
 - Thirty-three digits of precision for HFLOAT floating-point numbers (VAX-11 BASIC only)
 - Thirty-one digits of precision for DECIMAL numbers (VAX-11 BASIC only)
 - The string length for STRING values

PRINT USING

2. A terminal-format file must be open on the specified *chnl-exp* or BASIC signals an error.
3. PRINT USING rounds a floating-point number once.
4. Format string characters control the format of numeric output.
 - The pound sign (#) reserves space for one sign or digit.
 - The comma (,) causes BASIC to insert commas before every third significant digit to the left of the decimal point. In the format field, the comma must be to the left of the decimal point, and to the right of the rightmost dollar sign, asterisk, or pound sign. A comma reserves space for a comma or digit.
 - The period(.) inserts a decimal point. The number of reserved places on either side of the period determines where the decimal point appears in the output.
 - The hyphen (-) reserves space for a sign and specifies trailing minus sign format. If present, it must be the last character in the format field. It makes BASIC print negative numbers with a minus sign after the last digit, and positive numbers with a trailing space. The trailing minus sign format (-) can be used as part of a dollar sign (\$\$) format field.
 - The letters CD enclosed in angle brackets (<CD>) print CR (Credit Record) after negative numbers or zero and DR (Debit Record) after positive numbers. If present, it must be the last format in the format field. The (<CD>) format can be used as part of a dollar sign (\$\$) format field.
 - Four carets(^^^) specify E notation for floating-point numbers. They reserve four places for SINGLE, DOUBLE, and VAX-11 BASIC GFLOAT values and five places for VAX-11 BASIC HFLOAT values. If present, they must be the last characters in the format field.
 - Two dollar signs (\$\$) reserve space for a dollar sign and a digit and cause BASIC to print a dollar sign immediately to the left of the most significant digit.
 - Two asterisks (**) reserve space for two digits and cause BASIC to fill the left side of the numeric field with leading asterisks.
 - A zero enclosed in angle brackets (<0>) prints leading zeros instead of leading spaces.
 - A percent sign enclosed in angle brackets (<%>) prints all spaces in the field if the value of the print item is zero.

Note

When the dollar sign (\$\$), asterisk-fill (**), or zero-fill (<0>) formats are used to form one print field, they are mutually exclusive. Additionally, when the zero-fill (<0>) or blank-if-zero (<%>) formats are used to form one print field, they also are mutually exclusive.

- An underscore (_) forces the next formatting character in the format string to be interpreted as a literal. It affects only the next character. If the next character is not a valid formatting character, the underscore has no effect and will itself be printed as a literal.

PRINT USING

5. BASIC interprets any other characters in a numeric format string as string literals.
6. Depending on usage, the same format string characters can be combined to form one or more print fields within a format string. For example:
 - When a dollar sign (\$\$) or asterisk-fill (**) format precedes a pound sign (#), it modifies the pound sign format. The (\$\$) or (**) reserves two places, and with the pound signs forms one print field. For example:

`**$$###` forms one field and reserves five spaces
 `****##` forms one field and reserves four spaces

When these formats are not followed by a pound sign or a blank-if-zero (<%>) format, they reserve two places and form a separate print field.

- When a zero-fill (<0>) or blank-if-zero (<%>) format precedes a pound sign (#), it modifies the pound sign format. The (<0>) or (<%>) reserves one place, and with the pound signs forms one print field. For example:

`**<0>###` forms one field and reserves five spaces
 `**<%>###` forms one field and reserves four spaces

When these formats are not followed by a pound sign, they reserve one space and form a separate print field.

- When a blank-if-zero (<%>) format follows a dollar sign (\$\$) or asterisk-fill (**) format, it modifies the (\$\$) or (**) format string. The (<%>) reserves one space, and with the (\$\$) or (**) format string forms one print field. For example:

`**$$<%>###` forms one field and reserves six spaces
 `****<%>##` forms one field and reserves five spaces

When the (<%>) precedes a (\$\$) or (**), it reserves one space and forms a separate print field.

7. In VAX-11 BASIC, the comma (digit separator), dollar sign (currency symbol), and decimal point (radix point) are the defaults for U.S. currency. The PRINT USING statement accesses the system-wide logical names for these symbols. To cause PRINT USING to format foreign currency, these logical names must be changed.
8. For E notation, PRINT USING left-justifies the number in the format field and adjusts the exponent to compensate, except when printing zero. When printing zero in E notation, BASIC prints leading spaces, leading zeros, a decimal point, and zeros in the fractional portion if the PRINT USING string contains these formatting characters, and then the string "E+00".
9. Zero cannot be negative. That is, if a small negative number rounds to zero, it is represented as a positive zero.

PRINT USING

10. If there are reserved positions to the left of the decimal point, and the printed number is less than one, BASIC prints one zero to the left of the decimal point and pads with spaces to the left of the zero.
11. If there are more reserved positions to the right of the decimal point than fractional digits, BASIC prints trailing zeros in those positions.
12. If there are fewer reserved positions to the right of the decimal point than fractional digits, BASIC rounds the number to fit the reserved positions.
13. If a number does not fit in the specified format field, BASIC prints "%", followed by the number in PRINT format.
14. Format string characters control string output. All format characters except the backslash and exclamation point must start with a single quote ('). A single quote by itself reserves one character position. A single quote followed by format character(s) marks the beginning of a character format field and reserves one character position.

Note

VAX-11 BASIC accepts either upper- or lowercase string formatting characters. BASIC-PLUS-2 accepts only uppercase string formatting characters.

- L reserves one character position. The number of Ls plus the leading single quote determines the field's size. BASIC left-justifies the print expression and pads with spaces if the print expression is less than or equal to the field's width. If the print expression is larger than the field, BASIC left-justifies the expression and truncates its right side to fit the field.
- R reserves one character position. The number of Rs plus the leading single quote determines the field's size. BASIC right-justifies the print expression and pads with spaces if the print expression is less than or equal to the field's width. If the print expression is larger than the field, BASIC left-justifies the expression and truncates its right side to fit the field.
- C reserves one character position. The number of Cs plus the leading single quote determines the field's size. If the string does not fit in the field, BASIC truncates its right side. Otherwise, BASIC centers the print expression in this field. If the string cannot be centered exactly, it is offset one character to the left.
- E reserves one character position. The number of Es plus the leading single quote determines the field's size. BASIC left-justifies the print expression if it is less than or equal to the field's width and pads with spaces. Otherwise, BASIC expands the field to hold the entire print expression.
- Two backslashes (\ \) when separated by n spaces reserve n+2 character positions. PRINT USING left-justifies the string in this field. BASIC does not allow a leading quotation mark with this format.
- An exclamation point (!) creates a 1-character field. The exclamation point both starts and ends the field. BASIC does not allow a leading quotation mark with this format.

PRINT USING

Note

The backslash and exclamation formatting characters are included for compatibility with BASIC-PLUS. DIGITAL recommends that you do not use this type of character field for new program development.

15. BASIC interprets any other characters in the format string as string literals and prints them exactly as they appear.
16. A comma or semicolon can also follow the last item in *output-list*:
 - When printing to a terminal, BASIC does not generate a line terminator after printing the last item. The next item printed with a PRINT statement is printed at the position specified by the *sep* character following the last item in the first PRINT statement.
 - When printing to a terminal-format file, BASIC does not write out the record until a PRINT statement without trailing punctuation executes.
17. If no punctuation follows the last item in the *output-list*:
 - When printing to a terminal, BASIC generates a line terminator after printing the last item.
 - When printing to a terminal-format file, BASIC writes out the record after printing the last item.

Examples

```
500      PRINT USING "$$####,##-", 8832.33, -88.3, A_VARIABLE
300      PRINT #1 USING "'E"; "NOW IS THE TIME FOR ALL GOOD MEN"
```

PUT

56.0 PUT

Function

The PUT statement transfers data from the record buffer to a file. PUT statements are valid on RMS sequential, relative, indexed, and block I/O files. You cannot use PUT statements on terminal-format files, virtual array files, or files opened with ORGANIZATION UNDEFINED.

Format

```
PUT chnl-exp [ , RECORD num-exp ] [ , COUNT int-exp ]
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Chnl-exp* is a numeric expression that specifies a channel number associated with a file. It must be immediately preceded by a pound sign (#).
2. PUT with no RECORD clause writes data to an RMS sequential, relative, indexed, or block I/O file.
 - For sequential files, PUT adds a record at the end of the file.
 - For relative and block I/O files, PUT places the record in the empty cell pointed to by the Next Record Pointer. If the file is empty, the first PUT places a record in cell number one, the second in cell number two, and so on.
 - For indexed files, RMS stores records in order of ascending primary key value and updates all index keys.
3. The RECORD clause allows you to randomly write records to a relative or block I/O file by specifying the record number. *Int-exp* must be between one and the maximum record number defined in the OPEN statement.
4. *Int-exp* in the COUNT clause specifies the record's size. If there is no COUNT clause, the record's size is that defined by the MAP or RECORDSIZE clause (RECORDSIZE overrides MAP) in the OPEN statement.
 - If you write a record to a file with variable-length records, *int-exp* must be between zero and the maximum record size specified in the OPEN statement, inclusive.
 - If you write a record to a file with fixed-length records, the COUNT clause serves no purpose. If used, *int-exp* must equal the record size specified in the OPEN statement.
 - In BASIC-PLUS-2, if *int-exp* equals zero, the entire record is written to the file.

General Rules

1. For sequential access, the file associated with *chnl-exp* must be open with ACCESS WRITE, MODIFY, SCRATCH, or APPEND.
2. To add records to an existing sequential file, open it with ACCESS APPEND. If you are not at the end of the file when attempting a PUT to a sequential file, BASIC signals "Not at end of file" (ERR = 149).

3. For random access, the relative or block I/O file associated with *chnl-exp* must be open with ACCESS WRITE or MODIFY.
4. After a PUT statement executes, there is no Current Record Pointer. The Next Record Pointer is set as follows:
 - For sequential files, PUT sets the Next Record Pointer to the end-of-file.
 - For relative and block I/O files, a sequential PUT sets the Next Record Pointer to the Next Record plus one. A random PUT leaves the Next Record Pointer unchanged.
 - For indexed files, PUT leaves the Next Record Pointer unchanged.
5. When you specify a RECORD clause, BASIC evaluates *int-exp* and uses this value as the relative record number of the target cell.
 - If the target cell is empty or occupied by a deleted record, BASIC places the record in that cell.
 - If there is a record in the target cell, the PUT statement fails, and BASIC signals the error "Record already exists" (ERR = 153).
6. If an existing record in an indexed file has a record with the same key value as the one you want to PUT to the file, BASIC signals the error "Duplicate key detected" (ERR = 134) if you did not specify DUPLICATES for the key in the OPEN statement. If you specified DUPLICATES, RMS stores the records in a first-in, first-out sequence.
7. The number specified in the COUNT clause determines how many bytes are transferred from the buffer to a file:
 - If you have not completely filled the record buffer before executing a PUT, BASIC pads the record with nulls to equal the specified value.
 - If the specified COUNT value is less than the buffer size, the record is truncated to equal the specified value
8. The number in the COUNT clause must not exceed the size specified in the MAP or RECORDSIZE clause in the OPEN statement or BASIC signals "Size of record invalid" (ERR = 156).
9. Although block I/O files are implemented through RMS on VAX/VMS systems and RSX-11M/M-PLUS systems, when you write a record to a block I/O file, RMS does not perform the same error checking as with relative files. A PUT will write a record to a disk block specified in the RECORD clause, regardless of whether the block already contains a record. See Chapter 9 in the *BASIC User's Guide* for more information on RMS block I/O files. See the *RSTS/E Programming Manual* for information on RSTS/E native-mode block I/O files.

Examples

Sequential, Relative, Indexed, and Block I/O Files

700 PUT #3, COUNT 55%

Relative and Block I/O Files Only

2000 PUT #5, RECORD 133, COUNT 16%

RANDOMIZE

57.0 RANDOMIZE

Function

The RANDOMIZE statement gives the random number function, RND, a new starting point.

Format

```
{ RANDOMIZE  
  RANDOM }
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. Without the RANDOMIZE statement, successive runs of the same program generate the same random number sequence. If you use the RANDOMIZE statement before invoking the RND function, the starting point changes for each run. Thus, a different random number sequence appears each time.

Examples

45 RANDOMIZE

58.0 READ

Function

The READ statement assigns values from a DATA statement to variables.

Format

```
READ vbl,...
```

Syntax Rules

1. In VAX-11 BASIC, *vbl* cannot be a DEF function name, unless the READ statement is inside the multi-line DEF body.
2. In BASIC-PLUS-2, *vbl* can be a DEF function name. If you assign a value to the DEF function name in this way, the next invocation of the function returns that value if it is not modified by the function body.
3. If your program has a READ statement without DATA statements, BASIC signals a compile-time error.

General Rules

1. When BASIC initializes a program unit, it forms a data sequence of all values in all DATA statements. An internal pointer points to the first value in the sequence.
2. When BASIC executes a READ statement, it sequentially assigns values from the data sequence to variables in the READ statement variable list. As BASIC assigns each value, it advances the internal pointer to the next value.
3. BASIC signals the error "Out of data" (ERR=57) if there are fewer data elements than READ statements. Extra data elements are ignored.
4. The data type of the value must agree with the data type of the variable to which it is assigned or BASIC signals "Data format error" (ERR=50).
5. If you READ a string variable, and the DATA element is an unquoted string, BASIC ignores leading and trailing spaces. If the DATA element contains commas, they must be inside quotation marks.
6. BASIC evaluates subscript expressions in the variable list after it assigns a value to the preceding variable, and before it assigns a value to the subscripted variable. For example:

```
100    READ A, A$(A)
      !
      !
      !
500    DATA 10, NELSON
```

BASIC assigns the value 10 to variable A, then assigns the string "NELSON" to array element A\$(10).

READ

Examples

```
1000  READ A, B%, C$  
!  
!  
2000  DATA 32.5, 8, ENDDATA
```

59.0 RECORD (VAX-11 BASIC)

Function

The RECORD statement lets you name and define data structures in a BASIC program and provides the BASIC interface to the VAX-11 Common Data Dictionary (CDD). You can use the defined RECORD name anywhere a BASIC data-type keyword is valid.

Format

RECORD rec-nam

 rec-component

 END RECORD [rec-nam]

 rec-component: { data-type rec-item [, [data-type] rec-item]
 group-clause
 variant-clause }

 rec-item: { unsubs-vbl [= int-const]
 array (int-const,...) [= int-const]
 FILL [(int-const)] [= int-const] }

 group-clause: GROUP group-nam [(int-const,...)]
 rec-component

 END GROUP [group-nam]

 variant-clause: VARIANT
 case-clause

 END VARIANT

 case-clause: CASE
 [rec-component]

RECORD

Syntax Rules

1. Each line of text in a RECORD, GROUP, or VARIANT block can have an optional line number.
2. Data-type can be a BASIC data-type keyword or a previously defined *rec-nam* or *group-nam*. Table 2 lists and describes BASIC data-type keywords.
3. If the *data-type* of a *rec-item* is STRING, the string is fixed-length. You can supply an optional string length with the =*int-exp* clause. If you do not specify a string length, the default is 16.
4. *Int-const* in the group-clause specifies the number of times the GROUP block occurs in the RECORD data structure.

General Rules

1. Rec-item must conform to the rules for naming BASIC variables.
2. Variables and arrays in a record definition are also called elementary record components.
3. The RECORD statement names and defines a data structure called a record template, but does not allocate any storage. When you use the record template as a data type in a statement such as DECLARE, MAP, or COMMON, you declare a record instance. This declaration of the record instance allocates storage for the RECORD. For example:

```
1000      DECLARE EMPLOYEE EMP_REC
```

This statement declares a variable named EMP_REC. EMP_REC is of the user-defined data type EMPLOYEE.

4. Whenever you access an elementary record component, that is, a variable named in a RECORD definition, you do it in the context of the record instance. Therefore, *rec-item* names need not be unique in your program. For example, you can have a variable called FIRST_NAME in any number of different RECORD definitions. However, you cannot use a BASIC keyword as a *rec-item* name and you cannot have two variables or arrays with the same name at the same level in the RECORD or GROUP definition.

5. The declarations between the RECORD statement and the END RECORD statement are called a RECORD block.
6. The declarations between the GROUP keyword and the END GROUP keywords are called a GROUP block. The GROUP keyword is valid only within a RECORD block.
7. A repeated GROUP is similar to an array within the record as it is zero-based. Thus, a repeat-count of 10 actually specifies 11 repetitions of the named GROUP.
8. The declarations between the VARIANT keyword and the END VARIANT keywords are called a VARIANT block.
9. The amount of space allocated for a VARIANT field in a RECORD is equal to the space needed for the variant field requiring the most storage. A record component outside of this overlaid field determines which record variant is used.
10. The *rec-nam* qualifies the *group-nam* and the *group-nam* qualifies the *rec-item*. You can access a particular *rec-item* within a record by specifying *rec-nam*::*group-nam*::*rec-item*. This specification is called a fully qualified reference. The full qualification of a *rec-item* is also called a component path name.
11. The *group-nam* is optional in a *rec-item* specification unless there is more than one *rec-item* with the same name. For example:

```
10      DECLARE EMPLOYEE EMP_REC
!
!
!
100     RECORD Address
          STRING Street, City, State, Zip
        END RECORD Address
200     RECORD Employee
          GROUP Emp_name
            STRING First = 15
            STRING Middle = 1
            STRING Last = 15
          END GROUP Emp_name
          ADDRESS Work
          ADDRESS Home
        END RECORD Employee
```

You can access the *rec-item* "Last" by specifying only "EMP_REC::Last" because only one *rec-item* is named "Last." However, if you try to reference "EMP_REC::City", BASIC signals an error because "City" is an ambiguous field, a component of both "Work" and "Home." To access "City," you must specify either "EMP_REC::Work::City" or "EMP_REC::Home::City."

RECORD

Examples

```
1000      RECORD EMP_WAGE_CLASS
              GROUP EMP_NAME
                  STRING Last = 15
                  STRING First = 14
                  STRING Middle = 1
              END GROUP EMP_NAME
              GROUP EMP_ADDRESS
                  STRING Street = 15
                  STRING City = 20
                  STRING State = 2
                  DECIMAL(5,0) ZIP
              END GROUP EMP_ADDRESS
              STRING WAGE_CLASS = 2
              VARIANT
                  CASE
                      GROUP HOURLY
                          DECIMAL(4,2) Hourly_wage
                          SINGLE Regular_PAY_ytd
                          SINGLE Overtime_PAY_ytd
                      END GROUP HOURLY
                  CASE
                      GROUP SALARIED
                          DECIMAL(7,2) Yearly_salary
                          SINGLE Pay_ytd
                      END GROUP SALARIED
                  CASE
                      GROUP EXECUTIVE
                          DECIMAL(8,2) Yearly_salary
                          SINGLE Pay_ytd
                          SINGLE Expenses_ytd
                      END GROUP EXECUTIVE
                  END VARIANT
              END RECORD EMP_WAGE_CLASS
```

60.0 REM

Function

The REM statement permits program documentation.

Format

```
REM [comment]
```

Syntax Rules

1. REM must be the only statement on the line or the last statement on a multi-statement line.
2. Because the REM statement is not executable, you can place it anywhere in a program, except where other statements, such as SUB and END SUB, must be the first or last statement in a program unit.
3. BASIC interprets every character between the keyword REM and the next line number as part of the comment.

General Rules

1. When the REM statement is the first statement on a line-numbered line, BASIC treats any reference to that line number as a reference to the next higher-numbered executable statement.
2. The REM statement is similar to the comment field that begins with an exclamation point, with one exception: the REM statement must be the last statement on a multi-statement line. The exclamation point comment field can be ended with a line terminator and followed by a BASIC statement. See Section I of this manual for more information on the comment field.

Examples

```
500      REM THIS IS A COMMENT
```

REMAP

61.0 REMAP

Function

The REMAP statement defines or redefines the position in the record buffer of variables named in the MAP DYNAMIC statement.

Format

REMAP (map-nam) remap-item,...
remap-item: { num-vbl-nam num-array-nam ([int-exp,...]) str-vbl-nam [= int-exp] str-array-nam ([int-exp,...]) [= int-exp] [data-type] FILL [(int-exp)] [= int-exp] FILL% [(int-exp)] FILL\$ [(int-exp)] [= int-exp] }

Syntax Rules

1. *Map-nam* is the name of a map area declared in the MAP and MAP DYNAMIC statements.
2. *Remap-item* names a variable, array, or array element declared in a preceding MAP DYNAMIC statement:
 - *Num-vbl-nam* specifies a numeric variable or array element. *Num-arr-nam ()* specifies an entire numeric array.
 - *Str-vbl-nam* specifies a string variable or array element. *Str-arr-nam ()* specifies an entire fixed-length string array. You can specify the number of bytes to be reserved for string variables and array elements with the *=int-exp* clause. The default string length is 16.
3. *Remap-item* can also be a FILL item. The FILL, FILL%, and FILL\$ keywords let you reserve parts of the record buffer. *Int-exp* specifies the number of FILL items to be reserved. The *=int-exp* clause allows you to specify the number of bytes to be reserved for string FILL items. Table 21 describes FILL item format and storage allocation.

Note

In the applicable formats of FILL, *(int-const)* represents a repeat count, not an array subscript. FILL (n), for example, represents n elements, not n + 1.

4. All *remap-items*, except FILL items, must have been named in a previous MAP DYNAMIC statement, or BASIC signals an error.

5. Data-type can be any BASIC data-type keyword or, in VAX-11 BASIC, a data type defined in a RECORD statement. Data-type keywords, size, range, and precision are listed in Table 2 in this manual. You can specify a data type only for FILL items.
 - When you specify a data-type, all following FILL items are of that data type until you specify a new data type.
 - If you do not specify any data-type, FILL items take the current default data type and size.
 - FILL items following a data-type cannot end in a dollar sign or percent sign suffix character.
6. Remap-items must be separated with commas.

General Rules

1. The REMAP statement does not affect the amount of storage allocated to the map area.
2. Each time a REMAP statement executes, BASIC sets record pointers to the named map area for the specified variables from left to right.
3. The REMAP statement must be preceded by a MAP DYNAMIC statements or BASIC signals the error "No such MAP area <name>". The MAP statement creates a named area of static storage, the MAP DYNAMIC statement specifies the variables whose positions can change at run time, and the REMAP statement specifies the new positions for the variables names in the MAP DYNAMIC statement.
4. Until the REMAP statement executes, all variables named in the MAP DYNAMIC statement point to the first byte of the MAP area and all string variables have a length of zero. When the REMAP statement executes, BASIC sets the internal pointers as specified in the REMAP statement. For example:

```
100 MAP (DUMMY) STRING MAP_BUFFER = 50
      MAP DYNAMIC (DUMMY) LONG A, STRING B, SINGLE C(7)
      REMAP (DUMMY) B=14, A, C()
```

The REMAP statement sets a pointer to byte 1 of DUMMY_MAP for string variable B, a pointer to byte 15 for LONG variable A, and pointers to bytes 19, 23, 27, 31, 35, 39, 43, and 47 for the elements in SINGLE array C.

5. You can use the REMAP statement to redefine the pointer for an array element or variable more than once in a single REMAP statement. For example:

```
100 MAP (DUMMY) STRING = 48
      MAP DYNAMIC (DUMMY) LONG A, B(10)
      REMAP (DUMMY) B(), B(0)
```

This REMAP statement sets a pointer to byte 1 in DUMMY_MAP for array B. Since array B uses a total of 44 bytes, the pointer for the first element of array B, B(0) points to byte 45. References to array element B(0) will be to bytes 45 through 48. Pointers for array elements 1 through 10 are set to bytes 1, 4, 8, 12, and so forth.

6. Because the REMAP statement is local to a program module, it affects pointers only in the program module in which it executes.

REMAP

Examples

```
100    MAP (EMPREC) STRING MAP_BUFFER = 100
      MAP DYNAMIC (EMPREC) STRING EMP_NAME,
          LONG BADGE_NO,
          STRING STREET, CITY, STATE,
          WORD ZIP,
          STRING START_DATE
      REMAP (EMPREC) EMP_NAME = 20,
          BADGE_NO,
          STREET = 10,
          CITY = 10,
          STATE = 2,
          ZIP,
          START_DATE = 8
      !
      !
      !
500    REMAP (EMPREC) EMP_NAME = 10,
          BADGE_NO,
          STRING FILL = 32,
          WORD FILL,
          START_DATE = 8
```

62.0 RESTORE (RESET)

Function

The RESTORE statement resets the DATA pointer to the beginning of the DATA sequence or sets the record pointer to the first record in a file. RESET is a synonym for RESTORE.

Format

```
{ RESET
  RESTORE }      [ chnl-exp [, KEY # int-exp ] ]
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Chnl-exp* is a numeric expression that specifies a channel number associated with a file. It must be immediately preceded by a pound sign (#).
2. *Int-exp* must be between zero and the number of keys in the file minus one, inclusive.

General Rules

1. The RESTORE statement is not allowed on virtual array files or on files opened on unit record devices.
2. If you do not specify a *chnl-exp*, RESTORE resets the DATA pointer to the beginning of the DATA sequence.
3. RESTORE affects only the current program unit. Thus, executing a RESTORE statement in a subprogram does not affect the DATA pointer in the main program.
4. If there is no *chnl-exp*, and the program has no DATA statements, RESTORE has no effect.
5. The file specified by *chnl-exp* must be open.
6. If *chnl-exp* specifies a magnetic tape file, BASIC rewinds the tape to the first record in the file.
7. The KEY clause applies to indexed files only. It sets a new key of reference equal to *int-exp* and sets the Next Record Pointer to the first logical record in that key.
8. For indexed files, the RESTORE statement without a KEY clause sets the Next Record Pointer to the first logical record specified by the current key of reference. If there is no current key of reference, the RESTORE statement sets the Next Record Pointer to the first logical record of the primary key.
9. If you use the RESTORE statement on any file type other than indexed, BASIC sets the Next Record Pointer to the first record in the file.

Examples

```
400      RESTORE #7%, KEY #4%
```

RESUME

63.0 RESUME

Function

The RESUME statement marks an exit point from an error-handling routine. BASIC clears the error condition and returns program control to a specified line number or to the program block in which the error occurred.

Format

```
RESUME [ lin-num ]
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Lin-num* must exist within the same program unit as the RESUME statement.
2. The RESUME statement cannot be used in a multi-line DEF unless the *lin-num* is also in the DEF function definition.

General Rules

1. The RESUME statement does not accept a label as an argument. Therefore, you should number lines that are to receive control from the error handler.
2. When no *lin-num* is specified in a RESUME statement, BASIC transfers control based on where the error occurs. If the error occurs on a numbered line containing a single statement, BASIC always transfers control to that statement. However, if the error occurs within a multi-statement line:
 - Within a FOR, WHILE, or UNTIL loop, BASIC transfers control to the first statement that follows the FOR, WHILE, or UNTIL statement.
 - Within a SELECT block, BASIC transfers control to the start of the CASE block in which the error occurs.
 - After a loop or SELECT block, BASIC transfers control to the statement that follows the NEXT or END SELECT statement.
 - If none of the above conditions occurs, BASIC transfers control back to the statement that follows the most recent line number or label.
3. To simplify and clarify error handling, DIGITAL recommends that the RESUME statement always be used with *lin-num*.

RESUME

4. A RESUME statement with a specified *lin-num* transfers control to the first statement of a multi-statement line, regardless of which statement caused the error.
5. A RESUME statement cannot transfer control out of the current program unit. Thus, a RESUME statement with no *lin-num* cannot terminate an error handler in the following situation: (1) the error handler is handling an error that occurred in a subprogram or an external function, and (2) the error was passed to the calling program's error handler by an ON ERROR GO BACK statement or by default.
6. The execution of a RESUME with no *lin-num* is illegal if there is no error active. A RESUME with a *lin-num* is always legal. After clearing the error condition, BASIC transfers control to the specified line.

Examples

19100 RESUME 300

19990 RESUME

64.0 RETURN

Function

The RETURN statement transfers control to the statement immediately following the most recently executed GOSUB or ON GOSUB statement in the current program unit.

Format

```
RETURN
```

Syntax Rules

1. RETURN is the last statement executed in a subroutine even if it is not the last statement in the subroutine.

General Rules

1. Execution of a RETURN statement before the execution of a GOSUB or ON GOSUB causes BASIC to signal "RETURN without GOSUB" (ERR=72).

Examples

```
800      RETURN
```

RSET

65.0 RSET

Function

The RSET statement assigns right-justified data to a string variable. RSET does not change a string variable's length.

Format

```
RSET str-vbl,... = str-exp
```

Syntax Rules

1. BASIC evaluates the *str-vbl* subscript expression (if present) before assigning values.
2. *Str-vbl* cannot be a DEF function name, unless the RSET statement is inside the DEF function definition.

General Rules

1. The RSET statement treats strings as fixed-length. It does not change the length of *str-vbl* nor does it create new storage locations.
2. If *str-vbl* is longer than *str-exp*, RSET right-justifies the data and pads it with spaces on the left.
3. If *str-vbl* is shorter than *str-exp*, RSET truncates *str-exp* on the left.

Examples

```
100      RSET ZZ$ = "LMNOP"
```

SCRATCH

66.0 SCRATCH

Function

The SCRATCH statement deletes the Current Record and all following records in an RMS sequential file.

Format

```
SCRATCH chnl-exp
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. Before you execute the SCRATCH statement, the file must be opened with ACCESS SCRATCH.
2. The SCRATCH statement applies to ORGANIZATION SEQUENTIAL files only.
3. The SCRATCH statement has no effect on terminals or unit record devices.
4. For disk files, the SCRATCH statement discards the current record and all that follow it in the file. The file is not physically shortened.
5. For magnetic tape files, the SCRATCH statement overwrites the current record with two end-of-file marks.

Examples

```
600      SCRATCH #4%
```

SELECT

67.0 SELECT

Function

The SELECT statement lets you specify an expression, a number of possible values the expression may have, and a number of alternative statement blocks to be executed for each possible case. The END SELECT keywords terminate the SELECT block. The code between SELECT and END SELECT is called a SELECT block, and the code between CASE statements is called a CASE block.

Format

```
SELECT exp1
    case-clause
    .
    .
    .
    [ else-clause ]
END SELECT

case-clause:      CASE case-item, ...
                  [ statement ] ...
case-item:        { [ rel-op ] exp2
                   exp3 TO exp4 }
else-clause:     CASE ELSE
                  [ statement ] ...
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Exp1* is the expression to be tested against the *case-clauses* and the *else-clause*. It can be numeric or string.
 - *Case-clause* consists of the CASE keyword followed by a *case-item* and statements to be executed when the *case-item* is true.
 - *Else-clause* consists of the CASE ELSE keywords followed by statements to be executed when no previous *case-item* has been selected as true.
2. *Case-item* is either an expression to be compared with *exp1* or a range of values separated with the keyword TO.
 - *Rel-op* is a relational operator specifying how *exp1* is to be compared to *exp2*. If you do not include a *rel-op*, BASIC assumes the equals (=) operator. BASIC executes the statements in the CASE block when the specified relational expression is true.

- *Exp3* and *exp4* specify a range of numeric or string values separated by the keyword TO. Separate multiple ranges with commas. BASIC executes the statements in the CASE block when *exp1* falls within any of the specified ranges.
3. A SELECT statement can have only one *else-clause*. The *else-clause* is optional and, when present, must be the last CASE block in the SELECT block.

General Rules

1. Each statement in a SELECT block can have its own line number.
2. The SELECT statement begins the SELECT BLOCK and the END SELECT keywords terminate it. BASIC signals an error if you do not include the END SELECT keywords.
3. Each CASE keyword establishes a CASE block. The next CASE or END SELECT keyword ends the CASE block.
4. You can nest SELECT blocks within a CASE or CASE ELSE block.
5. BASIC evaluates *exp1* when the SELECT statement is first encountered; BASIC then compares *exp1* with each case-clause in order of occurrence until a match is found or until a CASE ELSE block or END SELECT is encountered.
6. The following conditions constitute a match:
 - *Exp1* satisfies the relationship to *exp2* specified by *rel-op*.
 - *Exp1* is greater than or equal to *exp3*, but less than or equal to *exp4*, greater than or equal to *exp5* but less than or equal to *exp6*, and so on.
7. When a match is found between *exp1* and a case-item, BASIC executes the statements in the CASE block where the match occurred. If ranges overlap, the first match causes BASIC to execute the statements in the CASE block. After executing CASE block statements, control passes to the statement immediately following the END SELECT keywords.
8. If no CASE match occurs, BASIC executes the statements in the *else-clause*, if present, and then passes control to the statement immediately following the END SELECT keywords.
9. If no CASE match occurs and you do not supply a case-else clause, control passes to the statement following the END SELECT keywords.

Examples

```
100  SELECT A% + B% + C%
      CASE = 100
          PRINT 'THE VALUE IS EXACTLY 100'
      CASE 1 TO 99
          PRINT 'THE VALUE IS BETWEEN 1 AND 99'
      CASE > 100
          PRINT 'THE VALUE IS GREATER THAN 100'
      CASE ELSE
          PRINT 'THE VALUE IS LESS THAN 100'
END SELECT
```

SLEEP

68.0 SLEEP

Function

The SLEEP statement suspends program execution for a specified number of seconds or until a carriage return is entered from the controlling terminal.

Format

```
SLEEP int-exp
```

Syntax Rules

1. In VAX-11 BASIC, *int-exp* must be between 0 and 2147483647, inclusive; if it is greater than 2147483647, BASIC signals the error "Integer error or overflow" (ERR=51).
2. In BASIC-PLUS-2, *int-exp* must be between 0 and 32767, inclusive; if it is greater than 32767, BASIC signals "Integer error" and does not suspend program execution.

General Rules

1. *Int-exp* is the number of seconds BASIC waits before resuming program execution.
2. Pressing the RETURN key on the controlling terminal cancels the effect of the SLEEP statement.

Examples

```
60      SLEEP 120%
```

69.0 STOP

Function

The STOP statement halts program execution.

Format

```
STOP
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. STOP is valid anywhere in a program.
2. The STOP statement does not close files.

VAX-11 BASIC



1. When a STOP statement executes in a program executed with the RUN command in the BASIC environment, BASIC prints the line number and module name associated with the STOP statement, then displays the BASIC prompt. In response to the prompt, you can type immediate mode statements, CONTINUE to resume program execution, or any valid compiler command. See *BASIC on VAX/VMS Systems* for more information on immediate mode.
2. When a STOP statement is in an executable image, the line number, module name, and a pound sign (#) prompt are printed. In response to the prompt, you can type CONTINUE to continue program execution or EXIT to end the program. If the program module was compiled with the /NOLINE qualifier, no line number is displayed.

BASIC-PLUS-2



1. When a STOP statement executes in a program executed with the RUN/DEBUG command or compiled with the /DEBUG qualifier, control passes to the BASIC-PLUS-2 debugger. The debugger prints the line number and module name associated with the STOP statement, then displays the pound sign (#) prompt. You can then use BASIC-PLUS-2 debugger commands to analyze and debug your program. See Part VI in this manual for information on BASIC-PLUS-2 debugger commands. Use the EXIT command to exit from the debugger and end the program.
2. When a STOP statement executes in a program executed with RUN or compiled without the /DEBUG qualifier, the line number of the STOP statement and a pound sign (#) prompt are printed. In response to the prompt, you can type CONTINUE to continue program execution or EXIT to end the program. The EXIT command closes all files before leaving the program.

Examples

SUB

70.0 SUB

Function

The SUB statement marks the beginning of a BASIC subprogram and specifies its parameters by number and data type.

Format

VAX-11 BASIC

VAX SUB sub-name [pass-mech] [([formal-param],...)]

[statement]...

{ END SUB
SUBEND }

pass-mech: { BY DESC
BY REF }

formal-param:
[data-type] { unsubs-vbl-nam
array-nam ([int-const] , ...) } [= int-const] [pass-mech]
... }

BASIC-PLUS-2

BP2 SUB sub-name [([formal-param],...)]

[statement]...

{ END SUB
SUBEND }

formal-param:
[data-type] { unsubs-vbl-nam
array-nam ([int-const] , ...) }

Syntax Rules

1. *Sub-nam* is the name of the separately compiled subprogram.
2. *Formal-param* specifies the number and type of parameters for the arguments the SUB subprogram expects to receive when invoked.
 - Empty parentheses indicate that the SUB subprogram has no parameters.
 - *Data-type* specifies the data type of a parameter. If you do not specify a data type, parameters are of the default data type and size. When you do specify a data type, all following parameters are of that data type until you specify a new data type. Data-type keywords, size, range, and precision are listed in Table 2 in this manual.
 - If you specify a datatype, *unsubs-vbl-nam* and *array-nam* cannot end in a percent sign (%) or dollar sign (\$).
3. The SUB statement must be the first statement in the SUB subprogram.
4. Compiler directives and comment fields (!), because they are not BASIC statements, may precede the SUB statement. However, they cannot precede the subprogram's first numbered line. Note that REM is a BASIC statement; therefore, it cannot precede the SUB statement.
5. Every SUB statement must have a corresponding END SUB statement or SUBEND statement.
6. Any BASIC statement except END, FUNCTION, END FUNCTION, or EXIT FUNCTION can appear in a SUB subprogram.

VAX-11 BASIC



1. *Sub-nam* can consist of from 1 to 31 characters and must conform to the following rules:
 - The first character of an unquoted name must be an alphabetic character (A through Z). The remaining characters, if present, can be any combination of letters, digits (0 through 9), dollar signs (\$), periods (.), or underscores (_).
 - A quoted name can consist of any combination of printable ASCII characters.
2. *Data-type* can be any BASIC data-type keyword or a data type defined in the RECORD statement.
3. If the data type is STRING, the =*int-const* clause allows you to specify the length of the string. If you do not specify a string length, the default length is 16.
4. *Pass-mech* specifies the parameter passing mechanism by which the subprogram receives arguments when called by non-BASIC programs.
5. A *pass-mech* clause outside the parentheses applies by default to all SUB parameters. A *pass-mech* clause in the *formal-param* list overrides the specified default and applies only to the immediately preceding parameter.
6. If you do not specify a *pass-mech*, the SUB program receives arguments by the default passing mechanisms, as shown in Table 19.

SUB

7. Parameters defined in *formal-param* must agree in number, type, ordinality, and *pass-mech* with the arguments specified in the CALL statement of the calling program.
8. You can specify from 1 to 32 *formal-params*.

BP2

BASIC-PLUS-2

1. *Sub-nam* can consist of from one to six characters and must conform to the following rules:
 - The first character of an unquoted name must be an alphabetic character (A through Z). The remaining characters, if present, can be any combination of letters, digits (0 through 9), dollar signs (\$), or periods (.).
 - A quoted name can consist of any combination of alphabetic characters, digits, dollar signs (\$), periods (.), or spaces.
2. *Data-type* can be any BASIC data-type keyword.
3. Parameters defined in *formal-param* must agree in number, type, and ordinality with the arguments specified in the CALL statement of the calling program.
4. You can specify from one to eight *formal-params*.

General Rules

1. All variables, except those named in MAP and COMMON statements and in DATA statements in a subprogram, are local to that subprogram.
2. BASIC initializes local variables upon each entry to the subprogram as follows:
 - Numeric variables are initialized to zero.
 - String variables are initialized to the null string.

VAX

VAX-11 BASIC

1. SUB subprograms receive parameters BY REF or BY DESC. A SUB subprogram cannot receive any parameter BY VALUE. Table 19 lists and describes VAX-11 BASIC parameter passing mechanisms.
 - BY REF specifies that the subprogram receives the argument's address.
 - BY DESC specifies that the subprogram receives the address of a VAX-11 BASIC descriptor. For information about the format of a VAX-11 BASIC descriptor for strings and arrays, see Appendix C in *BASIC on VAX/VMS Systems*. For information on other types of descriptors, see the *VAX Architecture Handbook*.
2. By default, VAX-11 BASIC subprograms receive numeric *unsubs-vbls* BY REF and all other parameters BY DESC. You can override these defaults for strings and arrays with a BY clause:
 - If you specify a string length with the =*int-const* clause, you must also specify BY REF. If you specify BY REF and do not specify a string length, BASIC uses the default string length of 16.
 - If you specify array bounds, you must also specify BY REF.
3. RECORD data structures are initialized to zero or the null string.
4. VAX-11 BASIC subprograms may be called recursively.

**BASIC-PLUS-2**

1. You cannot specify how subprograms receive parameters in *BASIC-PLUS-2*. Numeric *unsubs-vbls* are received BY REF and string *unsubs-vbls* and entire arrays are received BY DESC. Table 20 lists and describes *BASIC-PLUS-2* BASIC parameter passing mechanisms.
 - BY REF specifies that the subprogram receives the argument's address.
 - BY DESC specifies that the subprogram receives the address of a *BASIC-PLUS-2* descriptor. For information about the format of a *BASIC-PLUS-2* descriptor, see Appendix C in *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems* and *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems*.
2. *BASIC-PLUS-2* subprograms cannot be called recursively.

Examples**VAX-11 BASIC**

```
100    SUB SUB3 BY REF (DOUBLE A, B,          &
                      STRING EMP_NAM = 20 BY DESC,      &
                      WAGE(20))
!
!
!
900    END SUB
```

BASIC-PLUS-2

```
100    SUB SUBPRO (BYTE AGE, DOUBLE WAGE(20,20), STRING EMP_NAME)
!
!
!
900    END SUB
```

SUBEND

71.0 SUBEND

Function

The SUBEND statement is a synonym for END SUB. See the END statement for syntax rules.

Format

```
{ SUBEND  
  END SUB }
```

72.0 SUBEXIT

Function

The SUBEXIT statement is a synonym for the EXIT SUB statement. See the EXIT statement for syntax rules.

Format

```
{ SUBEXIT  
| EXIT SUB }
```

UNLESS

73.0 UNLESS

Function

UNLESS modifies a statement. BASIC executes the modified statement only if a conditional expression is false.

Format

```
statement UNLESS cond-exp
```

Syntax Rules

1. The UNLESS qualifier cannot be used on nonexecutable statements or on statements such as SELECT, IF, and DEF that establish a statement block.
2. Cond-exp can be any conditional expression.

General Rules

1. BASIC executes the statement only if cond-exp is false (value zero).

Examples

```
100      PRINT "A DOES NOT EQUAL 3" UNLESS A% = 3%
```

74.0 UNLOCK

Function

The UNLOCK statement unlocks the current record or bucket locked by the last FIND or GET statement.

Format

```
UNLOCK chnl-exp
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Chnl-exp* is a numeric expression that specifies a channel number associated with a file. It must be immediately preceded by a pound sign (#).

General Rules

1. A file must be opened on *chnl-exp* before UNLOCK can execute.
2. The UNLOCK statement does not apply to files not on disk.
3. If the current record is not locked by a previous GET or FIND statement, the UNLOCK statement has no effect and BASIC does not signal an error.
4. The UNLOCK statement does not affect record buffers.
5. After you execute the UNLOCK statement, you cannot UPDATE or DELETE the current record.

Examples

```
90    UNLOCK #10
```

UNTIL

75.0 UNTIL

Function

The UNTIL statement marks the beginning of an UNTIL loop or modifies the execution of another statement.

Format

Conditional

UNTIL cond-exp

[statement]...

NEXT

Statement Modifier

statement UNTIL cond-exp

Syntax Rules

1. Cond-exp can be any valid relational or logical expression.

Conditional

1. A NEXT statement must end the UNTIL loop.

General Rules

Conditional

1. BASIC evaluates cond-exp before each loop iteration. If the expression is false (value zero), BASIC executes the loop. If the expression is true (value nonzero), control passes to the first executable statement after the NEXT statement.

Statement Modifier

1. BASIC executes the statement repeatedly until cond-exp is true.

Examples

Conditional

```
10      UNTIL A >= 5
          A = A + .01
          TOTAL = TOTAL + 1
NEXT
```

Statement Modifier

```
100     A = A + 1 UNTIL A >= 200
```

76.0 UPDATE

Function

The UPDATE statement replaces a record in a file with a record in the record buffer. UPDATE is valid only on RMS sequential, relative, and indexed files.

Format

```
UPDATE chnl-exp [ , COUNT int-exp ]
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Chnl-exp* is a numeric expression that specifies a channel number associated with a file. It must be immediately preceded by a pound sign (#).
2. *Int-exp* in the COUNT clause specifies the record's size.
3. In BASIC-PLUS-2, if *int-exp* equals zero, the entire record is written to the file.

General Rules

1. The file associated with *chnl-exp* must be a disk file opened with ACCESS MODIFY.
2. Each UPDATE statement must be preceded by a successful GET or FIND operation or BASIC signals "No current record" (ERR = 131). Because FIND locates but does not retrieve records, you must specify a COUNT clause in the UPDATE statement when the preceding operation was a FIND. *Int-exp* in the COUNT clause must exactly specify the size of the old record.
3. After an UPDATE statement executes, there is no Current Record Pointer. The Next Record Pointer is unchanged.
4. The length of the new record must be the same as that of the existing record for all files with fixed-length records. If the new record is larger than the existing record, BASIC truncates the right side of the new record to fit the existing record. If the new record is smaller than the existing record, the file gets corrupted.
5. If you write a record to a sequential file with fixed-length records, *int-exp* in the COUNT clause must exactly match the size of the old record.
6. For sequential files with variable-length records, the length of the new record must be the same as that of the existing record.
 - If you specify a COUNT clause, *int-exp* must match the size of the existing record.
 - In the absence of a COUNT clause, UPDATE uses the record size set by the last successful GET on that channel.

UPDATE

7. For relative files with variable-length records, the new record can be larger or smaller than the record it replaces.
 - The new record must be smaller than or equal to the maximum record size set with the MAP or RECORDSIZE clause when the file was opened.
 - You must use the COUNT clause to specify the size of the new record if it is different from that of the record last accessed by a GET on that channel.
8. For indexed files with variable-length records, the new record can be larger or smaller than the record it replaces.
 - When an indexed file permits duplicate primary keys, an updated record must be the same length as the old one.
 - When the program does not permit duplicate primary keys, the new record can be no longer than the maximum record size specified in the MAP or RECORDSIZE clause when the file was opened and must include at least the primary key field.
 - An alternate key for the new record can differ from that of the existing record only if the OPEN statement for that file specified CHANGES for the alternate key.
9. On *RSTS/E systems*, you can use UPDATE on native-mode files opened with mode 1 bit set (UPDATE mode).

Examples

```
100      UPDATE #4, COUNT 32
```

77.0 WAIT

Function

The WAIT statement specifies the number of seconds the program waits for terminal input before signaling an error.

Format

```
WAIT int-exp
```

Syntax Rules

1. The WAIT statement must precede an INPUT, INPUT LINE, LINPUT, MAT INPUT, or MAT LINPUT statement, or it has no effect.
2. In VAX-11 BASIC, *int-exp* must be between 0 and 2147483647, inclusive; if it is greater than 2147483647, BASIC signals the error "Integer error or overflow" (ERR=51).
3. In BASIC-PLUS-2, *int-exp* must be between 0 and 32767, inclusive; if it is greater than 32767, BASIC signals "Integer error" and the WAIT statement has no effect.

General Rules

1. *Int-exp* is the number of seconds BASIC waits for input before signaling the error, "Keyboard wait exhausted" (ERR = 15).
2. After BASIC executes a WAIT statement, all input statements wait the specified amount of time before BASIC signals an error.
3. WAIT 0 disables the WAIT statement.

Examples

```
50      WAIT 60
          INPUT "YOU HAVE SIXTY SECONDS TO TYPE YOUR NAME"; NAME$
          WAIT 0
```

WHILE

78.0 WHILE

Function

The WHILE statement marks the beginning of a WHILE loop or modifies the execution of another statement.

Format

Conditional

```
WHILE cond-exp  
[ statement ]...  
NEXT
```

Statement Modifier

```
statement WHILE cond-exp
```

Syntax Rules

1. Cond-exp can be any valid relational or logical expression.

Conditional

1. A NEXT statement must end the WHILE loop.

General Rules

Conditional

1. BASIC evaluates cond-exp before each loop iteration. If the expression is true (value non-zero), BASIC executes the loop. If the expression is false (value zero), control passes to the first executable statement after the NEXT statement.

Statement Modifier

1. BASIC executes the statement repeatedly as long as cond-exp is true.

Examples

Conditional

```
10      WHILE X < 100  
           X = X + SQR(X)  
        NEXT
```

Statement Modifier

```
100     X% = X% + 1% WHILE X% < 100%
```

PART V Functions

ABS

1.0 ABS

Function

The ABS function returns a floating-point number that equals the absolute value of a specified floating-point expression.

Format

```
real-vbl = ABS(real-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. BASIC expects the argument of the ABS function to be a *real-exp*. When the argument is a *real-exp*, BASIC returns a value of the same floating-point size. When the argument is not a *real-exp*, BASIC converts the argument to the default floating-point size and returns a value of the default floating-point size.
2. The returned floating-point value is always greater than or equal to zero. The absolute value of zero is zero. The absolute value of a positive number equals that number. The absolute value of a negative number equals that number multiplied by minus one.

Examples

```
400      A = ABS(-100 * G)
410      B = -39.2
420      PRINT ABS(B), A
```

ABS%

2.0 ABS%

Function

The ABS% function returns an integer number that equals the absolute value of a specified integer expression.

Format

```
int-vbl = ABS%(int-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. If you specify a floating-point expression for *int-exp*, BASIC truncates it to an integer of the default integer size.
2. The returned value is always greater than or equal to zero. The absolute value of zero is zero. The absolute value of a positive number equals that number. The absolute value of a negative number equals that number multiplied by minus one.

Examples

```
400      A = ABS%(-100% * G%)  
410      B = -39  
420      PRINT ABS%(B), A
```

3.0 ASCII

Function

The ASCII function returns the ASCII value (base 10) of a string's first character.

Format

```
int-vbl = { ASC
            ASCII } (str-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The ASCII value of a null string is zero.
2. The ASCII function returns an integer value of the default size between 0 and 255, inclusive.

Examples

```
500     ASC_VAL = ASCII(EMP_NAM$)
```

ATN

4.0 ATN

Function

The ATN function returns the angle, in radians, of a specified tangent.

Format

```
real-vbl = ATN(real-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. ATN returns a value from $-\pi/2$ through $\pi/2$.
2. The returned angle is expressed in radians.
3. BASIC expects the argument of the ATN function to be a *real-exp*. When the argument is a *real-exp*, BASIC returns a value of the same floating-point size. When the argument is not a *real-exp*, BASIC converts the argument to the default floating-point size and returns a value of the default floating-point size.

Examples

```
150     ANGLE_RAD = ATN(T)
160     ANGLE_DEG = ANGLE_RAD / (PI / 180)
```

5.0 BUFSIZ

Function

The BUFSIZ function returns the buffer size, in bytes, of a specified channel.

Format

```
int-vbl = BUFSIZ(chnl-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. *Chnl-exp* is the channel expression of an open file. If the specified channel is closed, BUFSIZ returns zero. You cannot include a pound sign (#) in *chnl-exp*.
2. In *BASIC-PLUS-2*, BUFSIZ of channel zero returns the current terminal width or, in a batch stream, 512.
3. In *VAX-11 BASIC*, BUFSIZ of channel zero always returns 132.
4. *Int-vbl* is a WORD integer in *BASIC-PLUS-2* and a LONG integer in *VAX-11 BASIC*.

Examples

```
100      A = BUFSIZ(2)
```

CCPOS

6.0 CCPOS

Function

The CCPOS function returns the output record's current character or cursor position on a specified channel.

Format

```
int-vbl = CCPOS(chnl-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. *Chnl-exp* must specify an open file or terminal. You cannot include a pound sign (#) in *chnl-exp*.
2. If *chnl-exp* is zero, CCPOS returns the current character position of the controlling terminal.
3. The *int-vbl* returned by the CCPOS function is of the default integer size.
4. The CCPOS function counts only characters. If you use cursor addressing sequences such as escape sequences, the value returned will not be the cursor position.
5. The first character position on a line is zero.

Examples

```
100      CHNL0 = CCPOS (0)
```

7.0 CHR\$

Function

The CHR\$ function returns a 1-character string that corresponds to the ASCII value you specify.

Format

```
str-vbl = CHR$(int-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. CHR\$ returns the character whose ASCII value equals *int-exp*. If *int-exp* is greater than 255, BASIC treats it modulo 256. For example, CHR\$(325) is the same as CHR\$(69).
2. BASIC treats all arguments as unsigned 8-bit integers in the range 0 to 255. Negative numbers are treated as the two's complement (for example, -1 is treated as 255).
3. If you specify a floating-point expression for *int-exp*, BASIC truncates it to an integer of the default size.

Examples

```
220      A$ = CHR$(65)
230      PRINT CHR$(VALUE)
```

COMP%

8.0 COMP%

Function

The COMP% function compares two numeric strings and returns a minus one, zero, or one, depending on the results of the comparison.

Format

```
int-vbl = COMP%(str-exp1, str-exp2)
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Str-exp1* and *str-exp2* are numeric strings. They can contain up to 60 ASCII digits and an optional decimal point and leading sign.

General Rules

1. If *str-exp1* is greater than *str-exp2*, COMP% returns one.
2. If the string expressions are equal, COMP% returns zero.
3. If *str-exp1* is less than *str-exp2*, COMP% returns minus one.
4. The value returned by the COMP% function is an integer of the default size.

Examples

```
400      NUM_STRING$ = "35"
425      OLD_NUM_STRING$ = "33.1"
450      ALPHA = COMP%(NUM_STRING$, OLD_NUM_STRING$)
```

9.0 COS

Function

The COS function returns the cosine, in radians, of an angle.

Format

```
real-vbl = COS(real-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The returned value is between minus one and one.
2. BASIC expects the argument of the COS function to be a *real-exp*. When the argument is a *real-exp*, BASIC returns a value of the same floating-point size. When the argument is not a *real-exp*, BASIC converts the argument to the default floating-point size and returns a value of the default floating-point size.

Examples

```
900      COSINE+ALPHA = COS(PI / 2)
```

CTRLC

10.0 CTRLC

Function

The CTRLC function enables CTRL/C trapping. When CTRL/C trapping is enabled, a CTRL/C typed at the terminal causes control to be transferred to the program's error handler.

Format

```
int-vbl = CTRLC
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. After the CTRLC function is invoked, control passes to the error handler when BASIC encounters a CTRL/C. If there is no error handler in a program, the program aborts when BASIC encounters a CTRL/C.
2. CTRL/C trapping is asynchronous; that is, BASIC suspends execution and signals "Programmable ^C trap" (ERR=28) as soon as it detects a CTRL/C. Consequently, a statement can be interrupted while executing. A statement so interrupted may be only partially completed and variables may be left in an undefined state.
3. BASIC can trap more than one CTRL/C error in a program as long as the error does not occur while the error handler is executing. If a second CTRL/C is detected while the error handler is processing the first CTRL/C, the program aborts.
4. On RSX-11M/M-PLUS systems, the task that contains the CTRLC function must be able to attach to a terminal as soon as the CTRLC function is enabled. If another task is attached to the terminal, the task that enabled the CTRLC function terminates with a directive error.
5. The CTRLC function always returns a value of zero.

RSX

Examples

```
10      ON ERROR GOTO 19000
20      Y% = CTRLC
        :
        :
19000  IF (ERR = 28) THEN Y% = CTRLC
19010  RESUME
```

CVT\$\$

11.0 CVT\$\$

Function

The CVT\$\$ function is identical to the EDIT\$ function. See the EDIT\$ function for syntax and general rules.

Note

DIGITAL recommends that you use the EDIT\$ function rather than the CVT\$\$ function for new program development.

Format

```
str-vbl = CVT$$ (str-exp, int-exp)
```

Examples

```
100      A$ = CVT$$ (B$, 48)
```

CVTxx

12.0 CVTxx

Function

Note

CVT functions are supported only for compatibility with BASIC-PLUS. DIGITAL recommends that you use BASIC's dynamic mapping feature or multiple MAP statements for new program development.

The CVT\$% function maps the first 2 characters of a string into a 16-bit integer. The CVT%\$ function translates a 16-bit integer into a 2-character string. The CVTF\$ function maps a 4- or 8-character string into a floating-point variable. The CVT\$F function translates a floating-point number into a 4- or 8-byte character string. The number of characters translated depends on whether the floating-point variable is single- or double-precision.

Format

```
int-vbl = CVT$(str-vbl)

str-vbl = CVT%$(int-vbl)

str-vbl = CVTF$(real-vbl)

real-vbl = CVT$F(str-vbl)
```

Syntax Rules

-  1. In VAX-11 BASIC, CVT functions reverse the order of the bytes when moving them to or from a string. Thus, you can mix MAP and MOVE statements, but you cannot use FIELD and CVT functions on a file if you also plan to use MAP or MOVE.

General Rules

CVT\$%

-  1. If the CVT\$% *str-vbl* has fewer than two characters, BASIC pads the string with nulls.
2. In VAX-11 BASIC, if the default data type is LONG, only two bytes of data are extracted from *str-vbl*; the high-order byte is sign-extended into a longword.
3. The value returned by the CVT\$% function is an integer of the default size.

CVT%\$

1. Only two bytes of data are inserted into *str-vbl*.
2. If you specify a floating-point variable for *int-vbl*, BASIC truncates it to an integer of the default size. If the default size is BYTE and the value of *int-vbl* exceeds 127, BASIC signals an error.

CVT\$F

1. CVT\$F maps four characters when the program is compiled with /SINGLE and eight characters when the program is compiled with /DOUBLE.
2. If *str-vbl* has fewer than four or eight characters, BASIC pads the string with nulls.
3. The *real-vbl* returned by the CVT\$F function is of the default floating-point size. In VAX-11 BASIC, if the default size is GFLOAT or HFLOAT, BASIC signals the error "Floating CVT illegal for GFLOAT or HFLOAT".

CVTF\$

1. The CVTF\$ function maps single-precision numbers to a 4-character string and double-precision numbers to an 8-character string.
2. BASIC expects the argument of the CVTF\$ function to be a *real-exp*. When the argument is a *real-exp*, BASIC returns a value of the same floating-point size. When the argument is not a *real-exp*, BASIC converts the argument to the default floating-point size and returns a value of the default floating-point size. In VAX-11 BASIC, if the default floating-point size is GFLOAT or HFLOAT, BASIC signals the error "Floating CVT illegal for GFLOAT or HFLOAT".

Examples

```
10      A% = CVT$%(EMP_NAME$)
20      A$ = CVT%$(A%)
100     A = CVT$F(EMP_NAME$)
110     EMP_NAME$ = CVTF$(A)
```

Note

DIGITAL does not recommend the CVTxx functions for new program development.

DATE\$

13.0 DATE\$

Function

The DATE\$ function returns a string containing a day, month, and year in the form dd–Mmm–yy.

Format

```
str-vbl = DATE$(int-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Int-exp* can have up to six digits in the form YYYYDDD, where the "Y" characters specify the number of years since 1970 and the "D" characters specify the day of that year.
2. You must fill all three of the "D" positions with digits or zeros before you fill the "Y" positions. For example:
 - DATE\$(121) returns the date 01–May–70, day 121 of the year 1970.
 - DATE\$(1201) returns the date 20–Jul–71, day 201 of the year 1971.
 - DATE\$(12001) returns the date 01–Jan–82, day 1 of the year 1982.
 - DATE\$(10202) returns the date 21–Jul–80, day 202 of the year 1980.
3. If *int-exp* equals zero, DATE\$ returns the current date.

General Rules

1. The *str-exp* returned by the DATE\$ function consists of nine characters and expresses the day, month, and year in the form dd–Mmm–yy.
2. If you specify an invalid date, such as day 385, results are undefined and unpredictable.
3. If you specify a floating-point expression for *int-exp*, BASIC truncates it to an integer of the default size.
4. On RSTS/E systems, the form of the DATE\$ function's output can be changed to ISO format, yy.mm.dd, during the installation procedure, or to the format selected by the system manager at system start-up time.

Examples

```
500      PRINT DATE(9231)
```

14.0 DECIMAL (VAX-11 BASIC Only)

Function

The DECIMAL function converts a numeric expression or numeric string to the DECIMAL data type.

Format

```
decimal-vbl = DECIMAL(exp [, int-const1, int-const2 ] )
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Int-const1* specifies the total number of digits (the precision) and *int-const2* specifies the number of digits to the right of the decimal point (the scale). If you do not specify these values, BASIC uses the d (digits) and s (scale) defaults for the DECIMAL data type.
2. *Int-const1* and *int-const2* must be positive integers in the range 1 to 31, inclusive. *Int-const2* cannot exceed the value of *int-const1*.
3. *Exp* can be either a numeric expression or a numeric string. If a numeric string, it can contain up to 31 ASCII digits and an optional decimal point and leading sign.

General Rules

1. If *exp* is a string, BASIC ignores leading, trailing, and embedded spaces and tabs.
2. The DECIMAL function returns a zero when a string argument contains only spaces and tabs, or when it is null.

Examples

```
100      INPUT "enter a decimal value";DEC_VALUE
          B = DECIMAL(DEC_VALUE,5,2)
          PRINT B, DECIMAL(HOURLY_PAY)
```

DET

15.0 DET

Function

The DET function returns the value of the determinant of the last matrix inverted with the MAT INV function.

Format

```
real-vbl = DET
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. When a matrix is inverted with the MAT INV statement, BASIC calculates the determinant as a by-product of the inversion process. The DET function retrieves this value.
2. If your program does not contain a MAT INV statement, the DET function returns a zero.
3. The value returned by the DET function is a floating-point value of the default floating-point size.

Examples

```
100      DETERMINANT = DET
          PRINT DET
```

16.0 DIF\$

Function

DIF\$ returns a string whose value is the difference between two numeric strings.

Format

```
str-vbl = DIF$(str-exp1, str-exp2)
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Str-exp1* and *str-exp2* specify the numeric strings you want to process. They can contain up to 54 ASCII digits, an optional decimal point, and an optional leading sign.

General Rules

1. BASIC subtracts *str-exp2* from *str-exp1* and stores the result in *str-vbl*.
2. The difference between two integers takes the precision of the larger integer.
3. The difference between two decimal fractions takes the precision of the more precise fraction, unless trailing zeros generate that precision.
4. The difference between two floating-point numbers takes precision as follows:
 - The difference of the integer parts takes the precision of the larger part.
 - The difference of the decimal fraction part takes the precision of the more precise part.
5. BASIC truncates leading and trailing zeros.

Examples

```
500      RESULT$ = DIF$("6776", "-455")
```

ECHO

17.0 ECHO

Function

The ECHO function causes characters to be echoed at a terminal open on a specified channel.

Format

```
int-vbl = ECHO(chnl-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. *Chnl-exp* must specify a terminal. You cannot include a pound sign (#) in *chnl-exp*.
2. The ECHO function is the complement of the NOECHO function; that is, ECHO disables the effect of ECHO and vice versa.
3. The ECHO function has no effect on an unopened channel.
4. The ECHO function always returns a value of zero.

Examples

```
100      Y = ECHO(0)
```

18.0 EDIT\$

Function

The EDIT\$ function performs one or more string editing functions, depending on the value of its integer argument.

Format

```
str-vbl = EDIT$(str-exp, int-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. BASIC edits *str-exp* to produce *str-vbl*.
2. The editing that BASIC performs depends on the value of *int-exp*. Table 22 describes EDIT\$ values and functions.
3. All values are additive; that is, you can perform the editing functions of values 8, 16, and 32 by specifying a value of 56.
4. If you specify a floating-point expression for *int-exp*, BASIC truncates it to an integer of the default size.

Table 22: EDIT\$ Values

Value	Edit Performed
1	Discards each character's parity bit (bit 7)
2	Discards all spaces and tabs
4	Discards all carriage returns, line feeds, form feeds, deletes, escapes, and nulls
8	Discards leading spaces and tabs
16	Converts multiple spaces and tabs to a single space
32	Converts lowercase letters to uppercase letters
64	Converts left bracket ([) to left parenthesis [(] and right bracket (]) to right parenthesis [)]
128	Discards trailing spaces and tabs (same as TRM\$ function)
256	Suppresses all editing for characters within quotation marks; if the string has only one quotation mark, BASIC suppresses all editing for the characters following the quotation mark

Examples

```
100 NEW_STRING$ = EDIT$(OLD_STRING$, 32 + 16)
```

ERL

19.0 ERL

Function

The ERL function returns the number of the line where the last error occurred.

Format

```
int-vbl = ERL
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. If the ERL function is used before an error occurs or after BASIC executes a RESUME statement, results are undefined.
2. The ERL function overrides the /NOLINE qualifier. If a program compiled with the /NOLINE qualifier in effect contains an ERL function, BASIC signals the message "ERL overrides NOLINE".
3. The *int-vbl* returned by the ERL function is a WORD integer in BASIC-PLUS-2 and a LONG integer in VAX-11 BASIC.

Examples

```
300      IF (ERL = 20) THEN RESUME 500
          !
          !
          !
500      PRINT 'Error occurred on line';ERL
```

20.0 ERN\$

Function

The ERN\$ function returns the name of the main program, subprogram, or (VAX-11 BASIC only) DEF that was executing when the last error occurred.

Format

```
str-vbl = ERN$
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. In BASIC-PLUS-2, if the ERN\$ function executes before an error occurs, ERN\$ is undefined. When an error occurs, ERN\$ is set to the name of the module that caused the error.
2. On VAX-11 systems, if the ERN\$ function executes before an error occurs or after BASIC executes a RESUME statement, ERN\$ returns a null string.

Examples

```
2000      PRINT 'Error in module';ERN$
```

ERR

21.0 ERR

Function

The ERR function returns the number of the latest run-time error.

Format

```
int-vbl = ERR
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. If the ERR function is used before an error occurs or after BASIC executes a RESUME statement, results are undefined.
2. The *int-vbl* returned by the ERR function is always a WORD integer in BASIC-PLUS-2 and a LONG integer in VAX-11 BASIC.
3. Appendix B in *BASIC on VAX/VMS Systems*, *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems*, or *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems* lists run-time errors and their numbers.

Examples

```
2000 IF (ERR = 11) THEN RESUME 1000
```

22.0 ERT\$

Function

The ERT\$ function returns explanatory text associated with an error number.

Format

```
str-vbl = ERT$(int-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. *Int-exp* is an error number. It must be between 0 and 255, inclusive.
2. The ERT\$ function can be used at any time to return the text associated with a specified error number.
3. If you specify a floating-point expression for *int-exp*, BASIC truncates it to an integer of the default size.

Examples

```
2020 PRINT 'Error';ERR; on line';ERL
      PRINT ERT$(ERR)
```

EXP

23.0 EXP

Function

The EXP function returns the value of the mathematical constant "e", raised to a specified power.

Format

```
real-vbl = EXP(real-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The EXP function returns the value of "e" raised to the power of *real-exp*.
2. When the default size is SINGLE or DOUBLE, EXP allows arguments between -88 and 88, inclusive. In VAX-11 BASIC, if the default size is GFLOAT, EXP allows arguments in the range -709 to 709, inclusive; if the default size is HFLOAT, the arguments can be in the range -11356 to 11355. When the argument exceeds the upper limit of a range, BASIC signals an error. When the argument exceeds the lower limit of a range, the EXP function returns zero and BASIC does not signal an error.
3. BASIC expects the argument of the EXP function to be a *real-exp*. When the argument is a *real-exp*, BASIC returns a value of the same floating-point size. When the argument is not a *real-exp*, BASIC converts the argument to the default floating-point size and returns a value of the default floating-point size.

Examples

```
100      A = EXP(4.6)
```

24.0 FIX

Function

The FIX function truncates a floating-point value at the decimal point and returns the integer portion represented as a floating-point value.

Format

```
real-vbl = FIX(real-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The FIX function returns the integer portion of a floating-point value, not an integer value.
2. BASIC expects the argument of the FIX function to be a *real-exp*. When the argument is a *real-exp*, BASIC returns a value of the same floating-point size. When the argument is not a *real-exp*, BASIC converts the argument to the default floating-point size and returns a value of the default floating-point size.
3. If *real-exp* is negative, FIX returns the negative integer portion. For example, FIX(-5.2) returns -5.

Examples

```
200      FIX_VALUE = FIX(-3.333)
210      PRINT FIX(24.566), FIX_VALUE
```

FORMAT\$

25.0 FORMAT\$

Function

The FORMAT\$ function converts an expression to a formatted string.

Format

```
str-vbl = FORMAT$(exp, str-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The rules for building a format string are the same as those for printing numbers with the PRINT USING statement.

Examples

```
500      PRINT FORMAT$(12345, "##,###")
```

26.0 FSP\$

Function

The FSP\$ function returns a string describing an open file on a specified channel.

Format

```
str-vbl = FSP$(chnl-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

1. A file must be open on *chnl-exp*. You cannot include a pound sign (#) in *chnl-exp*.
2. The FSP\$ function must come immediately after the OPEN statement for the file.

General Rules

1. In *BASIC-PLUS-2*, byte 1 returns the RMS record format field (RFM). In *VAX-11 BASIC*, byte 1 is undefined.
2. In *BASIC-PLUS-2*, bytes 9 and 10 in the returned string contain the RMS Bucketsize (BKS) or RMS Blocksize (BLS) for magnetic tape. Byte 12 is the number of indexes (keys) in the file. In *VAX-11 BASIC*, the FSP\$ function returns zeros in bytes 9 through 12.
3. Use the FSP\$ function with files opened as ORGANIZATION UNDEFINED. Then use multiple MAP statements to interpret the returned data.
4. See the *BASIC User's Guide* and the *RMS User's Guide* for more information on FSP\$ values.

Note

VAX-11 BASIC supports the FSP\$ function for compatibility with *BASIC-PLUS-2*. However, you can access the information in bytes 9 through 12 in the returned string more efficiently in *VAX-11 BASIC* by using the USEROPEN clause in the OPEN statement.

Examples

```
500     A$ = FSP$(1)
```

FSS\$

27.0 FSS\$ (BASIC-PLUS-2 Only)

Function

The FSS\$ function scans a file name string beginning at a specified position and returns a 30-character string describing the file name and status. Because file specifications differ from system to system, the returned string contains system-specific information. See *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems* or *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems* for more information on the values returned by the FSS\$ function.

Format

```
str-vbl = FSS$(str-vbl, int-vbl)
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Str-vbl* names the file name string to be scanned.
2. *Int-vbl* specifies the character position at which scanning starts.

General Rules

1. If you specify a floating-point variable for *int-vbl*, BASIC truncates it to an integer of the default size.
2. *Str-vbl* is a 30-character string. See *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems* and *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems* for information on the encoding of *str-vbl*.

Note

VAX-11 BASIC does not support the FSS\$ function. However, the DEFAULTNAME clause in the OPEN statement supplies default file specification components.

Examples

```
100      Y$ = FSS$(A$,B%)
```

28.0 GETRFA

Function

The GETRFA function returns the Record File Address (RFA) of the last record accessed in an RMS file open on a specified channel.

Format

```
rfa-vbl = GETRFA(chnl-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Rfa-vbl* is a variable of the RFA data type.
2. *Chnl-exp* is the channel number of an open RMS file. You cannot include a pound sign (#) in the channel expression.
3. You must access a record in the file with a GET, FIND, or PUT statement before using the GETRFA function, or BASIC signals "No current record" (ERR=131).

General Rules

1. There must be a file open on the specified *chnl-exp* or BASIC signals an error.
2. You can use the GETRFA function with RMS sequential, relative, indexed, and (except on RSTS/E systems) block I/O files.
3. The RFA value returned by the GETRFA function can be used only for assignments to and comparisons with other variables of the RFA data type. Comparisons are limited to equal to (=) and not equal to (<>) relational operations.
4. RFA values cannot be printed or used for any arithmetic operations.

Examples

```
100    DECLARE RFA R_ARRAY(99)
        !
        !
        !
500    FOR I% = 1% TO 100%
        PUT #1
        R_ARRAY(I%) = GETRFA(1)
NEXT I%
```

INSTR

29.0 INSTR

Function

The INSTR function searches for a substring within a string. It returns the position of the substring's starting character.

Format

```
int-vbl = INSTR(int-exp, str-exp1, str-exp2)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The INSTR function searches *str-exp1*, the main string, for the first occurrence of a substring, *str-exp2*, and returns the position of the substring's first character.
2. *Int-exp* specifies the character position in the main string at which BASIC starts the search.
3. INSTR returns the character position in the main string at which BASIC finds the substring, except in the following situations:
 - If only the substring is null, and if *int-exp* is less than or equal to zero, INSTR returns a value of one.
 - If only the substring is null, and if *int-exp* is equal to or greater than one and less than or equal to the length of the main string, INSTR returns the value of *int-exp*.
 - If only the substring is null, and if *int-exp* is greater than the length of the main string, INSTR returns the main string's length plus one.
 - If the substring is not null, and if *int-exp* is greater than the length of the main string, INSTR returns zero.
 - If only the main string is null, INSTR returns zero.
 - If both the main string and the substring are null, INSTR returns one.
4. If BASIC cannot find the substring, INSTR returns zero.
5. If *int-exp* does not equal one, BASIC still counts from the beginning of the main string to calculate the starting position of the substring. That is, BASIC counts character positions starting at position one, regardless of where you specify the start of the search. For example, if you specify 10 as the start of the search and BASIC finds the substring at position 15, INSTR returns the value 15.
6. If *int-exp* is less than one, BASIC assumes a starting position of one.
7. If you specify a floating-point expression for *int-exp*, BASIC truncates it to an integer of the default size.

Note

VAX-11 BASIC supplies the INSTR function only for compatibility with BASIC-PLUS-2 and BASIC-PLUS. DIGITAL recommends that you use the POS function for substring searches.

Examples

```
300      Y = INSTR(1, ALPHA$, "JKLMN")
```

INT

30.0 INT

Function

The INT function returns the floating-point value of the largest whole number less than or equal to a specified expression.

Format

```
real-vbl = INT(real-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. If *real-exp* is negative, BASIC returns the largest whole number less than or equal to *real-exp*. For example, INT(-5.3) is -6.
2. BASIC expects the argument of the INT function to be a *real-exp*. When the argument is a *real-exp*, BASIC returns a value of the same floating-point size. When the argument is not a *real-exp*, BASIC converts the argument to the default floating-point size and returns a value of the default floating-point size.
3. This example contrasts the INT and FIX functions:

```
10 TEST_NUM = -32.7
20 PRINT "INT OF -32.7 IS: "; INT(TEST_NUM)
30 PRINT "FIX OF -32.7 IS: "; FIX(TEST_NUM)
40 END
```

RUNNH

```
INT OF -32.7 IS: -33
FIX OF -32.7 IS: -32
```

Examples

```
650      RESULT = INT(6.667)
```

31.0 INTEGER

Function

The INTEGER function converts a numeric expression or numeric string to a specified or default INTEGER data type.

Format

```
int-vbl = INTEGER(exp [ , size ] )  
          , LONG  
          , BYTE  
          , WORD
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Exp* can be either numeric or string. A string expression can contain the ASCII digits 0 through 9, a plus sign (+), or a minus sign (-).

General Rules

1. BASIC evaluates *exp*, then converts it to the specified INTEGER size. If you do not specify a size, BASIC uses the default INTEGER size.
2. If *exp* is a string, BASIC ignores leading and trailing spaces and tabs.
3. The INTEGER function returns a zero when a string argument contains only spaces and tabs, or when it is null.

Examples

```
100      INPUT "Enter a floating-point number";F_P  
PRINT INTEGER(F_P, WORD)
```

LEFT\$

32.0 LEFT\$

Function

The LEFT\$ function extracts a specified substring from a string's left side, leaving the main string unchanged.

Format

str-vbl =	LEFT	{
	LEFT\$	

(str-exp, int-exp)

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The LEFT\$ function extracts a substring from the left of the specified *str-exp* and stores it in *str-vbl*.
2. *Int-exp* specifies the number of characters to be extracted from the left side of the *str-exp*.
3. If *int-exp* is less than one, LEFT\$ returns a null string.
4. If *int-exp* is greater than the length of *str-exp*, LEFT\$ returns the entire string.
5. If you specify a floating-point expression for *int-exp*, BASIC truncates it to an integer of the default size.

Note

VAX-11 BASIC supplies the LEFT\$ function only for compatibility with BASIC-PLUS and BASIC-PLUS-2. DIGITAL recommends that you use the SEG\$ function for substring extraction.

Examples

```
410      SUB_STRING$ = LEFT$(ALPHA$, 5%)
```

33.0 LEN

Function

The LEN function returns an integer value equal to the number of characters in a specified string.

Format

```
int-vbl = LEN(str-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. If *str-exp* is null, LEN returns a value of zero.
2. The length of *str-exp* includes leading, trailing, and embedded blanks. Tabs in *str-exp* are treated as a single space.
3. The value returned by the LEN function is an integer of the default size.

Examples

```
200      LENGTH = LEN(ALPHA$)
```

LOC

34.0 LOC (VAX-11 BASIC Only)

Function

The LOC function returns a longword integer specifying the virtual address of a simple or subscripted variable. For dynamic strings, the LOC function returns the address of the descriptor rather than the address of the data.

Format

```
int-vbl = LOC(vbl)
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Vbl* can be any local or external, simple or subscripted variable.
2. *Vbl* cannot be a virtual array element.

General Rules

1. The LOC function always returns a LONG value.

Examples

```
100      DECLARE LONG B, A
200      A = LOC(B)
```

35.0 LOG

Function

The LOG function returns the natural logarithm (base "e") of a specified number. The LOG function is the inverse of the EXP function.

Format

```
real-vbl = LOG(real-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. Real-exp must be greater than zero. An attempt to find the logarithm of zero or a negative number causes BASIC to signal "Illegal argument in LOG" (ERR=53).
2. The LOG function uses the mathematical constant "e" as a base. BASIC approximates "e" to be 2.718281828459045 (double precision).
3. The LOG function returns the exponent to which "e" must be raised to equal real-exp.
4. BASIC expects the argument of the LOG function to be a real-exp. When the argument is a real-exp, BASIC returns a value of the same floating-point size. When the argument is not a real-exp, BASIC converts the argument to the default floating-point size and returns a value of the default floating-point size.

Examples

```
10      EXPONENT = LOG(100.35)
```

LOG10

36.0 LOG10

Function

The LOG10 function returns the common logarithm (base 10) of a specified number.

Format

```
real-vbl = LOG10(real-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. *Real-exp* must be larger than zero. An attempt to find the logarithm of zero or a negative number causes BASIC to signal “Illegal argument in LOG” (ERR=53).
2. The LOG10 function returns the exponent to which 10 must be raised to equal *real-exp*.
3. BASIC expects the argument of the LOG10 function to be a *real-exp*. When the argument is a *real-exp*, BASIC returns a value of the same floating-point size. When the argument is not a *real-exp*, BASIC converts the argument to the default floating-point size and returns a value of the default floating-point size.

Examples

```
600      EXP_BASE_10 = LOG10(250)
```

37.0 MAG

Function

The MAG function returns a number that equals the absolute value of a specified expression. The returned value has the same data type as the expression.

Format

```
vbl = MAG(exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The returned value is always greater than or equal to zero. The absolute value of zero is zero. The absolute value of a positive number equals that number. The absolute value of a negative number equals that number multiplied by minus one.
2. The MAG function is similar to the ABS function in that it returns the absolute value of a number. The ABS function, however, takes a floating-point argument and returns a floating-point value. The MAG function takes an argument of any numeric data type and returns a value of the same data type as the argument.

Examples

```
100      DECLARE LONG A
200      PRINT MAG(A)
```

MAGTAPE

38.0 MAGTAPE

Function

The MAGTAPE function permits your program to control unformatted magnetic tape files.

Format

```
int-vbl1 = MAGTAPE(int-const, int-vbl2, chnl-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Int-const* is an integer between 1 and 9, inclusive, that specifies the code for the MAGTAPE function you want to perform. Function codes are described in Table 23. See *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems* or *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems* for more information on magnetic tape function codes.
2. VAX-11 BASIC supports only function code 3, rewind tape. Table 24 explains how to perform other MAGTAPE functions on VAX/VMS Systems.
3. *Int-vbl2* is an integer parameter for function codes 4, 5, and 6.
 - *Int-vbl2* for function 4 is a value from 1 to 32767, inclusive, that specifies the number of records to skip.
 - *Int-vbl2* for function 5 is a value from 1 to 32767, inclusive, that specifies the number of records to backspace.
 - *Int-vbl2* for function 6 specifies the density and/or parity of the magnetic tape drive. See *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems* or *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems* for information on setting the density and parity of the magnetic tape drive.
4. The *chnl-exp* associated with the magnetic tape must be open.

Table 23: MAGTAPE Function Codes

Code	Meaning
1	Rewind and take tape off-line
2	Write end-of-file (EOF) mark
3	Rewind tape
4	Advance tape a specified number of records
5	Backspace tape a specified number of records
6	Set density and parity
7	Return status of tape
8	Return characteristics of file open on tape (<i>RSTS/E only</i>)
9	Rewind when file is closed (<i>RSTS/E only</i>)

General Rules

1. You cannot use the MAGTAPE function with RMS files.
2. Function codes 8 and 9 are valid only on *RSTS/E* systems.
3. If *int-const* equals 1, 2, 3, 6, or 9, *int-vbl1* always equals zero.
4. If *int-const* equals 4, *int-vbl1* is an integer of the default size that equals the number of records not skipped.
5. If *int-const* equals 5, *int-vbl1* is an integer of the default size that equals the number of records not backspaced.
6. If *int-const* equals 7, *int-vbl1* is a 16-bit integer that reflects the status of the specified magnetic tape. See *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems* or *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems* for information on bit values and meaning.
7. If *int-const* equals 9, *int-vbl1* is a 16-bit integer that describes the file characteristics of the specified magnetic tape. See the *RSTS/E Programming Manual* for information on bit values and meaning.
8. On *RSTS/E* systems, the "rewind when file is closed" function (9) must appear after the OPEN statement and before the CLOSE statement associated with the specified magnetic tape.

RSTS**Table 24: Performing MAGTAPE Functions in VAX-11 BASIC**

MAGTAPE Function	VAX-11 BASIC Actions
Write EOF	Close channel
Skip records	Perform GETs, ignore data until reaching desired record
Backspace	Rewind tape, perform GETs, ignore data until reaching desired record
Set density	Use the DCL MOUNT command qualifiers (/DENSITY and /FOREIGN), or the \$MOUNT system service
Status	Use the USEROPEN clause in the OPEN statement to access the RAB\$L_STS and the RAB\$L_STV

Examples

200 I = MAGTAPE (1,0,2)

MAR

39.0 MAR (VAX-11 BASIC Only)

Function

The MAR function returns the current margin width of a specified channel.

Format

```
int-vbl = { MAR  
           MAR% } (chnl-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The file associated with *chnl-exp* must be open. You cannot include a pound sign (#) in *chnl-exp*.
2. If *chnl-exp* specifies a terminal, the MAR function returns zero if you have not set a margin width with the MARGIN statement. If you have set a margin width, the MAR function returns that number.
3. The value returned by the MAR function is an integer of the default size.

Examples

```
200      WIDTH = MAR(0)
```

40.0 MID\$

Function

The MID\$ function extracts a specified substring from the middle of a string, leaving the main string unchanged.

Format

str-vbl =	{ MID MID\$ } (str-exp, int-exp1, int-exp2)
-----------	--

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The MID\$ function extracts a substring from *str-exp* and stores it in *str-vbl*. *Int-exp1* specifies the position of the substring's first character. *Int-exp2* specifies the length of the substring.
2. If *int-exp1* is less than one, BASIC assumes a starting position of one.
3. If *int-exp1* is greater than the length of *str-exp*, MID\$ returns a null string.
4. If *int-exp2* is greater than the length of *str-exp*, BASIC returns the string that begins at *int-exp1* and includes all characters remaining in the string.
5. If *int-exp2* is less than or equal to zero, MID\$ returns a null string.
6. If you specify a floating-point expression for *int-exp1* or *int-exp2*, BASIC truncates it to an integer of the default size.

Note

VAX-11 BASIC supplies the MID\$ function only for compatibility with BASIC-PLUS and BASIC-PLUS-2. DIGITAL recommends that you use the SEG\$ function for substring extraction.

Examples

```
220     NEW_STRING$ = MID$(OLD_STRING$, 5, 8)
```

NOECHO

41.0 NOECHO

Function

The NOECHO function disables echoing of input on a terminal.

Format

```
int-vbl = NOECHO(chnl-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. *Chnl-exp* must specify a terminal. You cannot include a pound sign (#) in *chnl-exp*.
2. If you specify NOECHO, BASIC still accepts characters typed on the terminal as input, but the characters do not echo on the terminal.
3. The NOECHO function is the complement of the ECHO function; that is, NOECHO disables the effect of ECHO and vice versa.
4. NOECHO always returns zero.

Examples

```
500      Y = NOECHO(0)
```

42.0 NUM

Function

The NUM function returns the row number of the last data element transferred into an array by a MAT I/O statement.

Format

```
int-vbl = NUM
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. NUM returns zero if it is invoked before BASIC has executed any MAT I/O statements.
2. For a two-dimensional array, NUM returns an integer specifying the row number of the last data element transferred into the array. For a one-dimensional array, NUM returns the number of elements entered.
3. The value returned by the NUM function is an integer of the default size.

Examples

```
10     ROW_COUNT = NUM
```

NUM2

43.0 NUM2

Function

The NUM2 function returns the column number of the last data element transferred into an array by a MAT I/O statement.

Format

```
int-vbl = NUM2
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. NUM2 returns zero if it is invoked before BASIC has executed any MAT I/O statements or if the last array element transferred was in a one-dimensional list.
2. The NUM2 function returns an integer specifying the column number of the last data element transferred into an array.
3. The value returned by the NUM2 function is an integer of the default size.

Examples

```
100     COLUMN-COUNT = NUM2
```

44.0 NUM\$

Function

The NUM\$ function evaluates a numeric expression and returns a string of characters in PRINT statement format, with leading and trailing spaces.

Format

```
str-vbl = NUM$(num-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. If *num-exp* is positive, the first character in the string expression is a space. If *num-exp* is negative, the first character is a minus sign.
2. The NUM\$ function does not include trailing zeros in the returned string. If all digits to the right of the decimal point are zeros, NUM\$ omits the decimal point as well.
3. When *num-exp* has an integer portion of six digits or less (for example, 1234.567), BASIC rounds the number to six digits (1234.57). If *num-exp* has seven decimal digits or more, BASIC rounds the number to six digits and prints it in E format.
4. When *num-exp* is between 0.1 and 1, BASIC rounds it to six digits. When *num-exp* is smaller than 0.1, BASIC rounds it to six digits and prints it in E format.
5. If *num-exp* is a longword integer, the returned string can have up to 10 digits.
6. The last character in the returned string is a space.

Examples

```
660      NUMBER$ = NUM$(34.55000 / 32.4)
```

NUM1\$

45.0 NUM1\$

Function

The NUM1\$ function changes a numeric expression to a numeric character string without leading and trailing spaces.

Format

```
str-vbl = NUM1$(num-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The NUM1\$ function returns a string consisting of numeric characters and a decimal point that corresponds to the value of *num-exp*. Leading and trailing spaces are not included in the returned string.
2. The NUM1\$ function returns:
 - Three digits for BYTE integers
 - Five digits for SINGLE floating-point numbers and WORD integers
 - Ten digits for LONG integers
 - Sixteen digits for DOUBLE floating-point numbers
 - Fifteen digits for GFLOAT floating-point numbers (VAX-11 BASIC only)
 - Thirty-three digits for HFLOAT floating-point numbers (VAX-11 BASIC only)
3. The NUM1\$ function does not produce E notation.

Examples

```
750      NUMBER$ = NUM1$(PI / 2)
```

46.0 ONECHR (BASIC-PLUS-2 Only)

Function

The ONECHR function allows single-character input (ODT submode) on a specified channel. This function must be used in conjunction with the GET statement.

Format

```
int-vbl = ONECHR(chnl-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Chnl-exp* must refer to an open terminal. You cannot include a pound sign (#) in *chnl-exp*.
2. The ONECHR function must be used immediately before the GET statement.

General Rules

1. BASIC disables the ONECHR function immediately after a GET statement executes. Therefore, your program must invoke the ONCHR function for each single character input you want to perform.
2. Control passes to the program as soon as you enter a character. You do not have to type a line terminator.

Examples

```
100    OPEN "TI:" FOR INPUT AS FILE #1%
110    Y% = ONECHR(1%)
120    GET #1%
      MOVE FROM #1%, A$ = 1%
      PRINT A$
```

Note

VAX-11 BASIC does not support the ONECHR function. To perform this function in VAX-11 BASIC, you must use the system service SYS\$QIO.

PLACE\$

47.0 PLACE\$

Function

The PLACE\$ function explicitly changes the precision of a numeric string. PLACE\$ returns a numeric string, truncated or rounded, according to the value of an integer argument you supply.

Format

```
str-vbl = PLACE$(str-exp, int-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Str-exp* specifies the numeric string you want to process. It can contain up to 60 ASCII digits and an optional decimal point and leading sign.
2. If *str-exp* consists of more than 60 characters, BASIC signals the error "Illegal number" (ERR=52).
3. *Int-exp* specifies the numeric precision of *str-exp*. Table 25 shows examples of rounding and truncation and the values of *int-exp* that produce them.

General Rules

1. *Str-exp* is rounded and/or truncated according to the value of *int-exp*.
2. If *int-exp* is between -60 and 60, rounding and truncation occur as follows:
 - For positive integer expressions, rounding occurs to the right of the decimal place. For example, if *int-exp* is 1, rounding occurs one digit to the right of the decimal place (the number is rounded to the nearest tenth). If *int-exp* is 2, rounding occurs two digits to the right of the decimal place (the number is rounded to the nearest hundredth), and so on.
 - If *int-exp* is zero, BASIC rounds to the nearest unit.
 - For negative integer expressions, rounding occurs to the left of the decimal point. If *int-exp* is -1, for example, BASIC moves the decimal point one place to the left, then rounds to units. If *int-exp* is -2, rounding occurs two places to the left of the decimal point; BASIC moves the decimal point two places to the left, then rounds to tens.
3. If *int-exp* is between 9940 and 10060, truncation occurs:
 - If *int-exp* is 10000, BASIC truncates the number at the decimal point.
 - If *int-exp* is greater than 10000 (10000 plus n) BASIC truncates the numeric string n places to the right of the decimal point. For example, if *int-exp* is 10001 (10000 plus 1), BASIC truncates the number starting one place to the right of the decimal point. If *int-exp* is 10002 (10000 plus 2), BASIC truncates the number starting two places to the right of the decimal point, and so on.

PLACE\$

- If *int-exp* is less than 10000 (10000 minus n), BASIC truncates the numeric string n places to the left of the decimal point. For example, if *int-exp* is 9999 (10000 minus 1), BASIC truncates the number starting one place to the left of the decimal point. If *int-exp* is 9998 (10000 minus 2), BASIC truncates the number starting two places to the left of the decimal point, and so on.
4. If *int-exp* is not between -60 and 60 or 9940 and 10060, BASIC returns zero.
 5. If you specify a floating-point expression for *int-exp*, BASIC truncates it to an integer of the default size.
 6. Table 25 shows examples of rounding and truncation and the values of *int-exp* that produce them. The number used is 123456.54321.

Examples

```
500      NUMBER$ = PLACE$(OLD_NUMBER$, 10001)
```

PLACE\$

Table 25: Rounding and Truncation of 123456.654321

Int-exp	Effect	Value Returned
-5	Rounded to 100,000s and truncated	1
-4	Rounded to 10,000s and truncated	12
-3	Rounded to 1000s and truncated	123
-2	Rounded to 100s and truncated	1235
-1	Rounded to 10s and truncated	12346
0	Rounded to units and truncated	123457
1	Rounded to tenths and truncated	123456.7
2	Rounded to hundredths and truncated	123456.65
3	Rounded to thousandths and truncated	123456.654
4	Rounded to ten-thousandths and truncated	123456.6543
5	Rounded to hundred-thousandths and truncated	123456.65432
9,995	Truncated to 100,000s	1
9,996	Truncated to 10,000s	12
9,997	Truncated to 1000s	123
9,998	Truncated to 100s	1234
9,999	Truncated to 10s	12345
10,000	Truncated to units	123456
10,001	Truncated to tenths	12345.6
10,002	Truncated to hundredths	123456.65
10,003	Truncated to thousandths	123456.654
10,004	Truncated to ten-thousandths	123456.6543
10,005	Truncated to hundred-thousandths	123456.65432

POS

48.0 POS

Function

The POS function searches for a substring within a string and returns the substring's starting character position.

Format

```
int-vbl = POS(str-exp1, str-exp2, int-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The POS function searches *str-exp1*, the main string, for the first occurrence of *str-exp2*, the substring, and returns the position of the substring's first character.
2. *Int-exp* specifies the character position in the main string at which BASIC starts the search.
3. If *int-exp* is greater than the length of the main string, POS returns zero.
4. POS always returns the character position in the main string at which BASIC finds the substring:
 - If only the substring is null, and if *int-exp* is less than or equal to zero, POS returns a value of one.
 - If only the substring is null, and if *int-exp* is equal to or greater than one and less than or equal to the length of the main string, POS returns the value of *int-exp*.
 - If only the substring is null and if *int-exp* is greater than the length of the main string, POS returns the main string's length plus one.
 - If only the main string is null, POS returns zero.
 - If both the main string and the substring are null, POS returns one.
5. If BASIC cannot find the substring, POS returns zero.
6. If *int-exp* is less than one, BASIC assumes a starting position of one.
7. If *int-exp* does not equal one, BASIC still counts from the string's beginning to calculate the starting position of the substring. That is, BASIC counts character positions starting at position one, regardless of where you specify the start of the search. For example, if you specify 10 as the start of the search and BASIC finds the substring at position 15, POS returns the value 15.

POS

8. If you know that the substring is not near the beginning of the string, specifying a starting position greater than one speeds program execution by reducing the number of characters BASIC must search.
9. If you specify a floating-point expression for *int-exp*, BASIC truncates it to an integer of the default size.

Examples

```
400      Y = POS(ALPHA$, "JKLMN", 1)
```

49.0 PROD\$

Function

The PROD\$ function returns a numeric string that is the product of two numeric strings. The precision of the returned numeric string depends on the value of an integer argument.

Format

```
str-vbl = PROD$(str-exp1, str-exp2, int-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Str-exp1* and *str-exp2* specify the numeric strings you want to process. They can contain up to 60 ASCII digits and an optional decimal point and leading sign.
2. If *str-exp* consists of more than 60 characters, BASIC signals the error "Illegal number" (ERR=52).
3. *Int-exp* specifies the numeric precision of *str-exp*. Table 25 shows examples of rounding and truncation and the values of *int-exp* that produce them.

General Rules

1. *Str-exp* is rounded and/or truncated according to the value of *int-exp*.
2. If *int-exp* is between -60 and 60, rounding and truncation occur as follows:
 - For positive integer expressions, rounding occurs to the right of the decimal place. For example, if *int-exp* is 1, rounding occurs one digit to the right of the decimal place (the number is rounded to the nearest tenth). If *int-exp* is 2, rounding occurs two digits to the right of the decimal place (the number is rounded to the nearest hundredth), and so on.
 - If *int-exp* is zero, BASIC rounds to the nearest unit.
 - For negative integer expressions, rounding occurs to the left of the decimal point. If *int-exp* is -1, for example, BASIC moves the decimal point one place to the left, then rounds to units. If *int-exp* is -2, rounding occurs two places to the left of the decimal point; BASIC moves the decimal point two places to the left, then rounds to tens.
3. If *int-exp* is between 9940 and 10060, truncation occurs:
 - If *int-exp* is 10000, BASIC truncates the number at the decimal point.
 - If *int-exp* is greater than 10000 (10000 plus *n*), BASIC truncates the numeric string *n* places to the right of the decimal point. For example, if *int-exp* is 10001 (10000 plus 1), BASIC truncates the number starting one place to the right of the decimal point. If *int-exp* is 10002 (10000 plus 2), BASIC truncates the number starting two places to the right of the decimal point, and so on.

(continued on next page)

PROD\$

- If *int-exp* is less than 10000 (10000 minus n), BASIC truncates the numeric string n places to the left of the decimal point. For example, if *int-exp* is 9999 (10000 minus 1), BASIC truncates the number starting one place to the left of the decimal point. If *int-exp* is 9998 (10000 minus 2), BASIC truncates the number starting two places to the left of the decimal point, and so on.
4. If *int-exp* is not between -60 and 60 or 9940 and 10060, BASIC returns zero.
 5. If you specify a floating-point expression for *int-exp*, BASIC truncates it to an integer of the default size.
 6. Table 25 shows examples of rounding and truncation and the values of *int-exp* that produce them. The number used is 123456.654321.

Examples

```
300      PRODUCT$ = PROD$("88793", Z$, 0)
```

50.0 QUO\$

Function

The QUO\$ function returns a numeric string that is the quotient of two numeric strings. The precision of the returned numeric string depends on the value of an integer argument.

Format

```
str-vbl = QUO$(str-exp1, str-exp2, int-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Str-exp1* and *str-exp2* specify the numeric strings you want to process. They can contain up to 60 ASCII digits and an optional decimal point and leading sign.
2. If *str-exp* consists of more than 60 characters, BASIC signals the error "Illegal number" (ERR=52).
3. *Int-exp* specifies the numeric precision of *str-exp*. Table 25 shows examples of rounding and truncation and the values of *int-exp* that produce them.

General Rules

1. *Str-exp* is rounded and/or truncated according to the value of *int-exp*.
2. If *int-exp* is between -60 and 60, rounding and truncation occur as follows:
 - For positive integer expressions, rounding occurs to the right of the decimal place. For example, if *int-exp* is 1, rounding occurs one digit to the right of the decimal place (the number is rounded to the nearest tenth). If *int-exp* is 2, rounding occurs two digits to the right of the decimal place (the number is rounded to the nearest hundredth), and so on.
 - If *int-exp* is zero, BASIC rounds to the nearest unit.
 - For negative integer expressions, rounding occurs to the left of the decimal point. If *int-exp* is -1, for example, BASIC moves the decimal point one place to the left, then rounds to units. If *int-exp* is -2, rounding occurs two places to the left of the decimal point; BASIC moves the decimal point two places to the left, then rounds to tens.
3. If *int-exp* is between 9940 and 10060, truncation occurs:
 - If *int-exp* is 10000, BASIC truncates the number at the decimal point.
 - If *int-exp* is greater than 10000 (10000 plus n), BASIC truncates the numeric string n places to the right of the decimal point. For example, if *int-exp* is 10001 (10000 plus 1), BASIC truncates the number starting one place to the right of the decimal point. If *int-exp* is 10002 (10000 plus 2), BASIC truncates the number starting two places to the right of the decimal point, and so on.

(continued on next page)

QUO\$

- If *int-exp* is less than 10000 (10000 minus n), BASIC truncates the numeric string n places to the left of the decimal point. For example, if *int-exp* is 9999 (10000 minus 1), BASIC truncates the number starting one place to the left of the decimal point. If *int-exp* is 9998 (10000 minus 2), BASIC truncates the number starting two places to the left of the decimal point, and so on.
4. If *int-exp* is not between –60 and 60 or 9940 and 10060, BASIC returns zero.
 5. If you specify a floating-point expression for *int-exp*, BASIC truncates it to an integer of the default size.
 6. Table 25 shows examples of rounding and truncation and the values of *int-exp* that produce them. The number used is 123456.654321.

Examples

```
200      QUOTIENT$ = QUO$("453.221", "30", 10000)
```

51.0 RAD\$

Function

The RAD\$ function converts a specified integer to a 3-character string in Radix-50 format.

Format

```
str-vbl = RAD$(int-vbl)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The RAD\$ function converts *int-vbl* to a 3-character string in Radix-50 format and stores it in *str-vbl*. Radix-50 format allows you to store three characters of data as a 2-byte integer.
2. See Appendix C in *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems* or *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems* for information on the Radix-50 character set and ASCII/Radix-50 equivalents.
3. VAX-11 BASIC supports the RAD\$ function, but not its complement, the FSS\$ function. DIGITAL recommends that you use Run-Time Library routines for Radix-50 operations.
4. If you specify a floating-point variable for *int-vbl*, BASIC truncates it to an integer of the default size.



Examples

```
100      RADIX$ = RAD$(999)
```

RCTRLC

52.0 RCTRLC

Function

The RCTRLC function disables CTRL/C trapping.

Format

```
int-vbl = RCTRLC
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. After BASIC executes the RCTRLC function, a CTRL/C typed at the terminal returns you to command level (BASIC or monitor).
2. RCTRLC always returns a zero.

Examples

```
200      Y = RCTRLC
```

53.0 RCTRLO

Function

The RCTRLO function cancels the effect of a CTRL/O typed on a specified channel.

Format

```
int-vbl = RCTRLO (chnl-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. *Chnl-exp* must refer to a terminal.
2. RCTRLO has no effect if the specified channel is open to a device that does not use the CTRL/O convention.
3. If you type a CTRL/O to cancel terminal output, nothing is printed on the specified terminal until your program executes the RCTRLO or until you type another CTRL/O, at which time normal terminal output resumes.
4. The RCTRLO function always returns a zero.

Examples

```
10      PRINT "A" FOR I% = 1% TO 100%
      Y% = RCTRLO(0%)
      PRINT "Normal output is resumed"
```

REAL

54.0 REAL

Function

The REAL function converts a numeric expression or numeric string to a specified or default floating-point data type.

Format

```
real-vbl = REAL(exp [ , size ] )  
          [ , DOUBLE ]      (VAX-11 only)  
          [ , GFLOAT ]     (VAX-11 only)  
          [ , HFLOAT ]
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Exp* can be either a numeric expression or a numeric string. If a numeric string, *exp* can contain the ASCII digits 0 through 9, uppercase E, and an optional decimal point and leading sign.

General Rules

1. BASIC evaluates *exp*, then converts it to the specified REAL size. If you do not specify a size, BASIC uses the default REAL size.
2. BASIC ignores leading and trailing spaces and tabs if *exp* is a string.
3. The REAL function returns a zero when a string argument contains only spaces and tabs, or when the argument is null.

Examples

```
100      INPUT "Enter a number";INT_NUM  
          PRINT REAL(INT_NUM, DOUBLE)
```

55.0 RECOUNT

Function

The RECOUNT function returns the number of characters transferred by the last input operation.

Format

```
int-vbl = RECOUNT
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The RECOUNT value is set by every input operation on any channel, including channel zero.
 - After an input operation from your terminal, RECOUNT contains the number of characters (bytes), including line terminators, transferred.
 - After accessing a file record, RECOUNT contains the number of characters in the record.
2. Because RECOUNT is reset by every input operation on any channel, use the RECOUNT function to copy the RECOUNT value to a different storage location before executing another input operation.
3. If an error occurs during an input operation, the value of RECOUNT is undefined.
4. RECOUNT is unreliable after a CTRL/C interrupt because the CTRL/C trap may have occurred before BASIC set the value for RECOUNT.
5. The RECOUNT function returns a LONG value in VAX-11 BASIC and a WORD value in BASIC-PLUS-2.

Examples

```
200  CHARACTER_COUNT = RECOUNT
      PRINT CHARACTER_COUNT; ' characters received'
```

RIGHT\$

56.0 RIGHT\$

Function

The RIGHT\$ function extracts a substring from a string's right side, leaving the main string unchanged.

Format

str-vbl =	$\begin{cases} \text{RIGHT} \\ \text{RIGHT\$} \end{cases}$	(str-exp, int-exp)
-----------	--	--------------------

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The RIGHT\$ function extracts a substring from *str-exp* and stores the substring in *str-vbl*. The substring begins with the character in the position specified by *int-exp* and ends with the rightmost character in the string.
2. If *int-exp* is less than or equal to zero, RIGHT\$ returns the entire string.
3. If *int-exp* is greater than the length of *str-exp*, RIGHT\$ returns a null string.
4. If you specify a floating-point expression for *int-exp*, BASIC truncates it to an integer of the default size.

Examples

```
600      NEW_STRING$ = RIGHT$(ALPHA$, 21)
```

Note

VAX-11 BASIC includes the RIGHT\$ function only for compatibility with BASIC-PLUS and BASIC-PLUS-2. DIGITAL recommends using the SEG\$ function for substring extraction.

57.0 RND

Functions

The RND function returns a random number greater than or equal to zero and less than one.

Format

```
real-vbl = RND
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The RND function returns a pseudorandom number if not preceded by a RANDOMIZE statement; that is, each time a program runs, BASIC generates the same random number or series of random numbers.
2. If the RND function is preceded by a RANDOMIZE statement, BASIC generates a different random number or series of numbers each time a program executes.
3. In *BASIC-PLUS-2*, the RND function returns a floating-point value of the default size. In *VAX-11 BASIC*, RND always returns a single-precision value.

Examples

```
990      R_NUM = RND
```

SEG\$

58.0 SEG\$

Function

The SEG\$ function extracts a substring from a main string, leaving the original string unchanged.

Format

```
str-vbl = SEG$(str-exp, int-exp1, int-exp2)
```

General Rules

1. BASIC extracts the substring from *str-exp*, the main string, and stores the substring in *str-vbl*. The substring begins with the character in the position specified by *int-exp1* and ends with the character in the position specified by *int-exp2*.
2. If *int-exp1* is less than one, BASIC assumes a value of one.
3. If *int-exp1* is greater than *int-exp2* or the length of *str-exp*, the SEG\$ function returns a null string.
4. If *int-exp1* equals *int-exp2*, the SEG\$ function returns the character at the position specified by *int-exp1*.
5. Unless *int-exp2* is greater than the length of *str-exp*, the length of the returned substring equals *int-exp2* minus *int-exp1* plus one. If *int-exp2* is greater than the length of *str-exp*, the SEG\$ function returns all characters from the position specified by *int-exp1* to the end of *str-exp*.
6. If you specify a floating-point expression for *int-exp1* or *int-exp2*, BASIC truncates it to an integer of the default size.

Examples

```
300     CENTER$ = SEG$(ALPHA$, 15, 20)
```

59.0 SGN

Function

The SGN function determines whether a numeric expression is positive, negative, or zero. It returns a one if the expression is positive, a minus one if the expression is negative, and zero if the expression is zero.

Format

```
int-vbl = SGN(real-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. If *real-exp* does not equal zero, SGN returns $\text{ABS}(\text{real-exp})/\text{real-exp}$.
2. If *real-exp* equals zero, SGN returns zero.
3. SGN returns an integer of the default size.

Examples

```
750      SIGN = SGN(-4535 / 6-3000)
```

SIN

60.0 SIN

Function

The SIN function returns the sine, in radians, of an angle.

Format

```
real-vbl = SIN(real-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The returned value is between minus one and one.
2. BASIC expects the argument of the ABS function to be a *real-exp*. When the argument is a *real-exp*, BASIC returns a value of the same floating-point size. When the argument is not a *real-exp*, BASIC converts the argument to the default floating-point size and returns a value of the default floating-point size.

Examples

```
100      S1_ANGLE = SIN(PI / 2)
```

61.0 SPACE\$

Function

The SPACE\$ function creates a string containing a specified number of spaces.

Format

```
str-vbl = SPACE$(int-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. *Int-exp* specifies the number of spaces in the returned string.
2. BASIC treats an *int-exp* less than zero as zero.
3. If you specify a floating-point expression for *int-exp*, BASIC truncates it to an integer of the default size.

Examples

```
880      FILLER$ = SPACE$(32)
```

SQR

62.0 SQR

Function

The SQR function returns the square root of a positive number.

Format

$$\text{real-vbl} = \begin{cases} \text{SQRT} \\ \text{SQR} \end{cases} (\text{real-exp})$$

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

-  1. VAX-11 BASIC signals the error "Imaginary square roots" (ERR=54) and program execution stops when *real-exp* is negative.
-  2. BASIC-PLUS-2 returns the warning message "%Imaginary square roots" and the square root of the absolute value of the expression when *real-exp* is negative. The program does not stop executing.
- 3. BASIC assumes that the argument of the SQR function is a *real-exp*. When the argument is a *real-exp*, BASIC returns a value of the same floating-point size. When the argument is not a *real-exp*, BASIC returns a value of the default floating-point size.

Examples

425 ROOT = SQR(35*37)

63.0 STATUS

Function

The STATUS function returns an integer value containing information about the last opened channel. Your program can test each bit to determine the status of the channel.

Format

```
int-vbl = STATUS
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The STATUS function returns a WORD integer in *BASIC-PLUS-2* and a LONG integer in *VAX-11 BASIC*.
2. The value returned by the STATUS function is undefined until BASIC executes an OPEN statement.
3. The STATUS value is set by every input operation on any channel. Therefore, the STATUS value should be copied to a different storage location before your program executes another input operation.
4. The syntax for STATUS is the same for VAX-11, RSTS/E, and RSX-11M/M-PLUS systems. However, the returned information is different on every system.
5. Depending on the error, the STATUS function on RSX-11M/M-PLUS systems displays a value representing one of the following:
 - The RMS-11 primary status field (STS) or the RMS secondary status field (STV). See the *RMS-11 MACRO User's Guide* for more information.
 - The device characteristics after an RMS-11 OPEN file operation (set by the DEV field of the FAB). See the *RMS-11 MACRO User's Guide* for more information.
 - The Directive Status Word (\$DSW) and its corresponding error code, in the event of a directive error. See the *RSX-11M/M-PLUS Mini Reference* for the error codes.
 - The STATUS field of a QIO. See the *RSX-11M/M-PLUS I/O Drivers Reference Manual* for more information.
 - The first word of a GETLUN directive describing device characteristics. See the *RSX-11M/M-PLUS Executive Reference Manual*.

RSX

See *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems* for information on STATUS values set for an OPEN file operation with no errors.

STATUS

RSTS

6. Depending on the error, the STATUS function on *RSTS/E systems* displays a value representing one of the following:
 - The RMS-11 primary status field (STS) or the RMS secondary status field (STV). See the *RMS-11 MACRO User's Guide* for more information.
 - The device characteristics after an RMS-11 OPEN file operation (set by the DEV field of the FAB). See the *RMS-11 MACRO User's Guide* for more information.

For OPEN operations where no errors occur, the status word describes the device characteristics of the FIRQB and FQFLAG field. The first 7 bits describe the device, and bits 7 through 15 describe characteristics of the OPEN statement. See the *BASIC-PLUS Language Manual* and the *RSTS/E System Directives Manual* for more information on STATUS values.

VAX

7. In VAX-11 BASIC, if an error occurs during an input operation, the value of STATUS is undefined. When no error occurs, the six low-order bits of the returned value contain information about the type of device accessed by the last input operation. Table 26 lists STATUS bits set by VAX-11 BASIC.

Table 26: VAX-11 BASIC STATUS Bits

Bit Set	Device Type
0	Record-oriented device
1	Carriage-control device
2	Terminal
3	Directory device
4	Single directory device
5	Sequential block-oriented device (magnetape)

Examples

150 Y% = STATUS

64.0 STR\$

Function

The STR\$ function changes a numeric expression to a numeric character string without leading and trailing spaces.

Format

```
str-vbl = STR$(num-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. If *num-exp* is negative, the first character in the returned string is a minus sign.
2. Like the NUM\$ function, the STR\$ function produces E notation. Unlike the NUM\$ function, the STR\$ function does not return leading or trailing spaces.
3. Like the NUM1\$ function, the STR\$ function does not return leading or trailing spaces. Unlike the NUM1\$ function, the STR\$ function produces E notation.
4. When you print a number whose integer portion is six digits or less (for example, 1234.567), BASIC rounds the number to six digits (1234.57). If a number has seven integer digits or more, BASIC rounds the number to six digits and prints it in E format.
5. When you print a number with magnitude between 0.1 and 1, BASIC rounds it to six digits. When you print a number with magnitude smaller than 0.1, BASIC rounds it to six digits and prints it in E format.

Examples

```
800      Z$ = STR$(65)
```

STRING\$

65.0 STRING\$

Function

The STRING\$ function creates a string containing a specified number of identical characters.

Format

```
str-vbl = STRING$(int-exp1, int-exp2)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. *Int-exp1* specifies the character string's length. VAX-11 BASIC signals the error "String too long" (ERR=227) if *int-exp1* is greater than 65535. BASIC-PLUS-2 signals the error "Integer error" (ERR=51) if *int-exp* is greater than 32767.
2. If *int-exp1* is less than or equal to zero, BASIC treats it as zero.
3. *Int-exp2* is the decimal ASCII value of the character that makes up the string. This value is treated modulo 256.
4. BASIC treats all arguments as unsigned 8-bit integers. Negative numbers are treated as the two's complement (for example, -1 is treated as 255).
5. If either *int-exp1* or *int-exp2* is a floating-point expression, BASIC truncates it to an integer of the default size.

Examples

```
340     A_STRING$ = STRING$(10, 65)
```

66.0 SUM\$

Function

The SUM\$ function returns a string whose value is the sum of two numeric strings.

Format

```
str-vbl = SUM$(str-exp1, str-exp2)
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Str-exp1* and *str-exp2* specify the numeric strings you want to process. They can contain up to 54 ASCII digits and an optional decimal point and leading sign.

General Rules

1. BASIC adds *str-exp2* to *str-exp1* and stores the result in *str-vbl*.
2. If *str-exp1* and *str-exp2* are integers, *str-vbl* takes the precision of the larger string unless trailing zeros generate that precision.
3. If *str-exp1* and *str-exp2* are decimal fractions, *str-vbl* takes the precision of the more precise fraction unless trailing zeros generate that precision.
4. SUM\$ omits trailing zeros to the right of the decimal point.
5. The sum of two floating-point numbers takes precision as follows:
 - The sum of the integer parts takes the precision of the larger part.
 - The sum of the decimal fraction part takes the precision of the more precise part.
6. SUM\$ truncates leading and trailing zeros.

Examples

```
600      SIGMA$ = SUM$("234.444", A$)
```

SWAP%

67.0 SWAP%

Function

The SWAP% function transposes a WORD integer's bytes.

Format

```
int-vbl = SWAP%(int-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

1. SWAP% is a WORD function. BASIC evaluates *int-exp* and converts it to the WORD data type, if necessary.

General Rules

1. BASIC transposes the bytes of *int-exp* and returns a WORD integer.

Examples

```
500      S_25 = SWAP%(3)
```

68.0 SYS (BASIC-PLUS-2 on RSTS/E Only)

Function

The SYS function lets you perform special I/O functions, establish special characteristics for a job, set terminal characteristics, and cause the monitor to execute special operations.

Format

```
str-vbl = SYS(str-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

1. Str-exp is a *RSTS/E* SYS call code. See the *RSTS/E Programming Language* manual for a complete list of SYS call codes and their meanings.

General Rules

1. Because SYS calls request that the *RSTS/E* monitor perform an operation, often the function performed has no counterpart on other host systems. However, for compatibility with *RSTS/E BASIC-PLUS*, VAX-11 BASIC supports a subset of SYS calls. Table 27 lists the VAX-11 BASIC subset of *RSTS/E* SYS calls.

Table 27: VAX-11 BASIC Subset of RSTS/E SYS Calls



Code	Function
0	Cancel CTRL/O
1	Not implemented
2	Enable echo
3	Disable echo
4	Not implemented
5	Exit with no prompt
6	Call File Processor
7	Get core common; can be used only between BASIC images
8	Put core common; can be used only between BASIC images
9	Exit and clear program
10	Reserved
11	Cancel type ahead
12	Not implemented
13	Reserved
14	Not implemented

(continued on next page)

SYS

Table 27: VAX-11 BASIC Subset of RSTS/E SYS Calls (Cont.)

These FIP calls (and only these) are also supported:

Code	Function
-23	Terminate file name string scan
-13	Set priority (can set only priority; requires ALTPRI privilege)
-10	Begin file name string scan
-7	Enable CTRL/C trap
9	Get error message (VAX-11 BASIC error message)
10	Assign a device
11	Deassign a device
12	Deassign all devices
18	Send/receive message (requires SYSNAM privilege)
22	Send/receive message (cannot get job number, privileges, or receive selection; cannot use DECnet; requires PRMMBX privilege)

Examples

```
100      OPEN User_Keyboard$ AS FILE #1
200      TMP$ = SYS(CHR$(11)) ! Cancel any typeahead from user
300      LINUT 'Enter the first line of text'!User_input$
```

69.0 TAB

Function

When used with the PRINT statement, the TAB function moves the cursor or print mechanism right to a specified column.

Format

```
str-vbl = TAB(int-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Int-exp* specifies the column number of the cursor or print mechanism.

General Rules

1. You cannot TAB beyond the current MARGIN restriction.
2. The leftmost column position is zero.
3. If *int-exp* is less than the current cursor position, the TAB function has no effect.
4. The TAB function can move the cursor or print mechanism only from the left to the right.
5. You can use more than one TAB function in the same PRINT statement.
6. Use semicolons to separate multiple TAB functions in a single statement. If you use commas, BASIC moves to the next print zone before executing the TAB function.
7. The TAB function is valid only for terminals.
8. If you specify a floating-point expression for *int-exp*, BASIC truncates it to an integer of the default size.

Examples

```
200 PRINT A$;TAB(15);B$;TAB(30);"HELLO"
```

TAN

70.0 TAN

Function

The TAN function returns the tangent, in radians, of an angle.

Format

```
real-vbl = TAN(real-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. BASIC expects the argument of the ABS function to be a *real-exp*. When the argument is a *real-exp*, BASIC returns a value of the same floating-point size. When the argument is not a *real-exp*, BASIC converts the argument to the default floating-point size and returns a value of the default floating-point size.

Examples

```
550      X = TAN(2*PI)
```

71.0 TIME

Function

The TIME function returns the time of day (in seconds) as a floating-point number. On VAX-11 and RSTS/E systems the TIME function can also return CPU time and device connect time.

Format

```
real-vbl = TIME(int-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The value returned by the TIME function depends on the value of *int-exp*.
2. If *int-exp* equals 0, TIME returns the number of seconds since midnight.
3. BASIC-PLUS-2 on RSX-11M/M-PLUS systems accepts only an argument of zero. All other arguments to the TIME function are undefined and cause BASIC to signal "Not implemented" (ERR=250).
4. VAX-11 BASIC and BASIC-PLUS-2 on RSTS/E systems also accept arguments from 1 through 4 and return values as shown in Table 28. All other arguments to the TIME function are undefined and cause BASIC to signal "Not implemented" (ERR=250).
5. In BASIC-PLUS-2, the TIME function returns a floating-point value of the default size. In VAX-11 BASIC, TIME always returns a single-precision value.
6. If you specify a floating-point expression for *int-exp*, BASIC truncates it to an integer of the default size.

RSX

TIME

Table 28: TIME Function Values

Argument Value:	VAX-11 BASIC Returns:	BASIC-PLUS-2 on RSTS/E Systems Returns:
1	The current job's CPU time in tenths of a second	The current job's CPU time in tenths of a second
2	The current job's connect time in minutes	The current job's connect time in minutes
3	Zero	Kilo-core ticks
4	Zero	Device time in minutes

Examples

```
150      PRINT TIME(0)
```

72.0 TIME\$

Function

The TIME\$ function returns a string displaying the time of the day.

Format

```
str-vbl = TIME$(int-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. If *int-exp* equals zero, TIME\$ returns the current time of day.
2. *Int-exp* is the number of minutes before midnight. *Str-vbl* is the time of day.
3. The value of *int-exp* must be in the range 0 to 1440, inclusive, or BASIC signals an error.
4. In VAX-11 BASIC the TIME\$ function uses a 12-hour, AM/PM clock. Before 12:00 noon, TIME\$ returns HH:MM AM, and after 12:00 noon, HH:MM PM.
5. In BASIC-PLUS-2 the TIME\$ function uses either an AM/PM or a 24-hour clock. The clock type is an installation option.
6. On RSTS/E systems only, the clock type can also be set by the system manager at system start-up time.
7. If you specify a floating-point expression for *int-exp*, BASIC truncates it to an integer of the default size.

Examples

```
200      CURRENT_TIME$ = TIME$(0)
```

TRM\$

73.0 TRM\$

Function

The TRM\$ function removes all trailing blanks and tabs from a specified string.

Format

```
str-vbl = TRM$(str-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The returned *str-vbl* is the same as *str-exp* with all the trailing blanks and tabs removed.

Examples

```
600      NEW_STRING$ = TRM$(OLD_STRING$)
```

74.0 VAL

Function

The VAL function converts a numeric string to a floating-point value.

Format

```
real-vbl = VAL(str-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Str-exp* can contain the ASCII digits 0 through 9, uppercase E, and an optional decimal point and leading sign.
2. BASIC ignores leading, trailing, and embedded spaces and tabs.

General Rules

1. If *str-exp* is null, or contains only spaces and tabs, VAL returns a zero.
2. The value returned by the VAL function is of the default floating-point size.

Examples

```
100      REAL_NUM = VAL("990.32")
```

VAL%

75.0 VAL%

Function

The VAL% function converts a numeric string to an integer.

Format

```
int-vbl = VAL%(str-exp)
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Str-exp* can contain the ASCII digits 0 through 9 and an optional leading sign.
2. BASIC ignores leading, trailing, and embedded spaces and tabs.

General Rules

1. If *str-exp* is null or contains only spaces and tabs, VAL% returns a value of zero.
2. The value returned by the VAL% function is an integer of the default size.
3. If *str-exp* contains a decimal point, BASIC signals the error "Illegal number" (ERR=52).

Examples

```
100      A = VAL%"999"
```

76.0 XLATE

Function

The XLATE function translates one string to another by referencing a table string you supply.

Format

```
str-vbl = XLATE(str-exp1, str-exp2)
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Str-exp1* is the input string. *Str-exp2* is the table string, and *str-vbl* is the returned string.

General Rules

1. *Str-exp2* can contain up to 256 ASCII characters, numbered from 0 to 255; the position of each character in the string corresponds to an ASCII value. Because zero is a valid ASCII value (null), the first position in the table string is position zero.
2. XLATE scans *str-exp1* character by character, from left to right. It finds the ASCII value *n* of the first character in *str-exp1* and extracts the character it finds at position *n* in *str-exp2*. XLATE then appends the character from *str-exp2* to *str-vbl*. XLATE continues this process, character by character, until the end of *str-exp1* is reached.
3. The output string may be smaller than the input string.
 - XLATE does not translate nulls. If the character at position *n* in *str-exp2* is a null, XLATE does not append that character to *str-vbl*.
 - If the ASCII value of the input character is outside the range of positions in *str-exp2*, XLATE does not append any character to *str-vbl*.

Examples

```
100      OUTPUT$ = XLATE(INPUT$, TABLE$)
```


PART VI

BASIC-PLUS-2

Debugger Commands

Note

This section describes *BASIC-PLUS-2* debugger commands. See *BASIC on VAX/VMS Systems* for information on the *VAX-11 Symbolic Debugger*.

BASIC-PLUS-2 debugger commands help you locate run-time errors and debug program modules interactively in the BASIC environment or from monitor level. To use debugger commands, you must compile or run at least one program module using the /DEBUG qualifier.

When you run a task-built program, execution stops at the first line number of the first module compiled with the /DEBUG qualifier and control passes to the debugger. When you run a program in the BASIC environment, control passes to the debugger when the first line number of the program executed with the RUN/DEBUG command is encountered or when the first line number of an object module compiled with the /DEBUG qualifier and loaded with the LOAD command is encountered.

When control passes to the *BASIC-PLUS-2* debugger, an identifying message and prompt are displayed:

```
DEBUG:module-name  
#
```

Module-name is the name of the first program module encountered that was compiled with the /DEBUG qualifier or executed with the RUN/DEBUG command. The pound sign (#) prompt signals you to enter debugger commands. For example:

```
*BREAK 300 RET  
*TRACE RET  
*CONTINUE RET
```

In the example on the previous page, the BREAK command will cause execution to stop at the first statement on line 300; the TRACE command will cause the line numbers and statement numbers to be displayed as they execute. The CONTINUE command causes the program module to execute until line 300; input, output, and the processing proceeds as usual until the breakpoint is reached. When the BREAK command has successfully executed, the debugger displays a message identifying your current position in the program module and prompts for another debugger command. For example:

```
at line 100 statement 1
at line 100 statement 2
at line 100 statement 3
at line 200 statement 1
at line 200 statement 2
BREAK at line 300 statement 1 DEBTST

*
```

The identifying message names the debugger command that stopped program execution (BREAK), the line number and statement where execution stopped, and the name of the currently executing module (DEBTST in the above example). If the main program is executing, no module name is displayed. The # prompt signals you to enter more debugger commands.

Use the EXIT command to exit from the debugger and end program execution.

When you compile a program with the /DEBUG qualifier, BASIC links the debugger program module from the *BASIC-PLUS-2* OTS to your program. This increases the size of your task by at least 4K bytes. When you task-build the program, the debugger records are included in the executable task image. When you run the executable image, *BASIC-PLUS-2* accesses these records and you can use the debugger commands described in the following sections.

No debugger records are generated for program modules not compiled with the /DEBUG qualifier. Thus, you cannot access information, trace module execution, or establish breakpoints in modules not compiled with the /DEBUG qualifier. You can, however, use debugger commands to access information about the entire task if you compile at least one program module with the /DEBUG qualifier.

After you have debugged your module and changed the source code where necessary, compile the module without the /DEBUG qualifier to reduce memory requirements.

Debugger commands are described on the following pages. All debugger commands except BREAK ON can be abbreviated to three letters.

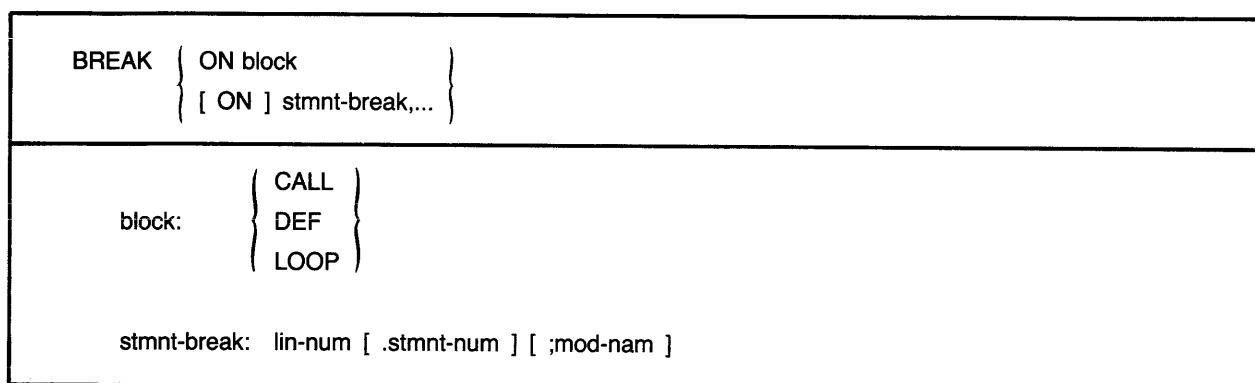
For an example of a complete debugging session and more information on using the *BASIC-PLUS-2* debugger, see *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems* or *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems*.

1.0 BREAK (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The BREAK command lets you stop program execution at program line numbers, particular statements, or at the beginning of CALL statements, user-defined functions, and FOR, UNTIL, and WHILE loops. The program stops before executing the specified breakpoint.

Format



Syntax Rules

1. The BREAK command with no parameters sets a breakpoint at each line number. The program stops at each line number before executing any statements on the line.
2. *Block* specifies a block statement. The ON keyword is required. You can specify only one block statement in a BREAK ON statement:
 - BREAK ON CALL stops execution each time BASIC executes a CALL statement to a subprogram. The program stops before any statements in the subprogram execute. If you are executing a task-built program, both the calling and the called program must be compiled with the /DEBUG qualifier or the BREAK ON CALL command has no effect. If you are executing a program in the BASIC environment, the called program must be compiled with the /DEBUG qualifier.
 - BREAK ON DEF stops execution each time BASIC encounters a user-defined function in a module compiled with the /DEBUG qualifier. The statement stops before any statements in the function execute.
 - BREAK ON LOOP stops execution each time BASIC encounters a FOR, WHILE, or UNTIL statement or modifier. The program stops each time the program loops back to the loop statement. The program stops after the loop is initialized or incremented, but before any statements in the loop execute.

BREAK

3. *Stmt-break* specifies a particular line number or statement where execution is to stop.
 - *Lin-num* specifies a program line.
 - *Stat-num* specifies a particular statement associated with *lin-num*. The period (.) is required and must immediately follow the line number. BASIC signals an error if you include a space between *lin-num* and *stat-num*. The cross-reference listing file lists statements on multi-statement lines by number.
 - *Mod-nam* specifies that the preceding breakpoint is a breakpoint only in the named program module. The semicolon (;) is required.
 - You can specify a maximum of 10 *stmt-break* breakpoints. If you specify more than 10 breakpoints, BASIC signals the error, "No room".

General Rules

1. If you specify a *stmt-break* or *block* that does not exist, no break occurs, BASIC does not signal an error or warning, and the program executes normally.
2. To disable program breakpoints, use the UNBREAK command.

Examples

```
*BREAK 30,2, 500;PROGB, 2000,3;PROGC  
*BREAK ON CALL  
*CON  
  
BREAK at line 30 statement 2  
*
```

CONTINUE

2.0 CONTINUE (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The CONTINUE command continues program execution.

Format

```
CONTINUE
```

Syntax Rules

None

General Rules

1. When you have finished entering debugger commands, type CONTINUE to resume program execution.

Examples

```
*BREAK ON LOOP
```

```
*CON
```

CORE

3.0 CORE (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The CORE command returns the number of words currently allocated in memory for your entire task. Use the CORE command in conjunction with the FREE, STRING, and I/O BUFFER commands to determine how memory is allocated for your task.

Format

```
CORE
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The CORE command displays the total number of words currently allocated to your task.
2. The maximum allowable program space is 32K words on *RSX-11M/M-PLUS systems* and 31K words on *RSTS/E systems*, minus the size of your resident library. Consult *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems* or *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems* for more information on program space and resident libraries.
3. You can use the CORE command only when at least one program module has been compiled with the /DEBUG qualifier. Note, however, that the number returned by the CORE command reflects the memory allocation for the entire task, not just the module compiled with /DEBUG.
4. Knowing the size of core memory can help you control the size of your program and optimize accordingly. Consult *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems* or *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems* for information on optimization.

Examples

```
#CORE  
CORE = 7647
```

```
#
```

4.0 ERL (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The ERL command returns the number of the line executing when the last error occurred.

Format

```
ERL
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The ERL command tells you the number of the line executing when the last error occurred.
2. If no errors have occurred, the result returned by ERL is undefined.

Examples

```
#ERL  
ERL = 1050  
*
```

ERN

5.0 ERN (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The ERN command returns the 1– to 6–character name of the program module that was executing when the last successfully handled error occurred. If a fatal error was not successfully trapped, control passes from the debugger to command level.

Format

```
ERN
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The ERN command returns a module name only when an error has been successfully handled.
2. If no errors have occurred, the result returned by ERN is undefined.

Examples

```
*ERN  
ERN$ = CHECKS  
*
```

6.0 ERR (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The ERR command returns the error number of the last error that occurred.

Format

```
ERR
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The ERR command tells you the number of the last error.
2. If no errors have occurred, the result returned by ERR is undefined.
3. Refer to Appendix B in *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems* or *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems* for a list of errors and their numbers.

Examples

```
*ERR  
ERR = 55  
*
```

EXIT

7.0 EXIT (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The EXIT command returns control to BASIC if you are executing a program in the BASIC environment and to command level if you are executing a task-built program.

Format

```
EXIT
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The EXIT command does not close open channels.

Examples

```
*EXIT
```

8.0 FREE (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The FREE command returns the number of words currently available in memory for I/O and string operations before BASIC must perform another memory extension. Use the FREE command in conjunction with the CORE, STRING, and I/O BUFFER commands to determine how memory is allocated for your task.

Format

```
FREE
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The FREE command returns an integer corresponding to the number of free words available in memory for I/O and string operations.
2. When string or I/O operations exceed the available free space, BASIC extends the amount of memory allocated for your task.
3. Knowing the amount of free space available can help you control the size of your program and optimize accordingly. Consult *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems* or *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems* for information on optimization.

Examples

```
#FREE  
FREE = 184  
*
```

I/O BUFFER

9.0 I/O BUFFER (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The I/O BUFFER command returns the number of words currently allocated for I/O buffer space. Use the I/O BUFFER command in conjunction with the CORE, STRING, and FREE commands to determine how memory is allocated for your task.

Format

```
I/O BUFFER
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The I/O BUFFER command tells you the total number of words allocated for I/O buffer space.
2. Knowing the size of the I/O buffer can help you control the size of your program and optimize accordingly. Consult *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems* or *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems* for information on optimization.

Examples

```
*I/O BUFFER  
I/O BUFFERS = 1765  
*
```

10.0 LET (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The LET command allows you to change the contents of program variables.

Format

```
LET vbl1 = { vbl2
              const }
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Vbl1* specifies the numeric or string variable you want to change. If you attempt to create a new variable with the LET command, BASIC signals “Illegal syntax in LET”.
2. *Const* or *vbl2* specifies the new value for *vbl1*. The LET command allows constants or variables as arguments but does not allow expressions.
3. You cannot set string variables to a null string with the LET command. If you try to do so, BASIC signals “Illegal syntax in LET”. However, you can set a variable to the null string in your source program and then assign that variable to another variable with the LET debugger command. For example:

```
1000    NULL$= ""
1010    A$="HELLO"
1020    PRINT A$
```

Compile or run the program with the /DEBUG qualifier, establish a breakpoint at line 1020, and set A\$ to the null string with the LET command:

```
BREAK at line 1020
```

```
*LET A$ = NULL$
```

General Rules

1. You can change only one variable with each LET command. To change more than one program variable, you must enter more than one LET command.
2. When executing a task-built program, you can change program variables only in program modules compiled with the /DEBUG qualifier.
3. You cannot access program variables across program modules. That is, you cannot access a variable in SUB1 from the main program or from another subprogram, and you cannot access a variable in the main program from a subprogram.
4. BASIC signals “Illegal syntax in LET” when you try to access a variable across modules or in a module not compiled with the /DEBUG qualifier.

LET

Examples

```
*LET A% = 15%
*LET NAME$ = "MITCHELL"
*
```

11.0 PRINT (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The PRINT command allows you to display the current contents of program variables.

Format

```
PRINT vbl
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Vbl* specifies the numeric or string variable you want to display.
2. The PRINT command does not allow constants or expressions as arguments.

General Rules

1. You can display only one variable with each PRINT command. To display more than one program variable, you must enter more than one PRINT command.
2. When executing a task-built program, you can access only those variables contained in program modules that have been compiled with the /DEBUG qualifier.
3. You cannot access variables across program modules. That is, the variable you want to display must exist in the current program module. If you try to display a variable in another program module, BASIC signals “Illegal syntax in PRINT”.

Examples

```
*PRINT C  
23  
*
```

RECOUNT

12.0 RECOUNT (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The RECOUNT command tells you how many characters were transferred by the last I/O operation.

Format

```
RECOUNT
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The RECOUNT command tells you how many characters, including blanks and terminators, were transferred by the last input or output statement.
2. If your program has open files and reaches the end of the file before closing open channels or executing the END statement, the debugger signals "End-of-file on device". If you then try to continue program execution by typing the CONTINUE command, the debugger signals "Can't CONTINUE or STEP". When you then EXIT the debugger mode, files are not closed, and data is not transferred. If you include an error handler to pass control to the END statement, BASIC will close files and transfer data.

Examples

```
*RECOUNT  
RECOUNT = 19  
*
```

13.0 REDIRECT (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The REDIRECT command allows you to direct all debugging I/O operations to a specified terminal.

Format

```
REDIRECT term-nam
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Term-nam* specifies the name of an unattached terminal. It must be an unquoted string that corresponds to a terminal name, or BASIC signals the error "Cannot open device".

General Rules

1. After you type the REDIRECT command in response to the debugger prompt, all debugger I/O is directed to the terminal you specify. The program executes on the terminal that issued the RUN command.
2. Use another REDIRECT command to direct debugger I/O back to the terminal on which the program is executing.
3. You can use the REDIRECT command only when at least one program module has been compiled with the /DEBUG qualifier.
4. If the specified terminal is allocated, the debugger will signal "Cannot open device" on RSTS/E systems. On RSX-11M/M-PLUS systems, the debugger stops executing until the specified terminal is available and does not signal an error.

Examples

```
*REDIRECT KB2:
```

STATUS

14.0 STATUS (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The STATUS command returns a word-length integer that contains information about the last opened file.

Format

```
STATUS
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The debugger returns the last STATUS word.
2. Depending on the error, the STATUS word on RSX-11M/M-PLUS systems displays a value representing one of the following:
 - The RMS-11 primary status field (STS) or the RMS secondary status field (STV). See the *RMS-11 MACRO User's Guide* for more information.
 - The device characteristics after an RMS-11 OPEN file operation set by the DEV field of the FAB. See the *RMS-11 MACRO User's Guide* for more information.
 - In the event of a directive error, the Directive Status Word (\$DSW) and its corresponding error code. See the *RSX-11M/M-PLUS Mini Reference* for the error codes.
 - The STATUS field of a QIO. See the *RSX-11M/M-PLUS I/O Driver's Reference Manual* for more information.
 - The first word of a GETLUN directive describing device characteristics. See the *RSX-11M/M-PLUS Executive Reference Manual* for more information.
 - See *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems* for information on STATUS values set for an OPEN file operation with no errors.
3. Depending on the error, the STATUS word on RSTS/E systems displays a value representing one of the following:
 - The RMS-11 primary status field (STS) or the RMS secondary status field (STV). See the *RMS-11 MACRO User's Guide* for more information.
 - The device characteristics after an RMS-11 OPEN file operation set by the DEV field of the FAB. See the *RMS-11 MACRO User's Guide* for more information.
 - For OPEN operations where no errors occur, the status word describes the device characteristics of the FIRQB and FQFLAG field. The first 7 bits describe the device, and bits 7 through 15 describe characteristics of the OPEN statement. See the *BASIC-PLUS Language Manual* and the *RSTS/E System Directives Manual* for more information on STATUS values.

RSX

RSTS

STATUS

Examples

```
*STATUS  
STATUS = 31  
*
```

STEP

15.0 STEP (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The STEP command causes the program module to execute statement by statement, stopping after a specified number of statements have executed.

Format

```
STEP [ int-const ]
```

Syntax Rules

1. *Int-const* specifies the number of statements to be executed before the program stops. It must be a positive integer from 1 to 32767.
2. STEP with no *int-const* is the same as specifying STEP 1. Only one statement executes and the program then stops.
3. If you do not include a space between the command and the *int-const*, only one statement executes.

General Rules

1. When executing a task-built program, only statements in program modules compiled with the /DEBUG qualifier in effect are counted. If a module not compiled with the /DEBUG qualifier executes before a module compiled with the /DEBUG qualifier, the program does not stop until the specified number of statements in the module compiled with /DEBUG have executed.
2. Typing a carriage return in response to the # prompt is the same as typing STEP 1 or STEP with no *int-const*. The next statement executes and the program stops.
3. Typing a line feed in response to the # prompt has no effect. The debugger waits for a carriage return and then signals an error.

Examples

```
BREAK at line 1050 statement 1
*STEP 2
*CON
STEP at line 1050 statement 3
*
```

16.0 STRING (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The STRING command tells you how many words are currently allocated for string storage. Use the STRING command in conjunction with the CORE, I/O BUFFER, and FREE commands to determine how memory is allocated for your task.

Format

```
STRING
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The STRING command tells you how many words are allocated for string operations for your entire task, not just for the currently executing program module.
2. Knowing how much memory is allocated to string operations can help you control the size of your program and optimize accordingly. See *BASIC on RSX-11M/M-PLUS Systems* or *BASIC on RSTS/E Systems* for information on optimization.

Examples

```
#STRING  
STRING = 2086  
#
```

TRACE

17.0 TRACE (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The TRACE command displays line numbers and statement numbers as the program executes.

Format

```
TRACE
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. The TRACE command does not affect program execution or breakpoints.
2. When executing a task-built program, you can use the TRACE command only in program modules that have been compiled with the /DEBUG qualifier.
3. The TRACE command remains in effect until the program module finishes executing, until you specify UNTRACE after a program breakpoint, or until BASIC reaches a module not compiled with the /DEBUG qualifier. When BASIC returns to a module compiled with DEBUG, tracing resumes.

Examples

```
*TRACE  
*BREAK 300  
*CONT  
at line 100 statement 1  
at line 100 statement 2  
at line 200 statement 1  
BREAK at line 300 statement 1  
*BREAK 500  
*CONT
```

18.0 UNBREAK (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The UNBREAK command disables previously set breakpoints in programs and subprograms.

Format

UNBREAK	{ ON block [ON] stmt-break,... }
block:	{ CALL DEF LOOP }
stmt-break: lin-num [.statnum] [;mod-nam]	

Syntax Rules

1. The ON keyword is required to disable *block* breakpoints.
2. UNBREAK with no parameters disables all previously specified *stmt-break* breakpoints. *Block* breakpoints are not disabled.
3. *Stmt-break* specifies a particular line number or statement where execution is to stop.
 - *Lin-num* specifies a program line.
 - *Stat-num* specifies a particular statement associated with *lin-num*. The period (.) is required and must immediately follow the line number. BASIC signals an error if you include a space between *lin-num* and *stat-num*. The listing file lists statements on multi-statement lines by number.
 - *Mod-nam* specifies that the preceding breakpoint is a breakpoint only in the named program module. The semicolon (;) is required.
 - You can disable more than one *stmt-break* breakpoint with the UNBREAK command, but you must separate them with commas.
 - *Mod-nam* specifies a program module compiled with the /DEBUG qualifier in effect. When *mod-nam* is specified, the line number specified is disabled as a breakpoint only in the named program. If the breakpoint has not been previously set, BASIC signals an error.
 - If *lin-num* or *stat-num* do not exist, the debugger signals the error "Bad line spec in (UN)BREAK".

UNBREAK

General Rules

None.

Examples

```
*UNBREAK ON LOOP  
*UNBREAK 100;GAMES, 500, 600,2  
#CON
```

UNTRACE

19.0 UNTRACE (BASIC-PLUS-2)

Function

The UNTRACE command disables the TRACE command.

Format

```
UNTRACE
```

Syntax Rules

None.

General Rules

1. Enter the UNTRACE command when the program stops executing after encountering a specified breakpoint.

Examples

```
*UNTRACE
```

```
*CON
```

Appendix A

Reserved BASIC Keywords

%ABORT	BACK	CTRLC	ERT\$
%CDD	BASE	CVT\$\$	ESC
%CROSS	BEL	CVT\$%	EXIT
%ELSE	BINARY	CVT\$F	EXP
%END	BIT	CVT%\$	EXPLICIT
%FROM	BLOCK	CVTF\$	EXTEND
%IDENT	BLOCKSIZE	DAT	EXTENDSIZE
%IF	BS	DAT\$	EXTERNAL
%INCLUDE	BUCKETSIZE	DATA	FF
%LET	BUFFER	DATE\$	FIELD
%LIST	BUFSIZ	DECIMAL	FILE
%NOCROSS	BY	DECLARE	FILESIZE
%NOLIST	BYTE	DEF	FILL
%PAGE	CALL	DEFAULTNAME	FILL\$
%SBTTL	CASE	DEL	FILL%
%THEN	CCPOS	DELETE	FIND
%TITLE	CHAIN	DESC	FIX
%VARIANT	CHANGE	DET	FIXED
ABORT	CHANGES	DIF\$	FLUSH
ABS	CHECKING	DIM	FNAME\$
ABS%	CHR\$	DIMENSION	FNEND
ACCESS	CLK\$	DOUBLE	FNEXIT
ACCESS%	CLOSE	DOUBLEBUF	FOR
ACTIVE	CLUSTERSIZE	DUPLOCATES	FORMAT\$
ALIGNED	COM	DYNAMIC	FORTRAN
ALLOW	COMMON	ECHO	FREE
ALTERNATE	COMP%	EDIT\$	FROM
AND	CON	ELSE	FSP\$
ANY	CONNECT	END	FSS\$
APPEND	CONSTANT	EQ	FUNCTION
AS	CONTIGUOUS	EQV	FUNCTIONEND
ASC	COS	ERL	FUNCTIONEXIT
ASCII	COT	ERN\$	GE
ATN	COUNT	ERR	GET
ATN2	CR	ERROR	GETRFA

GFLOAT	NEXT	RETURN	UNTIL
GO	NOCHANGES	RFA	UPDATE
GOBACK	NODATA	RIGHT	USAGE\$
GOSUB	NODUPLOCATES	RIGHT\$	USEROPEN
GOTO	NOECHO	RND	USING
GROUP	NOEXTEND	ROUNDING	USR\$
GT	NOMARGIN	RSET	VAL
HFLOAT	NONE	SCALE	VAL%
HT	NOPAGE	SCRATCH	VALUE
IDN	NOREWIND	SEG\$	VARIABLE
IF	NOSPAWN	SELECT	VARIANT
IFEND	NOT	SEQUENTIAL	VFC
IFMORE	NUL\$	SETUP	VIRTUAL
IMAGE	NUM	SGN	VPS%
IMP	NUM\$	SI	VT
INACTIVE	NUM1\$	SIN	WAIT
INDEXED	NUM2	SINGLE	WHILE
INPUT	ON	SIZE	WINDOWSIZE
INSTR	ONECHR	SLEEP	WORD
INT	ONERROR	SO	WRITE
INTEGER	OPEN	SP	XLATE
INV	OPTION	SPACE\$	XOR
INVALID	OR	SPAN	ZER
ITERATE	ORGANIZATION	SPEC%	
KEY	OTHERWISE	SQR	
KILL	OUTPUT	SQRT	
LEFT	OVERFLOW	STATUS	
LEFT\$	PAGE	STEP	
LEN	PEEK	STOP	
LET	PI	STR\$	
LF	PLACE\$	STREAM	
LINE	POS	STRING	
LINO	POS%	STRING\$	
LINPUT	PPS%	SUB	
LIST	PRIMARY	SUBEND	
LOC	PRINT	SUBEXIT	
LOCKED	PROD\$	SUBSCRIPT	
LOG	PUT	SUM\$	
LOG10	QUO\$	SWAP%	
LONG	RAD\$	SYS	
LSET	RANDOM	TAB	
MAG	RANDOMIZE	TAN	
MAGTAPE	RCTRLC	TEMPORARY	
MAP	RCTRLO	TERMINAL	
MAR	READ	THEN	
MAR%	REAL	TIM	
MARGIN	RECORD	TIME	
MAT	RECORDSIZE	TIME\$	
MAX	RECORDTYPE	TO	
MID	RECOUNT	TRM\$	
MID\$	REF	TRN	
MIN	REGARDLESS	TYP	
MOD	RELATIVE	TYPE	
MOD%	REM	TYPE\$	
MODE	REMAP	UNALIGNED	
MODIFY	RESET	UNDEFINED	
MOVE	RESTORE	UNLESS	
NAME	RESUME	UNLOCK	

Appendix B

Program and Subprogram Coding Conventions

This appendix presents a suggested format for coding BASIC programs. The recommended program order and documenting procedures clarify the program's history, purpose, and logical development. This organization also helps the program to run faster and with fewer errors.

This format is by no means intended to represent the only way of coding BASIC programs. It is a sample format that can be adapted and modified to suit individual applications.

```
10 ZTITLE "<module-name> - <terse functional description>"  
ZSBTTL "Overall description and modification history"  
ZIDENT "X00.00"  
!  
!           COPYRIGHT (c) 1982 BY  
!           DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORPORATION, MAYNARD, MASS.  
!  
! THIS SOFTWARE IS FURNISHED UNDER A LICENSE AND MAY BE USED AND  
! COPIED ONLY IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE TERMS OF SUCH LICENSE AND WITH  
! THE INCLUSION OF THE ABOVE COPYRIGHT NOTICE. THIS SOFTWARE OR ANY  
! OTHER COPIES THEREOF MAY NOT BE PROVIDED OR OTHERWISE MADE AVAIL-  
! ABLE TO ANY OTHER PERSON. NO TITLE TO AND OWNERSHIP OF THE SOFT-  
! WARE IS HEREBY TRANSFERRED.  
!  
! THE INFORMATION IN THIS SOFTWARE IS SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NO-  
! TICE AND SHOULD NOT BE CONSTRUED AS A COMMITMENT BY DIGITAL EQUIP-  
! MENT CORPORATION.  
!  
! DIGITAL ASSUMES NO RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE USE OR RELIABILITY OF  
! ITS SOFTWARE ON EQUIPMENT WHICH IS NOT SUPPLIED BY DIGITAL.  
!
```

```

!++
!
! FACILITY:
!
! <Facility name>
!
! ABSTRACT:
!
! A short 3-6 line abstract of the function of the module. If a
! full functional specification can be given in 3-6 lines, replace
! "ABSTRACT" above by "FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION," and delete the
! "FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION" section below.
!   !           [margins and tabs]           !
!
! ENVIRONMENT:
!
! [Pick one:]
! PDP-11 user mode [with <Operating system> dependencies]
! VAX-11 user mode.
! PDP-11 and VAX-11 user mode.
!
! AUTHOR: <Your name>, CREATION DATE: <dd Mmmmmmmmm yyyy>
!
! MODIFIED BY:
!
!   <Your name>, <dd-Mmm-yy>; VERSION X00.00
! 000 - Original version of module.
!
!--
%SBTTL "Full description"
!
! [Pick at most one of FUNCTION or SUB below. Include Parameters on
! either. For main Programs, omit FUNCTION or SUB statement and
! Parameters.]
!
FUNCTION <datatype> <name>          &
SUB <name>                         &
  (<datatype> <param>,             ! <Description>          &
   <datatype> <param>)            ! <Description>
!
!++
!
! FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION:
!
! A detailed functional description of the routine. This should
! detail the steps of the process, the use of external functions
! and subprograms (including system services, RTL routines, SYSLIB
! routines), and so forth.
!   !           [margins and tabs]           !
!
! FORMAL PARAMETERS:
!
! <name>,<access type><data type>,<args mech><args form>
!   A description of the meaning of the parameter, its legal
!   values, etc. Repeat for each parameter. If a main program
!   rather than a function or subroutine, use the COMMAND
!   STRUCTURE section.
!   <access type> is m, r, or w for modify, read, or write.
!   <datatype> is b, d, g, h, l, p, s, t, or w for BYTE, DOUBLE,
!   GFLOAT, HFLOAT, LONG, Packed (DECIMAL), SINGLE, text
!   (STRING), or WORD.
!   <args mech> is d, r, or v for BY DESC, BY REF, or BY VALUE.
!   <args form> is <null> or a for scalar or array.
!   !           [margins and tabs]           !
!
```

```

! IMPLICIT INPUTS:
!
! Describe all uses of the values of global storage objects used
! by the routine.
!   [margins and tabs]
!

! IMPLICIT OUTPUTS:
!
! Describe all modifications to the values of global storage ob-
! jects used by the routine.
!   [margins and tabs]
!

! FUNCTION VALUE:
! COMPLETION CODES:
!
! If a function, describe the value returned. If the value re-
! turned is a status indicator, use COMPLETION CODE and delete
! FUNCTION VALUE; if the result of some computation, use FUNCTION
! VALUE and delete COMPLETION CODE.
! If a SUB, delete FUNCTION VALUE and enter "None."
!   [margins and tabs]
!

! SIDE EFFECTS:
!
! Describe all functional side effects that are not evident from
! the invocation interface. This includes changes in storage al-
! location, Process status, file operations (including the command
! terminal), errors signalled, etc.
!   [margins and tabs]
!

!--
%SBTTL "Declarations"
!
! ENVIRONMENT SPECIFICATION:
!
OPTION
  <option clause>, &
  <option clause> &
!
! DATATYPE SPECIFICATION:
!
RECORD <name>           ! <Description>
  <record declaration>
END RECORD &
!
! INCLUDE FILES:
!
%INCLUDE "<Filespec>" &
!
! EQUATED SYMBOLS:
!
DECLARE <datatype> CONSTANT &
  <name> = <value>, ! <Description> &
  <name> = <value> ! <Description>
!
! LOCAL STORAGE:
!
DECLARE
  <datatype> &
    <name>, ! <Description> &
    <name>, ! <Description> &
  <datatype> &
    <name>, ! <Description> &
    <name> ! <Description>
!

```

```

! GLOBAL STORAGE:
!
COMMON (<name>)                                ! <Description>      &
    <datatype>                               ! <Description>      &
        <name>,                            ! <Description>      &
        <name>,                            ! <Description>      &
    <datatype>                               ! <Description>      &
        <name>,                            ! <Description>      &
        <name>                             ! <Description>      &
MAP (<name>)                                    ! <Description>      &
    <datatype>                               ! <Description>      &
        <name>,                            ! <Description>      &
        <name>,                            ! <Description>      &
    <datatype>                               ! <Description>      &
        <name>,                            ! <Description>      &
        <name>                             ! <Description>      &

!
! EXTERNAL REFERENCES:
!
EXTERNAL <datatype> CONSTANT                  ! <Description>      &
    <name>                               ! <Description>      &
EXTERNAL <datatype>                          ! <Description>      &
    <name>                               ! <Description>      &
EXTERNAL <datatype> FUNCTION                 ! <Function description>  &
    <name>                               ! <Argument description>  &
        (<datatype> BY <mech>,
         <datatype> BY <mech>)           ! <Argument description>  &
EXTERNAL SUB                                 ! <Function description>  &
    <name>                               ! <Argument description>  &
        (<datatype> BY <mech>,
         <datatype> BY <mech>)           ! <Argument description>  &

!
! INTERNAL REFERENCES:
!
DECLARE <datatype> FUNCTION                  ! <Function description>  &
    <name>                               ! <Argument description>  &
        (<datatype>,
         <datatype>)                     ! <Argument description>  &
%SBTTL "Environment initialization"
!+
!   Set up global error handler
!-
ON ERROR GO TO 31000
[Alternately, local error handlers can be set up where needed.]
%SBTTL "<Major section name>"
<Major section name>:
!+
!   <Section description>
!-
[Repeat once for each major section.]
%SBTTL "Internal subroutine: <symbolic name>"
[Access via GOSUB <symbolic name>]
<symbolic name>:
!+
!
! FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION:
!
! IMPLICIT INPUTS:
!
! IMPLICIT OUTPUTS:
!
```

```

! SIDE EFFECTS:
!
!-
RETURN
%SBTTL "Internal function - <name>"  

[Access via <name> (<Params>)]
DEF <datatype> <name>
    <datatype> <name>,           ! <Description>      &  

    <datatype> <name>           ! <Description>      &  

!+
!  

! FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION:  

!  

! FORMAL PARAMETERS:  

!  

! IMPLICIT INPUTS:  

!  

! IMPLICIT OUTPUTS:  

!  

! FUNCTION VALUE:  

!  

! SIDE EFFECTS:  

!
!-
END DEF
%SBTTL "RSTS/E CCL entry point"
[This section is for RSTS/E CCL's only]
30000
!+
!   CCL entry point:  

!-
%SBTTL "Common error handling"
31000
!+
!   Common error handling:  

!-
%SBTTL "Module end"
32767 END <FUNCTION, null, or SUB>

```

The Master Index contains a list of the major references to subjects in the *BASIC Reference Manual*, the *BASIC User's Guide*, and the system-specific manuals. The index uses the following conventions:

Example	Explanation
1–8t	A page number followed by a <i>t</i> indicates a table.
4–36f	A page number followed by an <i>f</i> indicates a figure.

Entries in the Master Index are also preceded by an acronym indicating which manual the page number refers to:

Acronym	Title
LM	<i>BASIC Reference Manual</i>
UG	<i>BASIC User's Guide</i>
RSTS	<i>BASIC on RSTS/E Systems</i>
RSX	<i>BASIC on RSX Systems</i>
VMS	<i>BASIC on VAX/VMS Systems</i>

Where a subject references more than one manual, references to the *BASIC Reference Manual* appear first, the *BASIC User's Guide* second, and the system-specific manuals appear last in alphabetical order.

For a more complete list of references, see the individual indexes in the back of each manual.

Index

This index provides a complete cross-reference to the information in this manual. In the index the following convention is used:

Example	Explanation
12t	A page number followed by a <i>t</i> indicates a table.

For material not covered in this manual, see the Master Index in the back of the *BASIC Reference Manual*. The Master Index contains a list of the major references to information throughout the BASIC documentation set.

A

Abbreviations
 debugger command, 382
 qualifier, 83
%ABORT, 113
ABS, 293
ABS%, 294
Absolute value
 ABS, 293
 ABS%, 294
 MAG, 331
ACCESS clause, 241, 258
APPEND, 241
MODIFY, 173, 191, 241
READ, 173, 191, 241
SCRATCH, 173, 241
WRITE, 241
Accessing
 CDD record definitions, 263
 RECORD items, 264, 265
ACTIVE clause, 249
Allocating storage
 for arrays, 159
 for FILL items, 141t, 227, 268
 for RECORD structures, 264
 for VARIANT fields, 265
 with COMMON, 139, 142
 with MAP, 210
 with MAP DYNAMIC, 213
 with REMAP, 268

ALLOW clause, 241
MODIFY, 174, 192, 241
NONE, 174, 192, 241
READ, 174, 192, 241
WRITE, 241
Alphanumeric label, 2
 See also Labels
ALTERNATE KEY clause, 240, 244
Ampersand (&)
 as a continuation character, 4, 6, 7
 in DATA statements, 143
AND, 38
ANSI Minimal BASIC Standard, 84
ANSI_STANDARD qualifier, 84
APPEND, 43 to 44
Arc tangent, 296
Arithmetic operators, 30, 30t
Arrays, 27 to 29
 array elements, 27, 159
 assigning values to, 206, 217, 219, 221,
 225, 261
 bounds, 159, 217, 219, 221, 223, 225
 bounds checking, 84
 converting with CHANGE, 136
 creating with COMMON, 140
 creating with DECLARE, 145
 creating with DIM, 158
 creating with MAP, 210
 creating with MAT statements, 216, 219,
 221, 223, 225
 data type of, 158
 definition of, 27

Arrays (Cont.)

- dimensions of, 28, 158
- dynamic, 158, 159, 160
- element zero, 28, 159, 218, 220, 222, 224, 226, 228
- initialization of, 161, 217
- inversion of, 218
- matrix arithmetic, 217
- naming, 29
- redimensioning with MAT statements, 217, 218, 219, 221, 225
- size limits, 28
- static, 158, 159
- transposition of, 218
- virtual, 29, 147, 158, 159, 170

ASCII

- character set, 10
- characters, 24, 36, 299
- conversion, 136, 295, 299
- function, 295
- stream files, 245

ASSIGN, 45

Assigning logical names, 45

Assigning string data

- with LSET, 209
- with RSET, 274

Assigning values

- to array elements, 206, 217, 219, 221, 225, 261
- to lexical constants, 121
- with INPUT, 199
- with INPUT LINE, 202
- with LET debugger command, 393
- with LET statement, 206
- with LINPUT, 207
- with LSET, 209
- with MAT INPUT, 219
- with MAT LINPUT, 221
- with MAT READ, 225
- with READ, 261
- with RSET, 274

Asterisk (*)

- in PRINT USING format field, 255
- with HELP, 69

Asterisk-filled field

- in PRINT USING, 255

ATN, 296

AUDIT qualifier, 84

B

Backslash ()

- in continued lines, 6
- in multi-statement lines, 5

Backslash () (Cont.)

- in PRINT USING format field, 256
- statement separator, 5

BASIC character set, 10

BEL, 23

Binary radix, 21

Blank-if-zero field

- in PRINT USING, 255

Block I/O files, 94

- finding records in, 174
- opening, 240
- retrieving records sequentially in, 191
- writing records to, 258

Block statements

- ending, 162
- exiting, 164

BLOCKSIZE clause, 243

Bounds, 27

- default for implicit arrays, 159, 217, 219, 221, 223, 225
- maximum, 28

BOUNDS_CHECK qualifier, 84

BREAK debugger command, 383 to 384

BRLRES command, 46 to 47

- BUILD default, 48

BRLRES qualifier, 90

BS, 23

Buckets

- BUCKETSIZE clause, 244
- locking, 174, 192
- unlocking, 174, 182, 192

BUCKETSIZE clause, 244

BUFFER clause, 243

BUFSIZ, 297

BUILD, 48

- BASIC-PLUS-2 qualifiers, 90

BY clauses

- BY DESC, 131, 168, 185, 282
- BY REF, 131, 168, 185, 282
- BY VALUE, 131, 168

BYTE data type, 11

BYTE qualifier, 84, 90

C

C formatting character

- in PRINT USING, 256

CALL, 129 to 133

- as a debugger breakpoint, 383
- with SUB, 281

Calling subprograms, 129, 281

Caret ()

- in PRINT USING format field, 255

CASE clause, 276

CASE ELSE clause, 277
 CCPOS, 298
 CD
 in PRINT USING format field, 255
 CDD
 accessing definitions in, 263
 including definitions from, 7, 84, 88, 119
 Centered field
 in PRINT USING, 256
 CHAIN qualifier, 90, 134
 CHAIN statement, 134 to 135
 CHANGE, 136 to 137
 with NOSETUP, 87
 CHANGES clause, 244
 CHARACTER data type, 23
 Character position
 CCPOS, 298
 of substring, 322, 345
 Character sets
 ASCII, 10
 BASIC, 10
 translating with XLATE, 379
 Characters
 ASCII, 24, 36, 295, 299
 data type suffix, 13
 format in PRINT USING, 255 to 257
 lowercase, 58, 64, 66, 256
 nonprinting, 23
 processing of, 10
 uppercase, 58, 64, 66, 256
 wildcard, 69
 CHR\$, 18, 299
 Clauses
 ACCESS, 173, 191, 241, 258
 ACTIVE, 249
 ALLOW, 174, 192, 241
 ALTERNATE KEY, 240, 244
 BLOCKSIZE, 243
 BUCKETSIZE, 244
 BUFFER, 243
 BY, 131, 168, 185, 282
 CASE, 276
 CHANGES, 244
 CLUSTERSIZE, 246
 CONNECT, 245, 246
 CONTIGUOUS, 242, 244, 245
 COUNT, 258, 289
 DEFAULTNAME, 240, 243
 DUPLICATES, 244, 259
 ELSE, 197
 END IF, 197
 EXTENDSIZE, 243, 245, 246
 FILESIZE, 242
 FOR INPUT, 240

Clauses (Cont.)
 FOR OUTPUT, 240
 GROUP, 264
 KEY, 172, 190, 271
 MAP, 212, 243
 MODE, 246
 NOREWIND, 243, 245, 247
 NOSPAN, 243
 ORGANIZATION, 240
 OTHERWISE, 236, 237
 PRIMARY KEY, 240, 244, 247
 RECORD, 172, 190, 258, 259
 RECORDSIZE, 212, 242, 258
 RECORDTYPE, 241
 REGARDLESS, 174, 192
 RFA, 172, 190
 STEP, 179
 TEMPORARY, 242
 THEN, 197
 UNLOCK EXPLICIT, 173, 175, 191, 245
 UNTIL, 180
 USEROPEN, 240, 243
 VARIANT, 264
 WHILE, 180
 WINDOWSIZE, 242
 CLOSE, 138
 Closing files, 138
 with END, 162
 CLUSTER qualifier, 90
 CLUSTERSIZE clause, 246
 CMD file, 48
 Colon (:)
 in labels, 2
 Comma (,)
 in DATA, 144
 in DELETE command, 54
 in INPUT, 199
 in INPUT LINE, 202
 in LINPUT, 207
 in LIST, 75
 in MAT PRINT, 224
 in PRINT, 251
 in PRINT USING format field, 255
 \$ command, 49 to 50
 Command qualifiers, 83 to 94
 BASIC-PLUS-2, 90t
 VAX-11 BASIC, 84t
 Comment
 field, 8, 267
 in DATA statements, 9, 143
 processing of, 10
 REM, 9, 267
 transferring control to, 8

COMMON, 139 to 142
 size, 141
 with **FIELD**, 170
Common Data Dictionary, 7
See also CDD
COMP%, 300
Comparing
 numeric strings, 300
 strings, 36
Comparisons
EQ, 173, 191
GE, 173, 191
GT, 173, 191
Compilation
 conditional, 117, 128
 control of, 7, 108
 control of listing, 114, 122, 123, 124, 125, 126, 127
 controlling with **OPTION**, 249
 including from **CDD**, 7, 84, 88, 119
 including source code, 7, 119
 terminating with **%ABORT**, 113
Compilation qualifiers, 83 to 94
BASIC-PLUS-2, 90t
VAX-11 BASIC, 84t
COMPILE, 51 to 52
BASIC-PLUS-2 qualifiers, 90t
DEBUG qualifier, 381
VAX-11 BASIC qualifiers, 84t
Compiler directives, 7
Components, 264
CON, 217
Concatenation
 of **COMMON** areas, 141
 string, 5, 30, 34
Conditional branching
 with **IF**, 197
 with **ON-GOSUB**, 236
 with **ON-GOTO**, 237
 with **SELECT**, 276
Conditional compilation, 7
%VARIANT, 128
 with **%IF**, 117
Conditional expressions, 34 to 40
 definition of, 34
 in **%LET**, 121
 in **FOR**, 180
 in **IF**, 197
 in **UNLESS**, 286
 in **UNTIL**, 288
 in **WHILE**, 292
Conditional loops, 179, 288, 292
CONNECT clause, 245, 246
Constants, 14 to 24
 declaring, 146
 default data type, 15
 definition of, 14
 external, 166
 floating-point, 15
 integer, 17
 lexical, 117, 121
 named, 19 to 21
 numeric, 15 to 18
 packed decimal, 17
 predefined, 23 to 24
 string, 18 to 19
 types of, 14
CONTIGUOUS clause, 242, 244, 245
Continuation characters
 ampersand, 6
 backslash, 6
CONTINUE command, 53
 with **RUN**, 103
CONTINUE debugger command, 385
Continued
 lines, 5
 statements, 4, 5
 string literals, 5
Conversion
 of array to string variable, 136
 of string variable to array, 136
Conversion functions
CVT\$%, 304
CVT\$F, 304
CVT%\$, 304
CVTF\$, 304
DECIMAL, 307
INTEGER, 325
NUM\$, 339
NUM1\$, 340
RAD\$, 351
REAL, 354
STR\$, 365
VAL, 377
VAL%, 378
XLATE, 379
Copying BASIC source text, 7, 119
CORE debugger command, 386
COS, 301
Cosine, 301
COUNT clause
 with fixed-length records, 258, 289
 with variable-length records, 258, 289
CPU time, 373
CR, 24

Creating

- arrays, 140, 145, 158, 159, 210, 216, 219, 221, 223, 225
- object modules, 51, 87, 93
- output listing, 86, 92
- strings, 361, 366

Credit-debit field

- in PRINT USING, 255

%CROSS, 114

Cross-reference table

- %CROSS, 114
- CROSS_REFERENCE qualifier, 84, 90
- %NOCROSS, 123

CROSS_REFERENCE qualifier, 84, 90

CTRL/C

- resuming after, 302
- trapping, 302, 352
- with RECOUNT function, 355
- with RESUME, 272

CTRL/Z, 68

- editing command, 63
- with INPUT, 201
- with INPUT LINE, 203
- with LINPUT, 208

CTRLC, 302

- See also RCTRLC

Cursor position

- CCPOS, 298
- TAB, 371

CVT\$\$, 303

- See also EDIT\$

CVTxx

- CVT%, 304
- CVT\$F, 304
- CVT%\$, 304
- CVTF\$, 304
- with FIELD, 169

D

DATA, 143 to 144

- See also READ
- comment fields in, 9
- in DEF functions, 151
- in DEF* functions, 155
- in multi-statement lines, 7
- with MAT READ, 225
- with READ, 261
- with RESTORE, 271

Data types, 10 to 14

- BYTE, 11
- CHARACTER, 23
- DECIMAL, 11
- decimal overflow checking, 87, 249

Data types (Cont.)

- defining with RECORD, 263
- DOUBLE, 11
- GFLOAT, 11
- HFLOAT, 11
- in LET, 206
- in logical expressions, 37
- in numeric expressions, 31
- INTEGER, 11
- integer overflow checking, 87, 249
- keywords, 11, 12
- LONG, 11
- numeric literal notation, 21
- precision, 12
- precision in PRINT, 252
- precision in PRINT USING, 254
- promotion rules, 31 to 34
- range, 12
- REAL, 11
- results for DECIMAL data, 33t
- results for GFLOAT and HFLOAT, 32t
- results in expressions, 32t
- RFA, 12
- setting defaults with OPTION, 249
- SINGLE, 11
- size, 12
- storage of, 11, 12
- STRING, 11
- suffix characters, 13
- WORD, 11

Data typing

- explicit, 13, 14
- implicit, 13
- with declarative statements, 14
- with suffix characters, 13

Data-type defaults, 13, 14

- BYTE qualifier, 84, 90
- constants, 15
- DECIMAL_SIZE qualifier, 84
- DOUBLE qualifier, 85, 91
- GFLOAT qualifier, 86
- HFLOAT qualifier, 86
- LONG qualifier, 87, 92
- SINGLE qualifier, 88, 94
- TYPE_DEFAULT qualifier, 89, 94
- WORD qualifier, 89, 94

Data-type functions

- DECIMAL, 307
- INTEGER, 325
- REAL, 354

Data-type keywords, 11

Date and time functions

- DATE\$, 306
- TIME, 373

Date and time functions (Cont.)
 TIME\$, 375
 DATE\$, 306
 Debit-credit field
 in PRINT USING, 255
 DEBUG qualifier, 84, 91
 with COMPILE, 381
 with RUN, 103, 279, 381
 Debugger
 BASIC-PLUS-2 commands, 381 to 405
 command abbreviations, 382
 effect on task size, 382
 prompt, 381
 Debugging
 changing variable values, 393
 DEBUG qualifier, 84, 91
 disabling of TRACE, 405
 disabling program breakpoints, 384, 403
 displaying program values, 395
 redirecting I/O operations, 397
 resuming execution, 385
 setting program breakpoints, 383
 TRACEBACK qualifier, 88
 tracing statement execution, 402
 with debugger commands, 103, 279

DECIMAL data type, 11
 constants, 17
 format of, 13
 overflow checking, 87, 249
 promotion rules, 32
 rounding, 87, 249
 storage of, 11

DECIMAL function, 307

Decimal radix, 21

DECIMAL_SIZE qualifier, 84

Declarative statements
 COMMON, 140
 DECLARE, 145
 EXTERNAL, 166
 MAP, 210

DECLARE, 145 to 148
 CONSTANT, 20, 24, 146, 147
 FUNCTION, 146, 147

Declaring
 constants, 20, 146
 DEF functions, 146, 149
 DEF* functions, 153
 external constants, 166
 external subprograms, 185
 external subroutines, 166
 external variables, 166
 RECORD structures, 264
 variables, 145

Declining features, 85, 91

DEF, 149 to 152
 as a debugger breakpoint, 383
 ending, 162
 error handling in, 151, 163, 233, 234, 272
 exiting, 164
 multi-line, 150
 parameters, 150, 151
 recursion in, 151
 transferring control into, 151, 236, 237
 with INPUT, 199
 with INPUT LINE, 202
 with LINPUT, 207
 with NOSETUP, 87
 with READ, 261

DEF*, 153 to 156
 error handling in, 155, 163
 multi-line, 154
 parameters, 154, 155
 recursion in, 155
 transferring control into, 155

DEFAULTNAME clause, 240, 243

Defaults
 BRLRES, 46
 BUCKETSIZE clause, 244
 BUILD, 48
 CLUSTERSIZE clause, 246
 COMMON name, 140
 COMPILE, 51
 constants, 15
 data type, 13, 14, 249
 DEFAULTNAME clause, 243
 displaying, 109
 DSKLIB, 55
 EDIT, 57
 error handling, 233
 file name, 79, 82, 95, 97, 102, 104, 111, 134, 240
 floating-point constants, 15
 implicitly declared variables, 26, 27
 integer constants, 17
 LIBRARY, 73
 listing file, 51, 84, 86, 90, 92
 LOAD, 77
 numeric constants, 15
 object module name, 51, 87, 93
 ODLRMS, 80
 overriding with BUILD, 48
 overriding with COMPILE, 51
 overriding with RUN, 102
 parameter passing mechanisms, 132t, 133t, 168, 185, 282
 radix, 21
 RECORDSIZE clause, 242
 RESEQUENCE, 98

Defaults (Cont.)
RMSRES, 100
SCALE, 105
scale factor, 249
SEQUENCE, 107
SET, 108
setting with BRLRES, 46
setting with DSKLIB, 55
setting with LIBRARY, 73
setting with ODLRMS, 80
setting with OPTION, 248
setting with RMSRES, 100
SHOW, 109
WINDOWSIZE clause, 242
DEFINE editing command, 61
Defining
COMMON storage, 139
data structures, 263
labels, 2
MAP DYNAMIC storage, 213
MAP storage, 210
DEL, 24
DELETE command, 54
DELETE statement, 157
with UNLOCK, 287
Deleting
files, 111, 205, 242
program lines, 54
records, 157, 275
Delimiter
EDIT, 57
in DATA, 144
string literal, 18
SUBSTITUTE editing command, 66
Descriptors, 131, 168, 185, 282
DET, 308
Determinant, 308
DIF\$, 309
DIM, 158 to 161
executable, 159, 160
nonvirtual, nonexecutable, 159
used with MAT statements, 217, 218, 219,
221, 223
virtual, 159
with NOSETUP, 87
DIMENSION, 158 to 161
See also DIM
Dimensions
of arrays, 28, 158
Disk-resident libraries
overriding defaults, 91
setting defaults, 55
Displaying
defaults, 109

Displaying (Cont.)
program lines, 75
Documentation
on-line, 69
program, 8 to 10
Dollar sign (\$)
in DECLARE, 145, 146
in DEF names, 149, 150
in DEF* names, 153, 154
in FUNCTION names, 184
in MAP DYNAMIC variables, 213
in PRINT USING format field, 255
in SUB names, 281
in variable names, 25, 26
suffix character, 13
DOUBLE data type, 11
DOUBLE qualifier, 85, 91
DSKLIB command, 55 to 56
BUILD default, 48
DSKLIB qualifier, 91
DUMP qualifier, 91
DUPLICATES clause, 244, 259
Dynamic
arrays, 158, 159, 160
mapping, 169, 213, 268
storage, 213, 268, 269

E

E formatting character
in PRINT USING format field, 256
E mathematical constant, 316
E notation, 16
field in PRINT USING, 255
in numeric literal notation, 21
in PRINT USING format field, 256
numbers in, 16t
with PRINT, 252
with STR\$, 365
ECHO, 310
See also NOECHO
EDIT, 57 to 60
EDIT\$, 311
values, 311t
Editing
program lines, 57
strings, 311, 376
with a text editor, 58
with editing commands, 58
Editing commands, 60t
DEFINE, 61
EXECUTE, 62
EXIT, 63
FIND, 64

Editing commands (Cont.)
 INSERT, 65
 SUBSTITUTE, 66
ELSE clause, 197
END, 162 to 163
 DEF, 150, 154, 162
 FUNCTION, 162, 184
 GROUP, 162
 IF, 162, 197
 RECORD, 162
 SELECT, 162, 277
 SUB, 162, 281
 VARIANT, 162
Ending
 multi-line DEF, 150, 162
 multi-line DEF*, 154
 programs, 162
 statement blocks, 162
 subprograms, 162, 184, 281
EQ, 173, 191
Equivalence name, 45
EQV, 38
ERL debugger command, 387
ERL function, 312
 with labels, 2
 with NOLINE qualifier, 86, 92
 with RESEQUENCE, 99
ERN debugger command, 388
ERN\$, 313
ERR debugger command, 389
ERR function, 314
Error
 number, 314
 text, 315
Error handling
 disabling, 235
ERL, 312
ERN\$, 313
ERR, 314
ERT\$, 315
 in DEF functions, 151, 163, 233, 234
 in DEF* functions, 155, 163
 in FOR-NEXT loops, 272
 in subprograms, 163, 164, 185, 233
 in UNTIL loops, 272
 in WHILE loops, 272
ON ERROR GO BACK, 233
ON ERROR GOTO, 234
ON ERROR GOTO 0, 235
 recursion in, 234
RESUME, 272
Error handling functions
 CTRLC, 302
 ERL, 312

Error handling functions (Cont.)
 ERN\$, 313
ERR, 314
ERT\$, 315
 RCTRLC, 352
ERT\$, 315
ESC, 24
Evaluation
 of expressions, 40 to 42
 of logical expressions, 38 to 40
 of numeric relational expressions, 35
 of operators, 40
 of SELECT statements, 277
 of string relational expressions, 36
Exclamation point (!)
 in comment fields, 8
 in PRINT USING format field, 256
Executable
 DIM, 159
 statements, 3
EXECUTE editing command, 62
Execution
 continuing, 53, 103, 385
 of multi-statement lines, 5
 of statements, 5
 of system commands, 49
 program, 102
 stopping, 53, 103, 279, 383, 400
 suspending, 278, 291
EXIT command, 68
EXIT debugger command, 390
EXIT editing command, 63
EXIT statement, 164 to 165
 DEF, 164
 FUNCTION, 164
 SUB, 164
Exiting
 DEF functions, 164
 loops, 164
 statement blocks, 164
 subprograms, 164
EXP, 316
Explicit
 creation of arrays, 158
 data typing, 13, 14, 89, 94, 248
 declaration of variables, 27
 literal notation, 21 to 23
 loop iteration, 204
 record locking, 157, 173, 174, 175, 191, 192, 245
Exponential notation, 16, 252
 in PRINT USING, 255
 numbers in, 16t
 with PRINT, 252

Exponentiation, 316
Expressions, 30 to 42
 conditional, 34 to 40
 conditional in %LET, 121
 definition of, 30
 evaluation of, 40 to 42
 lexical, 117, 121, 128
 logical, 37 to 40
 mixed-mode, 31 to 34
 numeric, 30 to 34
 numeric relational, 35
 operator precedence in, 40, 41t
 parentheses in, 41
 relational, 35 to 37
 string, 34
 string relational, 36
 types of, 30
EXTEND qualifier, 91
Extended field
 in PRINT USING, 256
EXTENDSIZE clause, 243, 245, 246
EXTERNAL, 166 to 168
 BASIC-PLUS-2 parameter passing
 mechanisms, 133t
CONSTANT, 20, 166
FUNCTION, 166
 parameters, 167
SUB, 166
 VAX-11 BASIC parameter passing
 mechanisms, 132t
 with NOSETUP, 87
External
 constants, 20, 166
 functions, 166
 subroutines, 166
 variables, 26, 166
Extracting substrings
 with LEFT\$, 326
 with MID\$, 335
 with RIGHT\$, 356
 with SEG\$, 358

F

Features
 declining, 85, 91
FF, 24
FIELD, 169
Fields
 asterisk-filled, 255
 blank-if-zero, 255
 centered, 256
 comment, 8
 credit or debit, 255

Fields (Cont.)
 exponential, 255
 extended, 256
 floating dollar sign, 255
 GROUP, 264
 left-justified, 256
 one-character, 256
 right-justified, 256
 trailing minus sign, 255
 VARIANT, 264
 zero-fill, 255
File attributes
 BLOCKSIZE clause, 243
 CLUSTERSIZE clause, 246
 CONTIGUOUS clause, 242
 EXTENDSIZE clause, 243
 FILESIZE clause, 242
 magnetic tape, 243
 MODE clause, 246
File names
 BUILD default, 48
 CHAIN statement default, 134
 COMPILE default, 51
 LOAD default, 77
 NEW default, 79
 OLD default, 82
 OPEN default, 240
 RENAME default, 95
 REPLACE default, 97
 RUN default, 102
 SAVE default, 104
 UNSAVE default, 111
File-related functions
 BUFSIZ, 297
 CCPOS, 298
 FSP\$, 319
 FSS\$, 320
 GETRFA, 321
 MAGTAPE, 332
 MAR, 334
 ONECHR, 341
 RECOUNT function, 355
 STATUS, 363
Files
 ASCII stream, 245
 block I/O, 94, 174, 191, 240, 258
 closing, 138
 deleting, 111, 205, 242
 deleting records in, 157, 275
 finding buffer size, 297
 %INCLUDE, 98, 119, 120
 indexed, 92, 157, 174, 191, 240, 243, 244,
 258, 271, 290
 magnetic tape, 243, 271, 332

Files (Cont.)

- opening, 238
- relative, 93, 157, 173, 191, 240, 242, 244, 258, 290
- renaming, 230
- restoring data, 271
- RMS sequential stream, 245
- sequential, 93, 173, 191, 240, 242, 243, 251, 258, 275, 289
- terminal-format, 199, 202, 207, 215, 219, 221, 223, 232, 244, 251
- virtual, 94, 242, 271

FILESIZE clause, 242

FILL, 139, 210, 227, 268

FILL items

- formats and storage, 141t
- in COMMON, 139
- in MAP, 210
- in MOVE, 227
- in REMAP, 268
- FILL\$**, 139, 210, 227, 268
- FILL%**, 139, 210, 227, 268

FIND editing command, 64

FIND statement, 171 to 176

- with PUT, 259
- with UNLOCK, 287
- with UPDATE, 289

Finding

- records, 174
- string length, 327
- substrings, 322, 345
- virtual address, 328

FIX, 317

- compared with INT, 324

FLAG qualifier

- BP2COMPATIBILITY, 85
- DECLINING, 85, 91

Floating dollar sign field

- in PRINT USING, 255

Floating-point

- constants, 15
- data types, 11
- promotion rules, 31
- variables, 26

FNEND, 177

- See also END*

FNEXIT, 178

- See also EXIT*

FOR clause

- INPUT, 240
- OUTPUT, 240

FOR statement, 179 to 181

FOR-NEXT loops, 179 to 181, 231

- conditional, 179

FOR-NEXT loops (Cont.)

- error handling in, 272
- exiting, 164
- explicit iteration of, 204
- nested, 179
- transferring control into, 180, 195, 196, 236, 237
- unconditional, 179

Format

- characters in PRINT USING, 255
- E, 16, 252
- explicit literal notation, 21
- exponential, 16, 252
- for SET qualifiers, 83
- of comment field, 8
- of compiler directives, 7
- of data, 11
- of data in DATA statements, 144
- of DECIMAL data, 13
- of empty statements, 10
- of external constant name, 21
- of external variable names, 26
- of FILL items, 141t
- of floating-point constants, 15
- of implicitly declared variables, 26, 27
- of integer constants, 17
- of internal constant name, 19
- of internal variable names, 25
- of keywords, 3
- of labels, 2
- of line numbers, 1
- of logical expressions, 37
- of multi-line REM, 9, 267
- of multi-statement lines, 6, 7
- of numeric expressions, 30
- of packed decimal constants, 17
- of program lines, 1 to 8
- of relational expressions, 35
- of statements, 3
- of string constants, 18
- of subscripted variables, 28
- Radix-50, 351

FORMAT\$, 318

Formatting

- MAT PRINT output, 224
- numeric output, 255 to 256
- PRINT output, 251, 253
- storage with LSET, 209
- storage with RSET, 274
- string output, 256 to 257
- with FORMAT\$, 318
- with PRINT USING, 254 to 257

FREE debugger command, 391

FREE statement, 182

FSP\$, 319
FSS\$, 320
FUNCTION, 183 to 186
 BASIC-PLUS-2 parameter passing
 mechanisms, 133t
 parameters, 184
 VAX-11 BASIC parameter passing
 mechanisms, 132t
Function codes
 MAGTAPE, 332t
FUNCTIONEND, 187
 See also END
FUNCTIONEXIT, 188
 See also EXIT
Functions
 declaring, 146, 149, 153
 external, 166
 initialization of, 151, 155
 invocation of, 151, 155
 lexical, 89, 94, 117, 121, 128
 naming, 149, 153
 parameters, 150, 154
 user-defined, 149, 153

G

GE, 173, 191
GET, 189 to 194
 with PUT, 259
 with UNLOCK, 287
 with UPDATE, 289
GETRFA, 321
GFLOAT data type, 11
GFLOAT qualifier, 86
GOSUB, 195
 with RETURN, 273
GOTO, 196
GROUP clause, 264
GT, 173, 191

H

Halting program execution, 53, 279, 383, 400
HELP, 69 to 70
Hexadecimal radix, 21
HFLOAT data type, 11
HFLOAT qualifier, 86
HT, 23
Hyphen (-)
 in DELETE command, 54
 in LIST command, 75

I/O

 characters transferred, 355
 closing files, 138, 162
 deleting records, 157
 dynamic mapping, 268
 finding records, 173
 getting records, 191
 I/O BUFFER debugger command, 392
 locking records, 173, 174, 191, 192, 245
 matrix, 337, 338
 moving data, 227
 opening files, 238
 RECOUNT debugger command, 396
 retrieving records, 191
 STATUS debugger command, 398
 unlocking records, 182, 245, 287
 updating records, 289
 with CHAIN, 135
 writing records, 258
I/O BUFFER debugger command, 392
%IDENT, 115 to 116
IDENTIFY, 71
Identifying module version, 115
Identity matrix, 217
IDN, 217
%IF-%THEN-%ELSE-%END %IF, 117 to 118
 with RESEQUENCE, 98
IF-THEN-ELSE, 197 to 198
 labels in, 2
 multi-line format, 6
Immediate mode, 53, 103
IMP, 38
Implicit
 continuation of lines, 6
 creation of arrays, 159, 217, 219, 221, 223,
 225
 data typing, 13, 147
 declaration of variables, 26 to 27
%INCLUDE, 119 to 120
 with RESEQUENCE, 98
IND qualifier, 92
Indexed files
 ALTERNATE KEY clause, 244
 BUCKETSIZE clause, 244
 CHANGES clause, 244
 deleting records in, 157
 DUPLICATES clause, 244
 finding records in, 174
 IND qualifier, 92
 MAP clause, 243
 opening, 240
 PRIMARY KEY clause, 244

Indexed files (Cont.)
restoring data in, 271
retrieving records sequentially in, 191
segmented keys in, 244
updating, 290
writing records to, 258

Initialization
in subprograms, 185, 282
of arrays, 217
of DEF functions, 151
of DEF* functions, 155
of dynamic arrays, 161
of variables, 29, 147
of variables in COMMON, 142
of variables in MAP, 212
of virtual arrays, 160

INPUT, 199 to 201

INPUT LINE, 202 to 203

Inputting data
ONECHR, 341
with INPUT, 199
with INPUT LINE, 202
with LINPUT, 207

INQUIRE, 72

See also HELP

INSERT editing command, 65

Instance, 264

RECORD, 264

INSTR, 322 to 323

See also POS

INT, 324

Integer

constants, 17
data types, 11
overflow checking, 87, 249
promotion rules, 31
suffix character, 13
variables, 27

INTEGER data type, 11

INTEGER function, 325

INV, 218

Inverting arrays, 218, 308

ITERATE, 204

Iteration

of FOR loops, 180
of loops, 204
of UNTIL loops, 288
of WHILE loops, 292

J

Justifying strings
with LSET, 209
with RSET, 274

K

KEY clauses
ALTERNATE, 240, 244
in FIND, 172
in GET, 190
in RESTORE, 271
PRIMARY, 240, 244, 247
segmented keys, 244

Keywords
data-type, 11
definition of, 3
function of, 3
in RECORD, 264
restrictions, 3
spacing requirements, 4, 4t
KILL, 205

L

L formatting character
in PRINT USING, 256

Labels
defining, 2
format of, 2
function of, 2
referencing, 2
transferring control to, 195, 196, 236, 237
with ITERATE, 204

LEFT\$, 326

See also SEC\$

Left-justification

PRINT USING format field, 256
with LSET, 209

LEN, 327

Length
label, 2
of STRING data, 12
variable names, 25

%LET, 121

LET debugger command, 393 to 394

LET statement, 206

Letters

lowercase, 10, 58, 64, 66, 256
uppercase, 10, 58, 64, 66, 256

Lexical

constants, 117, 121
expressions, 117, 121, 128
functions, 89, 94, 117, 121, 128
operators, 117, 121
order, 8

LF, 24

Libraries

clustering, 90

Libraries (Cont.)
disk-resident, 55
memory-resident, 46, 73
RMS, 100, 101t
setting defaults with BRLRES, 46
setting defaults with DSKLIB, 55
setting defaults with LIBRARY, 73
LIBRARY command, 73 to 74
BUILD default, 48
LIBRARY qualifier, 92
Line numbers
automatic sequencing, 107
format of, 1
function of, 2
in %INCLUDE file, 98, 119
in object modules, 86, 92
in RESEQUENCE, 98
range of, 1
LINE qualifier, 86, 92, 134
with debugger commands, 387, 388
with ERL, 312
Line terminator, 1, 7, 10
with DATA statements, 143
with INPUT, 200
with INPUT LINE, 203
with LINPUT, 208
Lines
continued, 5
deleting, 54
displaying, 75
editing, 57
elements of, 1
format of, 1 to 8
length of, 1
multi-statement, 5 to 7
order of, 8, 98
single-statement, 4
terminating, 1, 7, 10
LINPUT, 207 to 208
%LIST, 122
LIST command, 75 to 76
LIST qualifier, 86, 92
Listing file
control of, 7, 88, 114, 122, 123, 124, 125
creating, 86, 92
%CROSS, 114
CROSS_REFERENCE qualifier, 84, 90
defaults, 51, 84, 86, 90, 92
included code, 119
%LIST, 122
%NOCROSS, 123
%NOLIST, 124
%PAGE, 125
%SBTTL, 126

Listing file (Cont.)
setting page size, 93
setting width, 94
subtitle, 126
%TITLE, 127
title, 127
version identification, 115
LISTNH, 75
See also LIST
Literal
explicit notation, 21
numeric, 15
string, 5, 10, 18, 37, 255, 257
LOAD, 77
with RUN, 103
with SCRATCH, 106
LOC, 328
Local copy, 131
Locating records
by KEY, 172, 174, 190, 192
by RECORD number, 172, 190
by RFA, 172, 174, 190, 192
sequentially, 172, 173, 190, 191
with FIND, 171
with GET, 189
LOCK, 78
See also SET
Lock checking
REGARDLESS clause, 174, 192
Locking records, 245
with FIND, 173, 174, 175
with GET, 191, 192
LOG, 329
LOG10, 330
Logarithms
common, 330
natural, 329
Logical expressions, 37 to 40
compared with relational, 40
data types in, 37
definition of, 34
evaluation of, 38 to 40
format of, 37
logical operators, 38t
truth tables, 38t
truth tests, 38
Logical name, 45
Logical operators, 38t
LONG data type, 11
LONG qualifier, 87, 92
Loops
as debugger breakpoints, 383
conditional, 179
exiting, 164

Loops (Cont.)
 FOR-NEXT, 179
 iteration of, 180, 204, 288, 292
 nested FOR-NEXT, 179
 unconditional, 179
 UNTIL, 288
 WHILE, 292
Lowercase letters
 in EDIT, 58
 in FIND editing command, 64
 in PRINT USING, 256
 in SUBSTITUTE editing command, 66
 processing of, 10
LSET, 209

M

MACHINE_CODE qualifier, 87
MACRO qualifier, 92
MAG, 331
Magnetic tape files
 BLOCKSIZE clause, 243
 MAGTAPE, 332
 NOREWIND clause, 243
 RESTORE, 271
MAGTAPE, 332 to 333
 function codes, 332t
 performing functions in VAX-11 BASIC, 333t
MAP clause, 212, 243
MAP DYNAMIC, 213 to 214
 with REMAP, 268, 269
MAP qualifier, 93
MAP statement, 210 to 212
 FILL item formats and storage, 141t
 with FIELD, 170
 with MAP DYNAMIC, 214
 with REMAP, 268
Mapping
 dynamic, 169, 213, 268
 static, 210
MAR, 334
MAR%, 334
MARGIN, 215
See also NOMARGIN
 with PRINT, 251
Margin
 width, 215, 232, 251, 334
MAT, 216 to 218
 with DET, 308
 with FIELD, 170
 with NOSETUP, 87
MAT INPUT, 219 to 220
 with NOSETUP, 87

MAT LINPUT, 221 to 222
 with NOSETUP, 87
MAT PRINT, 223 to 224
 with NOSETUP, 87
MAT READ, 225 to 226
 with NOSETUP, 87
Matrix, 28
 identity, 217
Matrix functions
 DET, 308
 NUM, 337
 NUM2, 338
Matrix operations
 arithmetic, 217
 assigning values, 219, 221, 225
 I/O, 337, 338
 inversion, 218, 308
 printing, 223
 redimensioning, 219, 221, 223, 225
 scalar multiplication, 218
 transposition, 218
Memory
 allocation, 386, 391, 392, 401
 clearing with SCRATCH, 106
 DUMP qualifier, 91
 effect of debugger on, 382
Memory-resident libraries
 clustering, 90
 overriding defaults, 90, 92
 setting defaults with BRLRES, 46
 setting defaults with LIBRARY, 73
Merging programs, 43
MID\$, 335
See also SEG\$
Minus sign (-)
 in numeric literal notation, 21
 in PRINT USING format field, 255
Mixed-mode expressions, 31 to 34
MODE clause, 246
Modifiable parameters, 131
Modifiers
 FOR, 179
 IF, 197, 198
 UNLESS, 286
 UNTIL, 288
 WHILE, 292
MOVE, 227 to 229
 FILL item formats and storage, 141t
 with FIELD, 170
 with NOSETUP, 87
Multi-line
 DEF, 149, 150
 DEF*, 153, 154

Multi-statement lines, 5 to 7
backslash in, 5
branching to, 6
execution of, 5
format of, 6, 7
implicit continuation, 6
transferring control to, 5

N

NAME AS, 230
Named constants, 19 to 21
 changing, 19
 external, 20, 166
 internal, 19, 146
Naming
 arrays, 29
 COMMON areas, 140
 constants, 15, 19, 146
 DEF functions, 149
 DEF* functions, 153
 external constants, 20, 166
 external functions, 166
 external subroutines, 166
 external variables, 26, 166
 FUNCTION subprograms, 184
 functions, 146
 internal constants, 19, 146
 internal variables, 25
 lexical constants, 121
 MAP areas, 210
 programs, 79, 95
 SUB subprograms, 281
 subprograms, 130
 variables, 145
Nesting
 FOR-NEXT loops, 179
 IF, 197
 SELECT, 277
NEW, 79
NEXT, 231
 with FOR, 180
 with UNTIL, 288
 with WHILE, 292
%NOCROSS, 123
NOECHO, 336
 See also ECHO
NOLINE qualifier, 279
%NOLIST, 124
NOMARGIN, 232
 See also MARGIN
Nonexecutable DIM, 159
Nonexecutable statements, 3, 8
 COMMON, 141

Nonexecutable statements (Cont.)
 DATA, 143
 DECLARE, 147
 DIM, 159
 EXTERNAL, 168
 MAP, 211
 MAP DYNAMIC, 214
 REM, 267
 with UNLESS, 286
Nonmodifiable parameters, 131
Nonprinting characters
 processing of, 10
 using, 10
Nonvirtual DIM, 159
NOREWIND clause, 243, 245, 247
NOSPACE clause, 243
NOT, 38
 evaluation of, 41
Notation
 E, 16, 16t, 252, 255, 256
 explicit literal, 21 to 23
 exponential, 16, 252
NUL, 10, 18
NUL\$, 217
NUM, 337
 after MAT INPUT, 220
 after MAT LINPUT, 221
 after MAT READ, 225
NUM\$, 339
NUM1\$, 340
 compared with STR\$, 365
NUM2, 338
 after MAT INPUT, 220
 after MAT LINPUT, 222
 after MAT READ, 226
Numbers
 random, 260, 357
 sign of, 359
Numbers in E notation, 16t
Numeric constants, 15 to 18
Numeric conversion, 136
Numeric expressions, 30 to 34
 format of, 30
 promotion rules, 31 to 34
 result data types, 32t
 results for DECIMAL data, 33t
 results for GFLOAT and HFLOAT, 32t
Numeric functions, 304
 ABS, 293
 ABS%, 294
 DECIMAL, 307
 FIX, 317
 INT, 324
 LOG, 329

Numeric functions (Cont.)

- LOG10, 330
- MAG, 331
- RND, 357
- SGN, 359
- SQR, 362
- SWAP%, 368
- Numeric literal notation, 21 to 23
- Numeric operator precedence, 41t
- Numeric precision
 - with PRINT, 252
 - with PRINT USING, 254
- Numeric relational expressions
 - evaluation of, 35
 - operators, 35t, 35
- Numeric string functions
 - CHR\$, 299
 - COMP%, 300
 - DECIMAL, 307
 - DIF\$, 309
 - FORMAT\$, 318
 - INTEGER, 325
 - NUM\$, 339
 - NUM1\$, 340
 - PLACE\$, 342
 - PROD\$, 347
 - QUO\$, 349
 - REAL, 354
 - STR\$, 365
 - SUM\$, 367
 - VAL, 377
 - VAL%, 378
- Numeric strings
 - comparing, 300
 - precision, 309, 342, 347, 349, 367
 - rounding, 342, 347, 349
 - rounding and truncation values, 344t
 - truncating, 342, 347, 349

O

Object module

- creating, 51, 87, 93
- default name, 51, 87, 93
- line numbers in, 86, 92
- loading, 77
- version identification, 115

OBJECT qualifier, 87, 93

Object Time System (OTS), 55

Octal radix, 21

ODL file, 48, 81t

- overriding defaults, 93

RMS libraries, 101t

- setting defaults, 80

ODLRMS command, 80 to 81

- BUILD default, 48

ODLRMS qualifier, 93

OLD, 82

- with RUN, 103

ON ERROR GO BACK, 233

- with END, 162
- with NOSETUP, 87

ON ERROR GOTO, 234

- with END, 162
- with NOSETUP, 87

ON ERROR GOTO 0, 233, 235

- with END, 162
- with NOSETUP, 87

ON-GOSUB-OTHERWISE, 236

- with RETURN, 273

ON-GOTO-OTHERWISE, 237

On-line documentation, 69

One-character

- input, 341
- PRINT USING format field, 256

ONECHR, 341

OPEN, 238 to 247

- with STATUS, 363

Opening files, 238 to 247

- with USEROPEN clause, 243

Operator precedence, 30, 40, 41t

Operators

- arithmetic, 30, 30t
- evaluation of, 40
- lexical, 117, 121
- logical, 38t
- numeric operator precedence, 41t
- numeric relational, 35t
- precedence of, 30, 40, 41t
- string relational, 37t

OPTION, 248 to 250

OR, 38

Order

- lexical, 8

ORGANIZATION clause, 240

OTHERWISE clause, 236, 237

Output

- formatting with FORMAT\$, 318
- formatting with PRINT USING, 254 to 256

Output listing

- creating, 86, 92
- cross-reference table, 84, 90, 114, 123
- default, 51, 84, 90
- %LIST, 122
- %NOLIST, 124
- %PAGE, 125
- %SBTTL, 126
- setting page size, 93

Output listing (Cont.)
 setting width, 94
 %TITLE, 127
Overflow checking, 87, 249
OVERFLOW qualifier
 DECIMAL, 87
 INTEGER, 87
Overlay description file, 80
 See also *ODL file*
Overlaying
 COMMON areas, 142
 MAP areas, 211
Overriding defaults
 with BRLRES qualifier, 90
 with BUILD, 48
 with COMPILE, 51
 with DECLARE, 145, 148
 with DSKLIB qualifier, 91
 with EXTERNAL, 166
 with LIBRARY qualifier, 92
 with ODLRMS qualifier, 93
 with RMSRES qualifier, 93
 with RUN, 102

P

Packed decimal, 11
 See also *DECIMAL* data type
Padding
 in string relational expressions, 36
 in virtual arrays, 160
%PAGE, 125
PAGE_SIZE qualifier, 93
Parameter passing mechanisms
 BASIC-PLUS-2, 133t
 CALL, 131
 DEF, 151
 DEF*, 155
 EXTERNAL, 168
 FUNCTION, 185
 SUB, 282
 VAX-11 BASIC, 132t
Parameters
 CALL, 131
 DEF, 150, 151
 DEF*, 154, 155
 EXTERNAL, 167
 function, 150, 154
 FUNCTION subprograms, 184
 modifiable, 131
 nonmodifiable, 131
 SUB subprograms, 281
Parentheses
 in array names, 27

Parentheses (Cont.)
 in expressions, 30, 40
Percent sign (%)
 in DATA statements, 17, 143
 in DECLARE, 145, 146
 in DEF names, 150
 in DEF* names, 154
 in FUNCTION names, 184
 in MAP DYNAMIC variables, 213
 in PRINT USING format field, 255
 in SUB names, 281
 in variable names, 25, 26
 suffix character, 13
Period(.)
 in PRINT USING format field, 255
 in variable names, 25
PI, 24
PLACE\$, 342 to 344
 rounding and truncation values, 344t
Plus sign ()
 in string concatenation, 34
POS, 345 to 346
Pound sign ()
 debugger prompt, 381
 in PRINT USING format field, 255
Precedence
 numeric operator, 41t
 operator, 30, 40
Precision
 in PRINT, 252
 in PRINT USING, 254
 NUM\$, 339
 NUM1\$, 340
 of data types, 12
 of numeric strings, 309, 342, 347, 349, 367
Predefined constants, 23 to 24
 function of, 23
PRIMARY KEY clause, 240, 244, 247
PRINT debugger command, 395
PRINT statement, 251 to 253
 with TAB, 371
PRINT USING, 254 to 257
Print zones
 in MAT PRINT, 224
 in PRINT, 251
Printing
 to a terminal, 251
 to a terminal-format file, 251
Processing
 INPUT data, 200
 INPUT LINE data, 203
 LINPUT data, 208
 multiple record streams, 245
 of comments, 10

Processing (Cont.)

- of lowercase letters, 10
- of nonprinting characters, 10
- of statements, 8
- of string constants, 18
- of string literals, 10
- of uppercase letters, 10
- records, 189, 258, 289

PROD\$, 347 to 348

- rounding and truncation values, 344t

Program control statements

- END, 162
- EXIT, 164
- FOR, 179
- GOSUB, 195
- GOTO, 196
- IF, 197
- ITERATE, 204
- ON-GOSUB, 236
- ON-GOTO, 237
- RESUME, 272
- RETURN, 273
- SELECT, 276
- SLEEP, 278
- STOP, 279
- UNTIL, 288
- WAIT, 291
- WHILE, 292

Program documentation, 8 to 10

Program elements, 1 to 42

Program execution

- continuing, 53, 103, 385
- initiating with RUN, 102
- stopping, 53, 103, 279, 383, 400
- suspending, 278
- waiting for input, 291

Program input

- INPUT, 199
- INPUT LINE, 202
- LINPUT, 207
- waiting for, 291

Program lines

- automatic sequencing, 107
- deleting, 54
- displaying, 75
- editing, 57
- elements of, 1
- format of, 1 to 8
- length of, 1
- numbering, 1
- order of, 8, 98
- resequencing, 98
- terminating, 1, 7, 10

Programs

- compiling, 51
- continuing, 53, 103
- debugging, 84, 91, 103
- deleting, 111
- editing, 57
- ending, 162
- executing, 102
- halting, 53, 103, 279
- merging, 43
- naming, 79
- optimizing, 87
- renaming, 95
- saving, 97, 104
- stopping, 53, 103, 279

Promotion rules

- data type, 31 to 34
- DECIMAL, 32
- floating-point, 31
- integer, 31

Prompt

- after STOP, 279
- debugger, 381
- INPUT, 199
- INPUT LINE, 202
- LINPUT, 207
- MAT INPUT, 219
- MAT LINPUT, 221

PSECT, 139, 210

PUT, 258 to 259

Q

Qualifiers, 83 to 94

- abbreviated form, 83
- ANSI_STANDARD, 84
- AUDIT, 84
- BASIC_PLUS_2 command, 90t
- BOUNDS_CHECK, 84
- BRLRES, 90
- BYTE, 84, 90
- CHAIN, 90, 134
- CLUSTER, 90
- CROSS_REFERENCE, 84, 90
- DEBUG, 84, 91, 103, 381
- DECIMAL_SIZE, 84
- DOUBLE, 85, 91
- DSKLIB, 91
- DUMP, 91
- EXTEND, 91
- FLAG, 85, 91
- GFLOAT, 86
- HFLOAT, 86
- IND, 92

Qualifiers (Cont.)

- LIBRARY, 92
- LINE, 86, 92, 134, 387, 388
- LIST, 86
- LONG, 87, 92
- MACHINE_CODE, 87
- MACRO, 92
- MAP, 93
- NOLINE, 279
- OBJECT, 87, 93
- ODLRMS, 93
- OVERFLOW, 87
- PAGE_SIZE, 93
- REL, 93
- RMSRES, 93
- ROUND, 87
- SEQ, 93
- SETUP, 87
- SHOW, 88, 120
- SINGLE, 88, 94
- SYNTAX_CHECK, 88, 94
- TRACEBACK, 88
- TYPE_DEFAULT, 89, 94
- VARIANT, 89, 94, 128
- VAX-11 BASIC command, 84t
- VIR, 94
- WARNINGS, 89
- WIDTH, 94
- WORD, 89, 94
- QUO\$, 349 to 350
 - rounding and truncation values, 344t
- Quotation marks
 - in string literals, 18

R

R formatting character

- in PRINT USING, 256

RAD\$, 351

Radix

- binary, 21
- decimal, 21
- hexadecimal, 21
- in explicit literal notation, 21
- octal, 21

Radix-50, 351

Random numbers, 260, 357

RANDOMIZE, 260

- See also RND

Range

- of data types, 12
- of subscripts, 28

RCTRLC, 352

- See also CTRLC

RCTRLO, 353

READ, 261 to 262

- See also DATA
- with DATA, 143, 144
- with NOSETUP, 88

REAL data type, 11

REAL function, 354

Receiving parameters

- FUNCTION subprograms, 184
- SUB subprograms, 281

Record attributes

- MAP clause, 243
- RECORDSIZE clause, 242, 243
- RECORDTYPE clause, 241

Record buffers

- DATA pointers, 271
- MAP DYNAMIC pointers, 214, 269
- moving data, 227
- REMAP pointers, 268, 269
- setting size, 243

RECORD clause, 172, 190, 258, 259

Record File Address, 12, 172, 190, 321

Record Management Services, 80

- See also RMS

Record pointers

- after FIND, 173, 174
- after GET, 191, 192
- after PUT, 259
- after UPDATE, 289
- REMAP, 269
- RESTORE, 271
- WINDOWSIZE clause, 242

RECORD statement, 263 to 266

Records

- deleting with DELETE, 157
- deleting with SCRATCH, 275
- finding RFA of, 172, 190
- locating randomly, 174
- locating sequentially, 173
- locating with FIND, 171
- locking, 173, 174, 191, 192, 245
- processing of, 245
- retrieving by KEY, 190, 192
- retrieving by RECORD number, 190
- retrieving by RFA, 190, 192
- retrieving randomly, 192
- retrieving sequentially, 190, 191
- retrieving with GET, 189
- size of, 258
- unlocking, 157, 174, 182, 192, 245, 287
- writing with PRINT, 251
- writing with PUT, 258
- writing with UPDATE, 289

RECORDSIZE clause, 212, 242, 258

RECORDTYPE clause
 ANY, 241
 FORTRAN, 241
 LIST, 241
 NONE, 241

RECOUNT debugger command, 396

RECOUNT function, 355
 after GET, 192
 after INPUT, 200
 after INPUT LINE, 203
 after LINPUT, 208

Recursion
 in DEF functions, 151
 in DEF* functions, 155
 in error handlers, 234
 in subprograms, 132, 282

Redimensioning arrays
 dynamic, 160
 with executable DIM, 159
 with MAT statements, 217, 218, 219, 221, 225

REDIRECT debugger command, 397

Referencing labels, 2

REGARDLESS clause
 with FIND, 174
 with GET, 192

REL qualifier, 93

Relational expressions, 35 to 37
 compared with logical, 40
 definition of, 34
 format of, 35
 in SELECT, 276, 277
 numeric, 35
 string, 36
 truth tests, 35, 36

Relational operators
 numeric, 35t
 string, 37t

Relative files
 BUCKETSIZE clause, 244
 deleting records in, 157
 finding records in, 173
 opening, 240
 record size in, 242
 REL qualifier, 93
 retrieving records sequentially in, 191
 updating, 290
 writing records to, 258

REM, 267
 in multi-statement lines, 7
 multi-line format, 9, 267
 transferring control to, 9

REMAP, 268 to 270
 FILL item formats and storage, 141t

REMAP (Cont.)
 with MAP DYNAMIC, 214
 with NOSETUP, 88

RENAME, 95 to 96

Renaming
 files, 230
 programs, 95

REPLACE, 97
 with RENAME, 95

RESEQUENCE, 98 to 99

Reserved words, 3

RESET, 271
See also RESTORE

RESTORE, 271

Restoring
 data, 271
 files, 271

Result data types
 for DECIMAL data, 33t
 GFLOAT and HFLOAT, 32t
 mixed-mode expressions, 32t

RESUME, 272
 after CTRL/C, 272
 to INPUT, 200
 to INPUT LINE, 203
 to LINPUT, 208
 with CTRL/C, 302
 with END, 162
 with ERL, 312
 with ERN\$, 313
 with ERR, 314
 with labels, 2
 with NOLINE qualifier, 86, 92
 with NOSETUP, 88

Retrieving records
 randomly by KEY, 190, 192
 randomly by RECORD number, 190
 randomly by RFA, 190, 192
 sequentially, 190, 191
 with GET, 189

RETURN, 273

RFA clause, 172, 190

RFA data type
 allowable operations, 12
 storage of, 12

RIGHT\$, 356
See also SEC\$

Right-justification
 PRINT USING format field, 256
 with RSET, 274

RMS
 files, 238
 libraries, 93, 100, 101t
 ODL files, 80, 81t

RMSRES command, 100 to 101
 BUILD default, 48
 RMSRES qualifier, 93
 RND, 357
 See also RANDOMIZE
 ROUND qualifier, 87
 Rounding
 controlling with OPTION, 249
 controlling with SCALE, 105
 DECIMAL values, 87, 249
 in numeric strings, 342, 344t, 347, 349
 NUM\$, 339
 with PRINT, 252
 with PRINT USING, 255
 RSET, 274
 RSTS/E SYS calls, 369
 RUN, 102 to 103
 BASIC-PLUS-2 qualifiers, 90t
 DEBUG qualifier, 381
 Run-Time Library, 87
 RUNNH, 102
 See also RUN

S

SAVE, 104
 with RENAME, 95
 Saving programs
 with REPLACE, 97
 with SAVE, 104
 %SBTTL, 126
 SCALE, 105
 Scale factor
 setting with OPTION, 249
 setting with SCALE, 105
 SCRATCH, 106, 275
 SEG\$, 358
 Segmented keys, 244
 SELECT, 276 to 277
 transferring control into, 236, 237
 Semicolon (;)
 in INPUT, 199
 in INPUT LINE, 202
 in LINPUT, 207
 in MAT PRINT, 224
 in PRINT, 251
 SEQ qualifier, 93
 SEQUENCE, 107
 Sequential files
 deleting records in, 275
 finding records in, 173
 NOSPAN clause, 243
 opening, 240
 record size in, 242

Sequential files (Cont.)
 retrieving records in, 191
 SEQ qualifier, 93
 updating, 289
 writing records to, 251, 258
 SET, 108
 BASIC-PLUS-2 qualifiers, 90t
 BUILD default, 48
 qualifier format, 83
 VAX-11 BASIC qualifiers, 84t
 Setting defaults
 for data types, 13
 with BRLRES, 46
 with DSKLIB, 55
 with LIBRARY, 73
 with ODLRMS, 80
 with OPTION, 248
 with RMSRES, 100
 with SCALE, 105
 with SET, 108
 SETUP qualifier, 87
 SGN, 359
 SHOW, 109 to 110
 SHOW qualifier
 CDD_DEFINITIONS, 88, 120
 ENVIRONMENT, 88
 INCLUDE, 88, 120
 MAP, 88
 OVERRIDE, 88
 SI, 24
 SIN, 360
 Sine, 360
 SINGLE data type, 11
 SINGLE qualifier, 88, 94
 Single-line
 DEF, 149
 DEF*, 153
 loops, 179, 288, 292
 statements, 4
 Single-statement lines, 4
 Size
 of numeric data, 12
 of STRING data, 11
 SLEEP, 278
 SO, 24
 SP, 24
 SPACE\$, 361
 Spacing in keywords, 4
 SQR, 362
 SQRT, 362
 Square roots, 362
 Statement modifiers
 FOR, 179
 IF, 197, 198

Statement modifiers (Cont.)
 UNLESS, 286
 UNTIL, 288
 WHILE, 292
Statements
 backslash separator, 5
 block, 162, 164, 179, 197, 264, 277
 BP2 compatible, 85
 components of, 3
 continued, 4, 5
 data typing, 14
 declarative, 145
 declining, 85, 91
 empty, 10
 executable, 3
 execution of, 5
 format of, 3
 labelling of, 2
 multi-statement lines, 5 to 7
 nonexecutable, 3, 8, 141, 143, 147, 159, 168, 211, 214, 267
 order of, 8, 98
 processing of, 8
 single-line, 4
Static
 arrays, 158, 159
 mapping, 210
 storage, 139, 210, 269
STATUS debugger command, 398 to 399
STATUS function, 363 to 364
 VAX-11 BASIC STATUS bits, 364t
STEP clause, 179
STEP debugger command, 400
STOP, 279
See also CONTINUE command
 with RUN, 103
Stopping program execution, 53, 279, 383, 400
Storage
 allocating with REMAP, 268
 COMMON and MAP, 141, 211
 dynamic, 213, 268, 269
 for arrays, 159
 for FILL items, 141t, 227, 268
 for RECORD structures, 264
 for VARIANT fields, 265
 in COMMON, 142
 in MAP, 211
 of data, 12
 of DECIMAL data, 11
 of RFA data, 12
 of STRING data, 11
 shared, 139, 210
 static, 139, 210, 269
STR\$, 365
String arithmetic functions
 DIF\$, 309
 PLACE\$, 342
 PROD\$, 347
 QUO\$, 349
 SUM\$, 367
String constants, 18 to 19
STRING data type, 11
 length, 12
 storage of, 11
STRING debugger command, 401
String expressions, 34
 relational, 36, 37
String functions, 304
 ASCII, 295
 EDIT\$, 311
 INSTR, 322
 LEFT\$, 326
 LEN, 327
 MID\$, 335
 POS, 345
 RIGHT\$, 356
 SEG\$, 358
 SPACE\$, 361
 STRING\$, 366
 TRM\$, 376
 with NOSETUP, 87
 XLATE, 379
String literals, 37
 continuing, 5
 delimiter, 18
 in PRINT USING format field, 257
 processing of, 10
 quotations marks in, 18
String relational expressions
 evaluation of, 36
 operators, 37t, 37
String variables, 27
 formatting storage, 209, 274
 in INPUT, 200
 in INPUT LINE, 203
 in LET, 206
 in LINPUT, 208
 with NOSETUP, 87
STRING\$, 366
Strings
 comparing, 36, 300
 concatenating, 5, 30, 34, 88
 converting, 136
 creating, 361, 366
 editing, 311, 376
 extracting substrings, 326, 335, 356, 358
 finding length, 327

Strings (Cont.)
finding substrings, 322, 345
justifying with FORMAT\$, 318
justifying with LSET, 209
justifying with PRINT USING, 256
justifying with RSET, 274
numeric, 300, 309, 325, 342, 347, 349,
 354, 367, 377, 378
suffix character, 13
SUB, 280 to 283
 BASIC-PLUS-2 parameter passing
 mechanisms, 133t
 parameters, 281
 VAX-11 BASIC parameter passing
 mechanisms, 132t
SUBEND, 284
 See also *END*
SUBEXIT, 285
 See also *EXIT*
Subprograms
 calling, 129
 declaring, 166
 ending, 162, 184, 281
 error handling in, 163, 164, 185, 233
 exiting, 164
 FUNCTION, 183
 naming, 130, 281
 recursion in, 132, 282
 returning from, 273
 SUB, 280
Subroutines
 external, 166
 GOSUB, 195
 RETURN, 273
Subscripted variables, 27 to 29
 format of, 28
 range checking, 84, 249
 subscript range, 28
Subscripts, 27
 range of, 28
SUBSTITUTE editing command, 66 to 67
Substrings
 extracting, 326, 335, 356, 358
 finding, 322, 345
Suffix characters
 integer, 13
 string, 13
SUM\$, 367
Suspending program execution, 278
SWAP%, 368
SYNTAX_CHECK qualifier, 88, 94
SYS, 369 to 370
 VAX-11 BASIC subset, 369t
System command, 49

T

TAB, 371
TAN, 372
Tangent, 372
Template, 264
TEMPORARY clause, 242
Tensor, 28
Terminal
 printing to, 251
Terminal control functions
 ECHO, 310
 NOECHO, 336
 RCTRLO, 353
 TAB, 371
Terminal-format files, 244
 input from, 199, 202, 207, 219, 221
 margin, 215, 232
 writing records to, 223, 251
Terminating
 automatic sequencing, 107
 comment fields, 8
 compilation, 113
 DATA statements, 143
 program lines, 1, 7, 10
 REM statements, 9, 267
 THEN clause, 197
TIME, 373 to 374
 function values, 374t
TIME\$, 375
%TITLE, 127
TRACE debugger command, 402
TRACEBACK qualifier, 88
Trailing minus sign field
 in PRINT USING format field, 255
Transferring control
 into DEF functions, 151, 236, 237
 into DEF* functions, 155
 into FOR-NEXT loops, 180, 195, 196, 236,
 237
 into SELECT blocks, 236, 237
 into UNTIL loops, 195, 196, 236, 237
 into WHILE loops, 195, 196, 236, 237
 to a label, 195, 196, 236, 237
 to comment fields, 8
 to multi-statement lines, 5
 to REM, 9
 with CALL, 129
 with CHAIN, 134
 with GOSUB, 195
 with GOTO, 196
 with IF, 197
 with ON-GOSUB, 236
 with ON-GOTO, 237

Transferring control (Cont.)
with RESUME, 203, 208, 272
with RETURN, 273

Transferring data
with MOVE, 227

Translating character sets, 379

Transposing arrays, 218

Trigonometric functions

ATN, 296
COS, 301
SIN, 360
TAN, 372

TRM\$, 376

TRN, 218

Truncation

in numeric strings, 342, 344t, 347, 349
in PRINT USING, 256
with FIX, 317

Truth tables, 38t

Truth tests

in logical expressions, 38
in relational expressions, 35
in string relational expressions, 36

TYPE_DEFAULT qualifier, 89, 94

U

UNBREAK debugger command, 403 to 404

Unconditional branching

with GOSUB, 195
with GOTO, 196

Unconditional loops, 179

Underscore (_)

in PRINT USING format field, 255
in variable names, 25

UNLESS, 286

UNLOCK, 287

UNLOCK EXPLICIT clause, 173, 175, 191,
245

Unlocking records, 245

with FREE, 182
with UNLOCK, 287

UNSAVE, 111

UNTIL clause, 180

UNTIL loops, 231

error handling in, 272
exiting, 164
explicit iteration of, 204
transferring control into, 195, 196, 236, 237

UNTIL statement, 288

UNTRACE debugger command, 405

UPDATE, 289 to 290

with UNLOCK, 287

Updating records, 289

Uppercase letters
in EDIT, 58
in FIND editing command, 64
in PRINT USING, 256
in SUBSTITUTE editing command, 66
processing of, 10
User-defined functions, 149, 153
USEROPEN clause, 240, 243

V

VAL, 377

VAL%, 378

Variable names

in COMMON, 142
in MAP, 211, 212
in MAP DYNAMIC, 213
in REMAP, 268
rules for, 25 to 26

Variables, 25 to 29

assigning values to, 199, 202, 206, 207,
261, 393

declaring, 145

definition of, 25

explicitly declared, 27

external, 166

floating-point, 26

implicitly declared, 26 to 27

in MOVE, 228

in SUB subprograms, 282

initialization of, 29, 142, 147, 212

integer, 27

loop, 179

naming, 25 to 26

string, 27, 200, 203, 206, 208

subscripted, 27 to 29

%VARIANT, 128

in %IF, 117

in %LET, 121

Variant, 264

VARIANT clause, 264

VARIANT qualifier, 89, 94, 128

VAX-11 BASIC STATUS bits, 364t

VAX-11 BASIC subset of RSTS/E SYS calls,
369t

Vector, 28

Version identification, 115

VIR qualifier, 94

Virtual address

finding, 328

Virtual arrays, 147, 158, 159

initialization of, 29, 160

padding in, 160

with FIELD, 170

Virtual arrays (Cont.)
with NOSETUP, 88

Virtual files
record size, 242
VIR qualifier, 94
with RESTORE, 271

VT, 24

W

WAIT, 291
WARNINGS qualifier, 89
WHILE clause, 180
WHILE loops, 231
error handling in, 272
exiting, 164
explicit iteration of, 204
transferring control into, 195, 196, 236, 237
WHILE statement, 292
Width
margin, 215, 232, 251, 334
of listing file, 94
WIDTH qualifier, 94
WINDOWSIZE clause, 242

WORD data type, .11
WORD qualifier, 89, 94
Writing records
by RECORD number, 258
sequentially, 258
with PRINT, 251
with PUT, 258
with UPDATE, 289

X

XLATE, 379
XOR, 38

Z

ZER, 217
Zero
array element, 28, 159, 218, 220, 222, 224,
226, 228
blank-if-zero field, 255
in PRINT USING format field, 255
Zero-fill field
in PRINT USING, 255

HOW TO ORDER ADDITIONAL DOCUMENTATION

DIRECT TELEPHONE ORDERS

In Continental USA
and Puerto Rico
call **800-258-1710**

In Canada
call **800-267-6146**

In New Hampshire,
Alaska or Hawaii
call **603-884-6660**

DIRECT MAIL ORDERS (U.S. and Puerto Rico*)

DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORPORATION
P.O. Box CS2008
Nashua, New Hampshire 03061

DIRECT MAIL ORDERS (Canada)

DIGITAL EQUIPMENT OF CANADA LTD.
940 Belfast Road
Ottawa, Ontario, Canada K1G 4C2
Attn: A&SG Business Manager

INTERNATIONAL

DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORPORATION
A&SG Business Manager
c/o Digital's local subsidiary
or approved distributor

Internal orders should be placed through the Software Distribution Center (SDC), Digital Equipment Corporation, Northboro, Massachusetts 01532

*Any prepaid order from Puerto Rico must be placed
with the Local Digital Subsidiary:
809-754-7575

**BASIC
Reference Manual**
AA-L334A-TK
AD-L334A-T1

Reader's Comments

Note: This form is for document comments only. Digital will use comments submitted on this form at the company's discretion. If you require a written reply and are eligible to receive one under Software Performance Report (SPR) service, submit your comments on an SPR form.

Did you find this manual understandable, usable, and well-organized? Please make suggestions for improvement._____

Did you find errors in this manual? If so, specify the error and the page number._____

Please indicate the type of user/reader that you most nearly represent.

- Assembly language programmer
- Higher-level language programmer
- Occasional programmer (experienced)
- User with little programming experience
- Student programmer
- Other (please specify)_____

Name_____ Date_____

Organization_____

Street_____

City_____ State_____ Zip Code or Country_____

-----Do Not Tear - Fold Here and Tape-----

digital



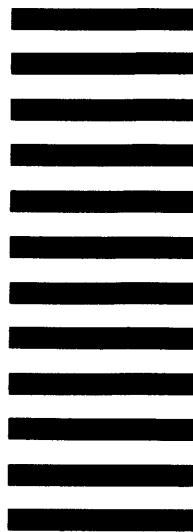
No Postage
Necessary
if Mailed in the
United States

BUSINESS REPLY MAIL

FIRST CLASS PERMIT NO.33 MAYNARD MASS.

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

ATTN: BSSG Publications ZK01-3/J35
DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORPORATION
110 SPIT BROOK ROAD
NASHUA, N.H. 03062



-----Do Not Tear - Fold Here and Tape-----

Cut Along Dotted Line